SIEMENS

SIMATIC

PCS 7 Process Control System
CPU 410 Process Automation

System Manual

08/2021
A5E31622160-AD

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

DANGER

indicates that death or severe personal injury **will** result if proper precautions are not taken.

WARNING

indicates that death or severe personal injury **may** result if proper precautions are not taken.

CAUTION

indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

NOTICE

indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

WARNING

Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Siemens AG
Digital Industries
Postfach 48 48
90026 NÜRNBERG
GERMANY

A5E31622160-AD
Ⓟ 08/2021 Subject to change

Table of contents

Tables

Figures

Preface 1

1.1 Preface

Purpose of this manual

The information in this manual enables you to look up operator inputs, function descriptions and technical specifications of the central processing units CPU 410-5H Process Automation and CPU 410E Process Automation.

For information on installing and wiring this and other modules in order to set up an automation system, refer to Manual *Automation System S7-400, Hardware and Installation*.

Changes compared with the previous version

Changes compared with the previous version of the SIMATIC PCS 7 Process Control System CPU 410-5H Process Automation manual, Edition 05/2017 (A5E31622159-AC) are as follows:

- Security information updated
- Meaning for "Possible states of the LEDs LINK and RX/TX" updated
- Maximum data length adjusted for each DP station
- Article numbers for connecting I/O devices to the PROFIBUS DP interface extended
- Article numbers of usable DP/PA links for connecting PROFIBUS PA to a redundant system extended
- Article numbers of usable Y-couplers for connecting a single-channel DP master system to a redundant system extended
- Procedure for "Change process image partition assignment" updated
- Permitted configuration changes for PROFINET IO updated
- Note on changing the I/O or diagnostic address added.
- List of points to be observed for Cir updated with the ET200SP HA.
- Table in section "Communication via fault-tolerant S7 connections" updated.
- Graphics in the section "Characteristic values of redundant automation systems" updated.
- Table under "Centrally applicable FMs and CPs" in the section "Function and communication modules that can be used in a redundant configuration" updated.
- Certificates updated.

Scope of the manual

The manual is relevant to the following components:

- CPU 410-5H Process Automation; 6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0 as of Firmware Version V8.2
- CPU 410E Process Automation; 6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0 as of Firmware Version V8.2

Note

CPU 410-5H and CPU 410E

Except for different technical specifications and quantity frameworks, the CPU 410E behaves the same as a CPU 410-5H. For this reason, the statements made in this manual about a CPU 410 apply to both the CPU 410-5H and the CPU 410E.

Basic knowledge required

This manual requires general knowledge of automation engineering.

Knowledge of the use of computers or PC-like tools such as programming devices with a Windows operating system is also required. The SIMATIC PCS 7 readme includes information on which operating system is suitable for your SIMATIC PCS 7 configuration. The CPU 410 is configured using the SIMATIC PCS 7 software, and you should therefore be familiar with this software.

In particular when operating a CPU 410 in potentially explosive atmospheres, please always observe the information on the safety of electronic control systems provided in the appendix to the *Automation System S7-400, Hardware and Installation* manual.

Approvals

For details on certifications and standards, refer to Manual *S7-400 Automation System, Module Data*, Chapter 1.1, Standards and Certifications. Here you will also find the technical specification for the entire S7-400.

NOTICE
Markings and approvals In the documentation, you can find the markings and approvals which are generally possible or planned in the system. However, only the label or approval printed on the component is valid.

Online help

You will need the SIMATIC PCS 7 Programming Package V9.0 or higher to work with CPU 410.

In addition to the manual, you will find detailed support on how to use this software in the software's integrated online help system.

The help system can be accessed using various interfaces:

- The **Help** menu contains several commands: **Contents** opens the Help index. You will find help on fault-tolerant systems in **Configuring fault-tolerant systems**.
- **Using Help** provides detailed instructions on using the online help system.
- The context-sensitive help system provides information on the current context, for example, on an open dialog or active window. You can call this help by clicking "Help" or using the F1 key.
- The status bar provides a further form of context-sensitive help. It shows a short description of each menu command when you position the mouse pointer over a command.
- A short info text is also shown for the toolbar buttons when you hold the mouse pointer briefly over a button.

If you prefer to read the information of the online help in printed form, you can print individual topics, books or the entire help system.

Recycling and disposal

Because it is constructed from environmentally compatible materials, the CPU 410 can be recycled. For ecologically compatible recycling and disposal of your old device, contact a certificated disposal service for electronic scrap.

Additional support

If you have any questions relating to the products described in this manual, and do not find the answers in this documentation, please contact your Siemens partner at our local offices.

You will find information on who to contact at:

Contact partners (https://www.siemens.com/automation/partner)

A guide to the technical documents for the various SIMATIC products and systems is available at:

Documentation (https://new.siemens.com/global/en/products/automation/process-control/simatic-pcs-7/technical-documentation.html)

You can find the online catalog and order system under:

Catalog (https://mall.industry.siemens.com/)

Functional Safety Services

Siemens Functional Safety Services is a comprehensive performance package that supports you in risk assessment and verification all the way to plant commissioning and modernization. We also offer consulting services for the application of fail-safe and fault-tolerant SIMATIC S7 automation systems.

Additional information is available at:

Functional Safety Services (https://www.siemens.com/processsafety)

Submit your requests to:

Mail Functional Safety Services (mailto:team-ec.industry@siemens.com)

Training center

We offer a range of courses to help you to get started with the SIMATIC PCS 7 process control system. Please contact your local training center or the central training center.

Training (https://www.sitrain-learning.siemens.com/)

Technical Support

For technical support of all Industry Automation products, fill in and submit the online Support Request:

Support Request (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/my)

Service & Support on the Internet

In addition to our documentation, we offer a comprehensive online knowledge base on the Internet at:

Service and Support (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/)

There you will find:

- The newsletter containing the latest information on your products.
- The latest documents via our search function in Service & Support.
- A forum for global information exchange by users and specialists.
- Your local Automation representative.
- Information on field service, repairs and spare parts. Much more can be found under "Services".

1.2 Security information

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial security functions that support the secure operation of plants, systems, machines, and networks.

In order to protect plants, systems, machines and networks against cyber threats, it is necessary to implement – and continuously maintain – a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Siemens' products and solutions form one element of such a concept.

Customers are responsible for preventing unauthorized access to their plants, systems, machines and networks. These systems, machines and components should only be connected to the enterprise network or the Internet if and only to the extent necessary and with appropriate security measures (firewalls and/or network segmentation) in place.

You can find more information on protective measures in the area of industrial security by visiting:
https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity (https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity).

Siemens' products and solutions undergo continuous development to make them more secure. Siemens strongly recommends performing product updates as soon as they are available and using only the latest product versions. Use of product versions that are no longer supported, and failure to apply latest updates may increase customer's exposure to cyber threats.

To stay informed about product updates, subscribe to the Siemens Industrial Security RSS Feed under
https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity (https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity).

1.3 Documentation

User documentation

The table below provides an overview of the descriptions of the various components and options in the S7-400 automation system.

Topic	Documentation	See also
Setting up an automation system	S7-400, Hardware and Installation	S7-400 Automation System Hardware and Installation (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/de/view/1117849)
Data of the standard modules of an automation system	S7-400 Module Data	SIMATIC S7-400 S7-400 Automation System Module Data (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109781595)
IM 155-6 PN HA	ET 200SP HA Distributed I/O System	SIMATIC ET 200SP HA Distributed I/O System (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109798410)
IM 152	ET 200iSP Distributed I/O System	SIMATIC Distributed I/O System ET 200iSP (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/de/view/28930789/en)
IM 153-2 IM 153-4 PN	ET 200M Distributed I/O Device	SIMATIC ET 200M Distributed I/O Device, HART Analog Modules (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/22063748)
IM 157	DP/PA Link and Y Link Bus Links	SIMATIC Bus Links DP/PA Coupler, Active Field Distributors, DP/PA Link and Y Link (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/de/view/1142696)
IM 153-2 FF	FF Link Bus Links	SIMATIC Bus Links - FF Link Bus Link (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/de/view/47357205/en)
Compact FF Link	Compact FF Link Bus Links	SIMATIC Bus Link Compact FF Link (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/de/view/109739578/en)
Configuring, commissioning, and operation of a PROFINET IO system	PROFINET IO System Description	PROFINET system description (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/19292127)
Fail-safe systems Configuring and programming fail-safe systems Working with S7 F-Systems V 6.2	S7 F/FH Systems	SIMATIC Industrial Software S7 F/FH Systems - Configuring and Programming (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/de/view/109742100/en)

Topic	Documentation	See also
Solution concepts Function mechanisms Configurations of SIMATIC PCS 7	SIMATIC PCS 7 Technical Documentation	SIMATIC PCS 7 Process Control System (http://www.automation.siemenhttps://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/59538371s.com/mcms/industrial-automation-systems-simatic/en/handbuchuebersicht/tech-dok-pcs7/Seiten/Default.aspx)
Configuring hardware	Configuring Hardware and Communication Connections with STEP 7	Configuring Hardware and Communication Connections with STEP 7 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/us/en/view/109751824)
System Modifications during Stand-Alone Operation	Modifying the System during Operation via CiR	Modifying the System during Operation via CiR (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/14044916)

Introduction to the CPU 410 2

2.1 Area of application of the CPU 410 in SIMATIC PCS 7

Purpose of redundant automation systems

In practice, redundant automation systems are used to achieve fault-tolerant or fail-safe systems.

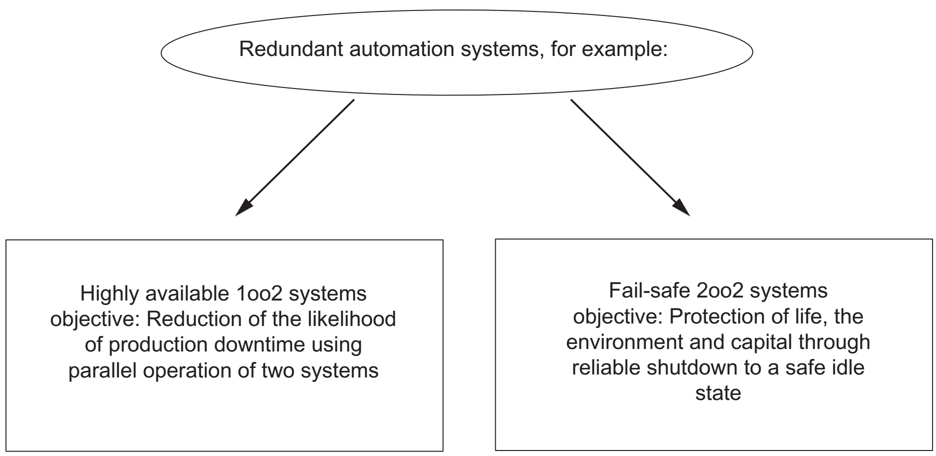


Figure 2-1 Purpose of redundant automation systems

Please note the difference between fail-tolerant and fail-safe systems. The AS 410 H is a fault-tolerance automation system. You may only use it for controlling safety-related processes if you program and configure it in accordance with the rules for F systems. You can find information on this in following manual: SIMATIC Industrial Software S7 F/FH Systems (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109773062)

Why use fault-tolerant automation systems?

The purpose of fault-tolerance automation systems is to reduce production downtime caused by faults or by maintenance work.

The greater the costs of downtime, the more worthwhile a fault-tolerant system. The costs of investing in a fault-tolerant system are generally higher, but are rapidly recovered by the avoidance of production downtime.

SIMATIC PCS 7 and CPU 410-5H Process Automation

SIMATIC PCS 7 uses selected standard hardware and software components from the TIA building block system for the process control system in the company-wide automation network called Totally Integrated Automation. It offers an open basis for automation solutions with its consistent data management, communication and configuration.

You can use SIMATIC PCS 7 to create customized and project-specific solutions tailored to specific requirements. Further information about these customized solutions can be found in the configuration manuals.

The CPU 410-5H Process Automation is a controller of the latest generation. This controller is specifically designed for the SIMATIC PCS 7 control system. As with previous controllers of the SIMATIC PCS 7 system, the CPU 410-5H Process Automation can be used in all Process Automation industries. Highly flexible scalability based on SIMATIC PCS 7 process objects makes it possible to cover the entire performance range from the smallest to the largest controller in standard, fault-tolerant and fail-safe applications with just one hardware.

You must create a new configuration for use of a CPU 410-5H. The parameters of a CPU 410-5H are set to SIMATIC PCS 7 default values when a new configuration is created. Some parameters that were previously freely assignable cannot be changed in the CPU 410-5H. You can apply charts from existing SIMATIC PCS 7 projects.

The SIMATIC PCS 7 project

A SIMATIC PCS 7 project includes the following objects:

- Hardware configuration
- Blocks
- CFCs and SFCs

These objects are always present - regardless of the number of operator stations and modules and their networking.

SIMATIC PCS 7 applications

You create a SIMATIC PCS 7 project on an engineering station (ES for short). A variety of applications are available on the ES:

- SIMATIC Manager - the central application of SIMATIC PCS 7. From here, you can open all other applications in which you need to make settings for the SIMATIC PCS 7 project. You will set up your entire project from SIMATIC Manager.
- HW Config – configuration of all hardware of a system, e.g., CPUs, power supply, communications processors.
- CFC editor and SFC editor - creation of continuous function charts (CFC) and sequential control systems.
- SIMATIC PCS 7 OS in conjunction with various editors - Implementation of OS configuration

Every application has a graphic user interface for easy operation and clear representation of your configuration data.

Important information on configuration

⚠ WARNING
Open equipment
Risk of death or serious injury.
S7–400 modules are classified as open equipment, meaning you must install the S7–400 in an enclosure, cabinet, or switch room that can only be accessed by means of a key or tool. Only instructed or authorized personnel are permitted to access these enclosures, cabinets, or switch rooms.

Additional information

The components of the standard S7-400 system, e.g., power supplies, I/O modules, CPs, and FMs, are also used in the high availability S7-400H automation system. For a detailed description of all hardware components for S7-400, refer to Reference Manual *S7-400 Automation System, Module Data*.

For the S7-400H high availability automation system, the same rules apply for planning the user program and for using blocks as for a standard S7-400 system. Please observe the descriptions in the *Programming with STEP 7* manual and the *System Software for S7-300/400 System and Standard Functions* reference manual.

See also

Summary of parameters for CPU 410 (Page 50)

2.2 Possible applications

Important information on configuration

⚠ WARNING
Open equipment
S7–400 modules are classified as open equipment, meaning you must install the S7–400 in an enclosure, cabinet, or switch room that can only be accessed by means of a key or tool. Only instructed or authorized personnel are permitted to access these enclosures, cabinets, or switch rooms.

The following figure shows an example of an S7–400H configuration with shared distributed I/O and connection to a redundant plant bus. The next pages deal with the hardware and software components required for the installation and operation of the S7–400H.

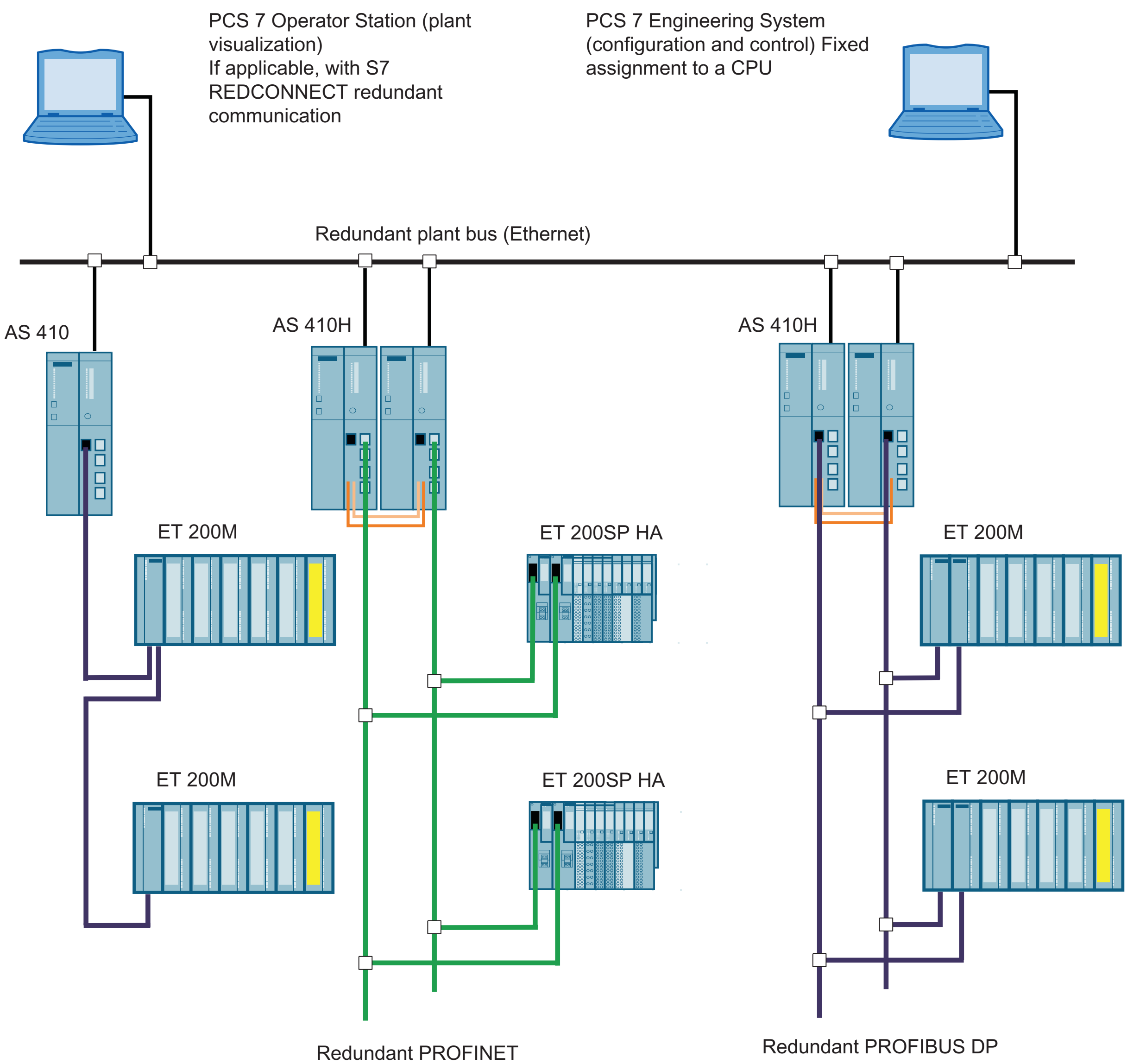


Figure 2-2 Overview

Additional information

The components of the S7–400 standard system are also used in connection with the CPU 410-5H Process Automation. For a detailed description of all hardware components for S7-400, refer to Reference Manual *S7-400 Automation System; Module Specifications*.

2.3 The CPU 410 basic system for stand-alone operation

Definition

Stand-alone operation refers to the use of a CPU 410 in a standard SIMATIC-400 station.

Note

Rack number "0" must be set on the CPU.

Hardware of the basic system

The basic system consists of the required hardware components of a controller. The following figure shows the components in the configuration.

You can expand the basic system with standard S7-400 modules. There are limitations in the case of function and communication modules. See Appendix Function and communication modules that can be used in a redundant configuration (Page 367).

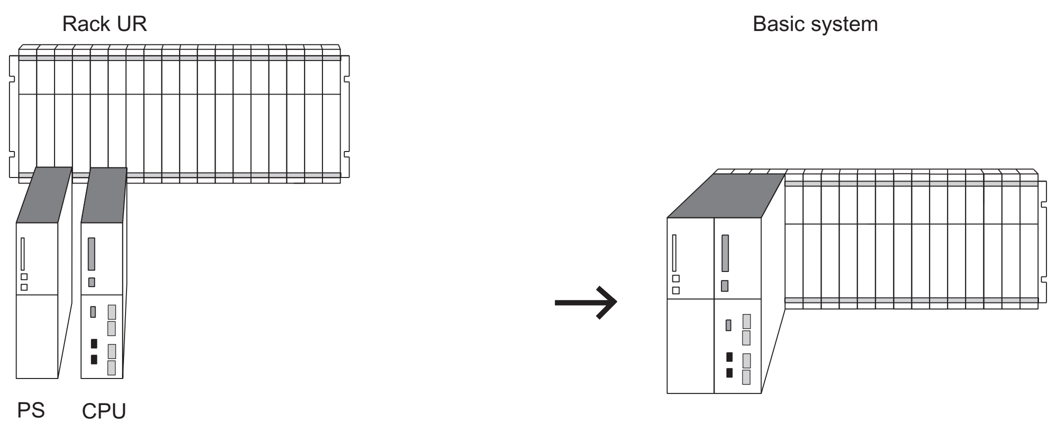


Figure 2-3 Hardware of the S7-400H basic system

Central controller and expansion units

The rack containing the CPU is called the central controller (CC). The racks in the system that are equipped with modules and connected to the CC are the expansion units (EU).

Power supply

For the power supply you need a power supply module from the standard S7-400 system spectrum.

To increase availability of the power supply, you can also use two redundant power supplies. In this case, you use the power supply modules PS 405 R / PS 407 R.

A combination of these can also be used in redundant configurations (PS 405 R with PS 407 R).

Operation

You need a system expansion card for operation of a CPU 410. The system expansion card specifies the maximum number of process objects that can be loaded to the CPU and saves the license information in case of a system expansion. The system expansion card forms a hardware unit with the CPU 410.

2.4 The basic system for redundant operation

Hardware of the basic system

The basic system consists of the hardware components required for a fault-tolerant controller. The following figure shows the components in the configuration.

The basic system can be expanded with standard modules of the S7-400. There are restrictions for the function modules and communication processors. See Appendix Function and communication modules that can be used in a redundant configuration (Page 367).

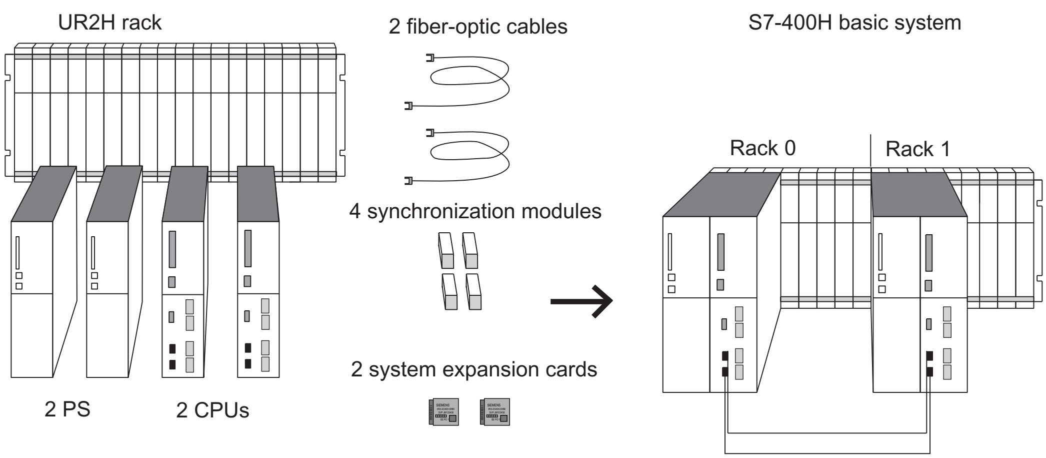


Figure 2-4 Hardware of the S7-400H basic system

Central processing units

The two CPUs are the heart of the S7-400H. Use the switch **on the rear** of the CPU to set the rack numbers. In the following sections, we will refer to the CPU in rack 0 as CPU 0, and to the CPU in rack 1 as CPU 1.

Rack for S7-400H

The UR2-H rack supports the installation of two separate subsystems with nine slots each, and is suitable for installation in 19" cabinets.

You can also set up the S7-400H in two separate racks. The racks UR1, UR2, and CR3 are available for this purpose.

Power supply

You require a power supply module from the standard system range of the S7-400 for each of the two subsystems of the S7-400H.

To increase availability of the power supply, you can also use two redundant power supplies in each subsystem. In this case, you use the power supply modules PS 405 R / PS 407 R.

A combination (PS 405 R with PS 407 R) can also be used.

Synchronization modules

The synchronization modules are used to link the two CPUs. They are installed in the CPUs and interconnected by means of fiber-optic cables.

Two types of synchronization modules are available:

- Synchronization modules for synchronization cables up to 10 meters long
- Synchronization modules for synchronization cables up to 10 kilometers long

You must use 4 synchronization modules of the same type in a fault-tolerant system. The manual with detailed descriptions of the synchronization modules can be found in the manual Synchronization modules for S7-400H (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/).

Fiber-optic cable

The fiber-optic cables are used to interconnect the synchronization modules for the redundant link between the two CPUs. They interconnect the upper and lower synchronization modules in pairs.

You will find the specification of the fiber-optic cables you can use in an S7-400H in the manual Synchronization modules for S7-400H (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/).

Operation

You need a system expansion card for operation of a CPU 410. The system expansion card specifies the maximum number of process objects that can be loaded to the CPU and saves the license information in case of a system expansion. The system expansion card forms a hardware unit with the CPU 410. In redundant operation, each CPU 410 must have a system expansion card with identical quantity framework and scope of functions.

2.5 Rules for H station assembly

The following rules have to be complied with for a fault-tolerant station, in addition to the rules that generally apply to the arrangement of modules in the S7-400:

- The CPUs have to be inserted in the same slots.
- Redundantly used external CP443-5DX DP master interfaces or communication modules must be inserted in the same slots in each case.
- External DP master interface modules for redundant DP master systems may only be inserted in central controllers and not in expansion units.
- Redundantly used CPUs must be identical, which means they must have the same article number, product version and firmware version. It is not the marking on the front side that is decisive for the product version, but the revision of the "Hardware" component ("Module status" dialog mask) to be read using STEP 7.
- Redundantly used other modules must be identical, i.e. they must have the same article number, product version and - if available - firmware version.
- Two CPU 410-5H must have system expansion cards with the same configuration size and the same functional scope.

2.6 I/O for the CPU 410

You can use SIMATIC S7 input/output modules with the CPU 410. The I/O modules can be used in the following devices:

- Central controllers
- Expansion units
- Distributed via PROFIBUS DP
- Distributed via PROFINET IO

The function modules (FM) and communication modules (CP) that can be used with CPU 410 are listed in the appendix Function and communication modules that can be used in a redundant configuration (Page 367).

2.7 I/O configuration variants of the fault-tolerant system

I/O configuration variants

The following configuration variants are available for the input/output modules:

- In stand-alone operation: one-sided configuration.
  In the one-sided configuration, there is a single set of the input/output modules (single-channel) that are addressed by the CPU.
- In redundant operation: Single-channel switched configuration with enhanced availability.
  In the single-channel switched distributed configuration, there is a single set of the I/O modules, but they can be addressed by both subsystems.
- In redundant operation: Dual-channel configuration with maximum availability.
  In dual-channel switched configuration, there are two of each of the input/output modules and the modules can be addressed by both subsystems.

2.8 Configuration tools (STEP 7 HW Config, SIMATIC PCS 7)

Like S7-400, CPU 410-5H Process Automation is configured with STEP 7 HW Config.

You can find information on limitations for configuring CPUs and the fault-tolerant system in the STEP 7 HW Config online help.

Optional software

You can use all optional packages available in SIMATIC PCS 7.

2.9 The SIMATIC PCS 7 project

STEP 7

STEP 7 is the core component for configuring the SIMATIC PCS 7 process control system with the engineering system.

STEP 7 supports the various tasks involved in creating a project with the following project views:

- Component view (HW Config)
- Process object view
- Technological perspective

The hardware that you need in a SIMATIC project, such as automation systems, communication components, and process I/O, is stored in an electronic catalog. You configure this hardware and assign the hardware parameters with HW Config.

You can protect function blocks (FBs) and functions (FCs) against unauthorized access using the S7 Block Privacy application. You can no longer edit protected blocks in STEP 7. Only the interfaces of the blocks are then visible.

If you protect blocks with S7 Block Privacy, you may encounter longer download and startup times.

2.9.1 Scaling and licensing (scaling concept)

License management

License objects are process objects (PO) and their associated runtime licenses (RT-PO). When a SIMATIC PCS 7 application is created, the SIMATIC PCS 7 system determines the number of POs that corresponds to the scope of that application.

For productive operation of the SIMATIC PCS 7 application, there must be enough runtime licenses (AS RT POs) to cover the required number of POs. The system expansion card of the associated CPU 410-5H must also have at least the same PO count.

The CPU is scaled by means of the system expansion card, which means the system expansion card determines the maximum quantity of POs. The CFC counts and manages the POs used in the application. The number of POs that can be downloaded to the CPU is limited to the maximum number of POs specified by the system expansion card.

Use of the system expansion card

The number of POs of a CPU 410 is stored on a system expansion card (SEC). You insert the SEC in a slot on the back of the CPU before commissioning the CPU. The SEC is an essential part of the CPU hardware. The CPU cannot be operated without an SEC. If no valid SEC is detected, the corresponding CPU does not start up. A loss of synchronization is triggered in the fault-tolerant system, in which a start-up block prevents automatic reconnection. You cannot operate two CPUs 410 redundantly with two different SECs.

Expansion of a PCS 7 project

When you expand a SIMATIC PCS 7 project and load it to the CPU, the system checks whether the project can run in the CPU with the current number of POs. If this is not the case, you have two options to expand the number of POs:

- Replacing the system expansion card
- Online with CPU 410 expansion packs.
  There are expansion packs with 100 POs and with 500 POs. These can also be combined.

Expanding the number of POs by replacing the SEC

To replace the system expansion card (SEC), you must remove the CPU. You must replace both SECs for redundant operation. The new SECs must have the same number of POs.

Expanding the number of POs without replacing the SEC

You can expand the number of POs in four steps without replacing the SEC.

Step 1: Order the number CPU 410 expansion packs you need using the regular ordering process. You can order expansions for 100 POs and 500 POs.

Step 2: Assign the CPU 410 expansion packs to the respective CPU.

Step 3: Activate the expansion.

Step 4: Transfer the release of the expansion to the CPU.

A detailed description of the procedure is available in the *PCS 7 process control system, Service support and diagnostics (V8.1)* manual.

Note

This function can only be used to **expand** the number of POs. You cannot the reduce the number of POs without replacing the SEC.

Expansion of the functionality of the CPU

You can activate support for redundant subsystems for the CPU:

- Step 1: Follow the standard ordering procedure to obtain the necessary license.
- Step 2: Assign the license to the relevant CPU.
- Step 3: Activate the expansion.
- Step 4: Transfer the activation of the expansion to the CPU.

Configuration of the CPU 410

3

3.1 Operator controls and indicators on the CPU 410

Arrangement of the operator controls and indicators on the CPU 410

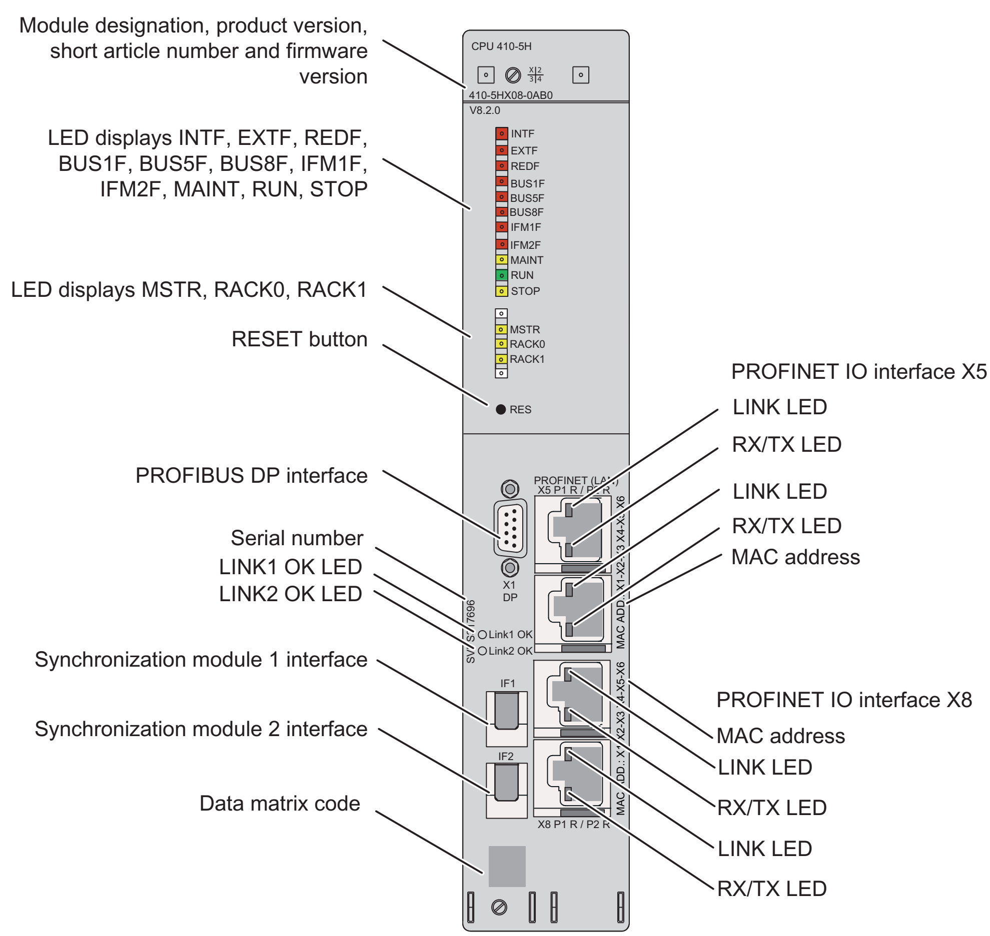


Figure 3-1 Arrangement of the operator controls and indicators on the CPU 410

LED displays

The following table gives an overview of the available LED displays.

Sections CPU 410 monitoring functions (Page 41) and Status and error displays (Page 43) describe the states and errors/faults indicated by these LEDs.

Table 3-1 LED displays on the CPUs

LED display	Color	Meaning
Top bar		
INTF	red	Internal error
EXTF	red	External error
REDF	red	Loss of redundancy/Redundancy fault
BUS1F	red	Bus fault at the PROFIBUS interface
BUS5F	red	Bus fault at the first PROFINET IO interface
BUS8F	red	Bus fault at the second PROFINET IO interface
IFM1F	red	Error in synchronization module 1
IFM2F	red	Error in synchronization module 2
MAINT	yellow	Maintenance request pending
RUN	green	RUN mode
STOP	yellow	STOP mode
Bottom bar		
MSTR	yellow	CPU controls the process
RACK0	yellow	CPU in rack 0
RACK1	yellow	CPU in rack 1
For the interfaces		
LINK	green	Connection at the PROFINET IO interface is active
RX/TX	orange	Receiving or sending data at the PROFINET IO interface.
LINK 1 OK	green	Connection via synchronization module 1 is active and OK
LINK 2 OK	green	Connection via synchronization module 2 is active and OK

Reset button

You operate the reset button in the following cases:

- You want to reset the CPU to the factory state, see section Resetting the CPU 410 to delivery condition (reset to factory setting) (Page 142)
- You want to reset the CPU during operation, see section Reset during operation (Page 143)

The reset button is on the front of the CPU directly below the LED strip. Press it with a suitably thin round object.

Slot for synchronization modules

The synchronization modules for redundant operation are inserted in these slots. See section Synchronization modules (Page 235).

PROFIBUS DP interface

You can connect the distributed I/O to the PROFIBUS DP interface.

PROFINET IO interface

The PROFINET IO interfaces establish the connection to Industrial Ethernet. The PROFINET IO interfaces also serve as the access point for the engineering system. The PROFINET IO interfaces feature two switched ports with external connectors (RJ 45). You can find further information on PROFINET IO in sections PROFINET IO systems (Page 54).

The meaning of the interface labels is as follows:

Label	Meaning
X5 P1 R	Interface X5, Port 1, ring port possible
X5 P2 R	Interface X5, Port 2, ring port possible
X8 P1 R	Interface X8, Port 1, ring port possible
X8 P2 R	Interface X8, Port 2, ring port possible

When media redundancy is activated, the corresponding port is configured as a ring port.

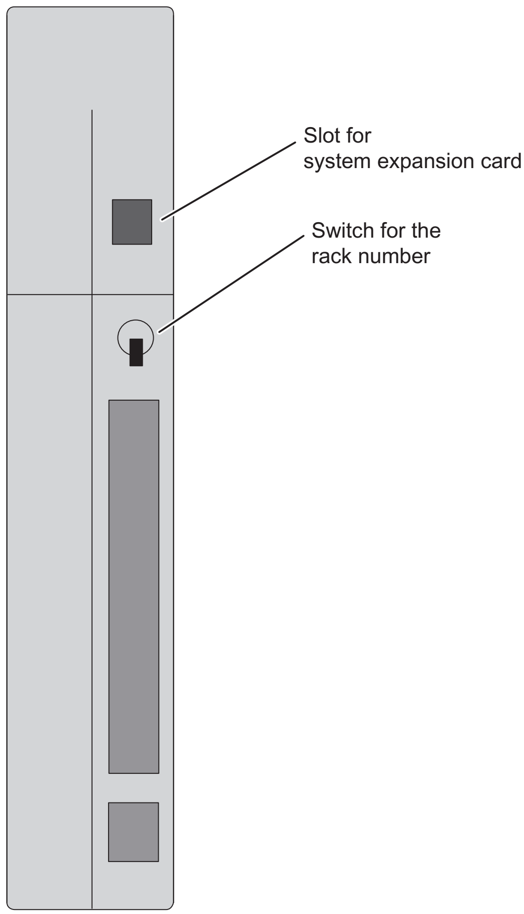
NOTICE

Connecting only to Ethernet LAN

These interfaces only allow connection to an Ethernet LAN. You cannot connect them to the public telecommunication network, for example.

You may only connect PROFINET IO-compliant network components to this interface.

Rear of the CPU 410



Setting the rack number

Use the switch on the rear panel of the CPU to set the rack number. The switch has two positions: 1 (up) and 0 (down). One CPU is allocated rack number 0, and the partner CPU is assigned rack number 1. The default setting of all CPUs is rack number 0.

Slot for system expansion card

The back of the CPU has a slot in which you insert the system expansion card (SEC) before commissioning the CPU. The SEC contains information that specifies the performance class of the CPU in terms of the amount of POs it supports. The SEC is an essential part of the CPU hardware. The CPU cannot be operated without an SEC. If an SEC is not detected, the corresponding CPU goes to STOP and requests a memory reset. "STOP by CPU memory management" is also entered in the diagnostics buffer.
You need a small screwdriver to remove the SEC. Place the screwdriver at the top of the SEC slot and lift out the SEC with the screwdriver.

3.2 CPU 410 monitoring functions

Monitoring functions and error messages

The hardware of the CPU and operating system provide monitoring functions to ensure proper operation and defined reactions to errors. Various errors may also trigger a reaction in the user program.

The table below provides an overview of possible errors and their causes, and the corresponding responses of the CPU.

Additional test and information functions are available in each CPU; they can be initiated in STEP 7.

Type of error	Cause of error	Error LED
Access error	Module failure (SM, FM, CP)	EXTF
Time error	• The user program execution time (OB 1 and all interrupts and error OBs) exceeds the specified maximum cycle time. • OB request error • Overflow of the start information buffer • Time-of-day error interrupt	INTF
Power supply module(s) fault (not power failure)	In the central or S7-400 expansion rack • at least one backup battery of the power supply module is completely discharged. • the backup battery voltage is missing. • the 24 V supply to the power supply module has failed.	EXTF
Diagnostic interrupt	An I/O module with interrupt capability reports a diagnostic interrupt The synchronization module signals a diagnostic interrupt The LED EXTF lights up with the first incoming diagnostic interrupt and goes out with the outgoing diagnostic interrupt.	EXTF
Swapping interrupt	Removing or inserting a module as well as inserting an incorrect module type. Removing a synchronization module.	EXTF
Redundancy error	• Loss of redundancy on the CPUs • Redundancy loss/ station failure of a switched DP station • Failure of a DP master • Redundancy loss/station failure of a switched IO device	REDF
CPU hardware fault	• A memory error was detected and eliminated	INTF
Program execution error	• Priority class is called, but the corresponding OB is not available. • In the event of an SFB call: Missing or faulty instance DB • Process image update error	INTF EXTF
Failure of a rack/station	• Power failure in an S7-400 expansion unit • Failure of a DP/PN segment • Failure of a coupling segment: Missing or defective IM, interrupted cable	EXTF BUSF for PN and DP REDF for redundant segments

Type of error	Cause of error	Error LED
Communication error	Communication error: • Time synchronization • Access to DB when exchanging data via communications function blocks	INTF
Execution canceled	The execution of a program block was canceled. Possible reasons for the cancellation are: • Nesting depth of nesting levels too great • Nesting depth of master control relay too great • Nesting depth of synchronization errors too great • Nesting depth of block call commands (U stack) too great • Nesting depth of block call commands (B stack) too great • Error during allocation of local data Such errors cannot occur with blocks from a SIMATIC PCS 7 library.	INTF
Missing license for Runtime software	The Runtime software could not be completely licensed (internal error).	INTF
Programming error	User program error: • BCD conversion error • Range length error • Range error • Alignment error • Write error • Timer number error • Counter number error • Block number error • Block not loaded Such errors cannot occur with blocks from a SIMATIC PCS 7 library.	INTF
MC7 code error	Error in the compiled user program, for example, illegal OP code or a jump beyond the block end Such errors cannot occur with blocks from a SIMATIC PCS 7 library.	INTF

3.3 Status and error displays

RUN and STOP LEDs

The RUN and STOP LEDs provide information about the CPU's currently active operating state.

Table 3-2 Possible states of the RUN and STOP LEDs

LED		Meaning
RUN	**STOP**	
Lit	Dark	CPU is in RUN state.
Dark	Lit	CPU is in STOP state. The user program is not being executed. Cold restart/restart is possible.
Flashes 2 Hz	Flashes 2 Hz	The CPU has detected a serious error that is blocking startup. All other LEDs also flash at 2 Hz.
Flashes 0.5 Hz	Lit	HOLD status has been triggered by a test function.
Flashes 2 Hz	Lit	A cold restart/restart was initiated. The cold restart/warm start may take a minute or longer, depending on the length of the called OB. If the CPU still does not change to RUN, there might be an error in the system configuration, for example.
Dark	Flashes 2 Hz	• A high-quality RAM test (self-test) is executed after POWER ON. The duration of the self-test is at least 7 minutes. • CPU memory reset is active.
Dark	Flashes 0.5 Hz	The CPU requests a memory reset.
Flashes 0.5 Hz	Flashes 0.5 Hz	• Troubleshooting mode • Startup (POWER ON) of a CPU on which a large number of blocks is loaded. If encrypted blocks are loaded, startup may take a longer time depending on the number of such blocks. This display also indicates that internal processes are busy on the CPU and prevent access to the CPU until completed.
Flashes 0.5 Hz	Flashes 2 Hz	The CPU has downloaded another program and is powering up after power on. Note that, if necessary, another program and a configuration may be present in the retentive load memory in the CPU. Ensure that this cannot pose a hazard if the CPU switches automatically to RUN state. If you have no information about the content of the load memory, set the CPU to delivery state before powering it up.

MSTR, RACK0, and RACK1 LEDs

The three LEDs MSTR, RACK0, and RACK1 provide information about the rack number set on the CPU and show which CPU controls the switched I/O.

Table 3-3 Possible states of the MSTR, RACK0 and RACK1 LEDs

LED			Meaning
MSTR	**RACK0**	**RACK1**	
Lit	Irrelevant	Irrelevant	CPU controls switched I/O
Irrelevant	Lit	Dark	CPU on rack number 0
Irrelevant	Dark	Lit	CPU on rack number 1

INTF and EXTF LEDs

The two INTF and EXTF LEDs provide information about errors and other particular things that happen during user program execution.

Table 3-4 Possible states of the INTF and EXTF LEDs

LED		Meaning
INTF	**EXTF**	
Lit	Irrelevant	An internal error was detected (programming, parameter assignment, or license error).
Irrelevant	Lit	An external error has been detected (i.e. an error not caused by the CPU)

BUS1F, BUS5F, and BUS8F LEDs

The BUS1F, BUS5F and BUS8F LEDs indicate errors associated with the PROFIBUS DP interface and the PROFINET IO interfaces.

Table 3-5 Possible states of the BUS1F, BUS5F, and BUS8F LEDs

LED			Meaning
BUS1F	**BUS5F**	**BUS8F**	
Lit	Irrelevant	Irrelevant	An error was detected on the PROFIBUS DP interface X1.
Irrelevant	Lit	Irrelevant	An error was detected on the first PROFINET IO interface X5. A PROFINET IO system is configured but not connected.
Irrelevant	Irrelevant	Lit	An error was detected on the second PROFINET IO interface X8. A PROFINET IO system is configured but not connected.
Irrelevant	Flashes	Irrelevant	One or more devices on the first PROFINET IO interface X5 is not responding.
Irrelevant	Irrelevant	Flashes	One or more devices on the second PROFINET IO interface X8 is not responding.
Flashes	Irrelevant	Irrelevant	One or more slaves on the PROFIBUS DP interface X1 is not responding.

IFM1F and IFM2F LEDs

The IFM1F and IFM2F LEDs indicate errors on the first or second synchronization module.

Table 3-6 Possible states of the IFM1F and IFM2F LEDs

LED		Meaning
IFM1F	**IFM2F**	
Lit	Irrelevant	An error was detected on synchronization module 1.
Irrelevant	Lit	An error was detected on synchronization module 2

LINK and RX/TX LEDs

The LINK and RX/TX LEDs indicate the current state of the PROFINET IO interfaces.

Table 3-7 Possible states of the LINK and RX/TX LEDs

LED		Meaning
LINK	**RX/TX**	
Lit	Irrelevant	Connection at the PROFINET IO interface is active.
Irrelevant	Flashes	Receiving or sending data at the PROFINET IO interface. If the transmission and reception frequency is high, the LED lights up continuously.

Note

The LINK and RX/TX LEDs are located directly next to the sockets of the PROFINET IO interfaces. They are not labeled.

REDF LED

The REDF LED indicates specific system states and redundancy errors.

Table 3-8 Possible states of the REDF LED

REDF LED	System state	Basic requirements
Flashes 0.5 Hz	Link-up	-
Flashes 2 Hz	Update	-

REDF LED	System state	Basic requirements
Dark	Redundant (CPUs are redundant)	No redundancy error
Lit	Redundant (CPUs are redundant)	There is an I/O redundancy error: • Failure of a DP master, or partial or total failure of a DP master system • Failure of a PN IO subsystem • Loss of redundancy on the DP slave • Loss of redundancy at the PN IO device • Loss of redundancy on the DP slave/slave failure • Loss of redundancy at the PN IO device/device failure

LEDs LINK1 OK and LINK2 OK

When commissioning the fault-tolerant system, you can use the LINK1 OK and LINK2 OK LEDs to check the quality of the connection between the CPUs.

Table 3-9 Possible states of the LINK1 OK and LINK2 OK LEDs

LED LINKx OK	Meaning
Lit	The connection is OK
Flashes	The connection is not reliable, and the signal is disrupted Check the connectors and cables Ensure that the fiber-optic cables are installed in accordance with the guidelines in the "Synchronization modules for S7-400H" manual. Check whether the synchronization module works in another CPU.
Dark	The connection is interrupted, or there is insufficient light intensity Check the connectors and cables Ensure that the fiber-optic cables are installed in accordance with the guidelines in the "Synchronization modules for S7-400H" manual. Check whether the synchronization module works in another CPU. If necessary, replace the synchronization module in the other CPU.

LED MAINT

This LED indicates that maintenance is required. Maintenance is required when there are problems with the synchronization modules or if maintenance is demanded by one of the PROFINET devices. For more information, refer to the STEP 7 Online Help.

The LED MAINT also displays an error during address assignment of the PROFINET interfaces X5 or X8.

Diagnostics buffer

In STEP 7, you can select "PLC -> Module Information" to read the cause of an error from the diagnostics buffer.

3.4 PROFIBUS DP interface (X1)

Connectable devices

The PROFIBUS DP interface can be used to set up a PROFIBUS master system, or to connect PROFIBUS I/O devices.

All DP slaves that conform to the standard can be connected to the PROFIBUS DP interface.

You can connect the PROFIBUS DP I/O to the PROFIBUS DP interface in redundant or single-channel switched configuration.

In this case, the CPU is the DP master, which is connected to the passive slave stations or, in stand-alone operation, to other DP masters.

Some of the devices that can be connected draw 24 V from the interface for their power supply. This voltage is provided as non-isolated voltage at the PROFIBUS DP interface.

Connectors

Use only PROFIBUS DP bus connectors or PROFIBUS cables for connecting devices to the PROFIBUS DP interface (*see installation manual*).

Redundant operation

The PROFIBUS DP interfaces have the same baud rate and the same operating mode in redundant operation.

3.5 PROFINET IO interfaces (X5, X8)

Assigning an IP address

You assign an IP address to an Ethernet interface in the CPU properties using HW Config. Download the modified configuration to the CPU. The IP address is valid for the duration of the project.

For technical reasons, the two interfaces X5/X8 must be located in different IP subnets.

Devices that can be connected via PROFINET IO (PN)

- SIMATIC PCS 7 ES/OS with Ethernet network card or CP16xx communications processor
- Active network components, e.g., Scalance X200
- S7-300/S7-400, e.g., CPU 417-5H or communication processor CP443-1
- PROFINET IO devices, e.g. ET 200SP HA or ET 200M

Connectors

The PROFINET interfaces are implemented as Ethernet RJ45 interfaces. Always use RJ45 connectors to hook up devices to a PROFINET interface.

Properties of the PROFINET IO interfaces

Protocols and communication functions	
PROFINET IO	
According to IEC 61784-2	Conformance Class A und B
Open block communication over	• TCP • UDP • ISO-on-TCP
S7 communication	Yes
PG functions	Yes
Port statistics of PN IO devices (SNMP)	Yes
Detection of the network topology (LLDP)	Yes
Media redundancy (MRP)	Yes
Time synchronization in NTP method as client	Yes
Time synchronization in SIMATIC method	Yes
Time synchronization in pTCP method	Yes

You can find further information about the properties of the PROFINET IO interfaces in the technical specifications of the CPUs in section Technical data (Page 239).

Connection per interface	
Version	2 x RJ45
	Switch with 2 ports
Media	Twisted pair Cat5
Transmission rate	10/100 Mbps
	Autosensing Autocrossing Autonegotiation

Note

Networking of PROFINET IO components

The PROFINET IO interfaces of our devices are set to "automatic setting" (autonegotiation) by default. Verify that all devices connected to the PROFINET IO interface of the CPU are also set to the "Autonegotiation" mode. This is the default setting of standard PROFINET IO/Ethernet components.

If you connect a device to a PROFINET IO interface of the CPU that does not support the "automatic setting" (Autonegotiation) operating mode or you choose a setting other than the "automatic setting" (Autonegotiation) for this device, note the following:

- PROFINET IO requires 100 Mbps full-duplex operation, which means if the PROFINET IO interface of the CPU is used simultaneously for PROFINET IO communication and Ethernet communication, operation of the PROFINET IO interface is permissible only in 100 Mbps full-duplex mode.
- If an PROFINET IO interface of the CPU is used for Ethernet communication only, 100 Mbps full-duplex mode is possible.

Background: If a switch that is permanently set to "10 Mbps half-duplex" is connected to an interface of the CPU, the "Autonegotiation" setting forces the CPU to adapt itself to the settings of the partner device, which means the communication operates de facto at "10 Mbps half-duplex". This is permitted for an Ethernet communication. But because PROFINET IO demands operation at 100 Mbps full-duplex, this would not be a long-term option to address IO devices.

Reference

- For details about PROFINET, refer to PROFINET System Description (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/19292127)
- For detailed information about Ethernet networks, network configuration and network components refer to SIMATIC NET Manual: Twisted-Pair and Fiber-Optic Networks (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/8763736).
- For additional information about PROFINET IO, refer to: PROFINET (https://www.profibus.com/)

3.6 Summary of parameters for CPU 410

Default values

All parameters are set to factory defaults. These defaults are suitable for a wide range of standard applications and can be used to operate the CPU 410 directly without having to make any additional settings.

You can define the defaults using the "Configuring Hardware" tool in STEP 7.

Parameter blocks

The responses and properties of the CPU are defined in parameters. The CPU 410 has a defined default setting. You can modify this default setting by editing the parameters in the hardware configuration.

The list below provides an overview of the assignable system properties of the CPUs.

- General properties such as the CPU name
- Watchdog interrupts, e.g., priority, interval duration
- Diagnostics/clock, e.g., time-of-day synchronization
- Security levels
- H parameters, e.g., duration of a test cycle
- Startup, for example, times for completed message from modules and transfer of parameters to modules

Parameter assignment tool

You can set the individual CPU parameters using "Configuring hardware" in STEP 7. For additional information, see I/O configuration variants (Page 57).

Further settings

- The rack number of a CPU 410, 0 or 1
  Use the selector switch on the rear panel of the CPU to change the rack number.
- The operating mode of a CPU 410, stand-alone operation or redundant operation
  You set the operating mode by configuring a SIMATIC 400 station (stand-alone operation) or a SIMATIC H station in HW Config.

PROFIBUS DP

4

4.1 CPU 410 as PROFIBUS DP master

Startup of the DP master system

You use the following parameters to set startup monitoring of the DP master:

- Ready message from module
- Transfer of parameters to modules

This means that the DP slaves must be started up and their parameters assigned by the CPU (as DP master) within the set time.

PROFIBUS address of the DP master

PROFIBUS addresses 0 to 126 are permissible.

Output and input data length

The maximum output or input data length you can use for each DP station is 244 bytes.

4.2 Diagnostics of the CPU 410 as PROFIBUS DP master

Diagnostics using LED displays

The following table explains the meaning of the BUS1F LED.

Table 4-1 Meaning of the "BUSF" LED of the CPU 410 as DP master

BUS1F	Meaning	Remedy
Off	Configuration correct; all configured slaves are addressable	-
Lit	• Bus fault (physical fault)	• Check whether the bus cable has shorted.
	• DP interface fault • Different baud rates in multi-DP master operation (only in stand-alone operation)	• Analyze the diagnostic data. Reconfigure or correct the configuration.
Flashes	• Station failure • At least one of the assigned slaves cannot be addressed	• Check whether the bus cable is connected to the CPU 410 or the bus is interrupted. • Wait until the CPU 410 has started up. Check the DP slaves if the LED does not stop flashing. If possible, evaluate the diagnostics of the DP slaves with direct access via the bus.

Diagnostic addresses for the DP master

You assign diagnostic addresses for PROFIBUS DP for the CPU 410.

When configuring the DP master, you specify a diagnostic address for the DP slave in the associated project of the DP master.

This diagnostic address is used by DP master to obtain information about the status of DP slave or a bus interruption.

PROFINET IO 5

5.1 Introduction

What is PROFINET IO?

PROFINET IO is the open, cross-vendor Industrial Ethernet standard for automation. It enables continuous communication from the business management level down to the field level. PROFINET IO is based on switched Ethernet with full duplex mode and a bandwidth of 100 Mbps.

With PROFINET IO a switching technology is implemented that allows all stations to access the network at any time. As a result, the network can be utilized more efficiently through simultaneous data transmission of multiple nodes. Simultaneous sending and receiving is enabled through the full-duplex operation of Switched Ethernet.

In PROFINET IO communication, a portion of the transmission time is reserved for cyclic, deterministic data transmission (real-time communication). This allows you to split the communication cycle into a deterministic and an open part. Communication takes place in real-time.

RT communication (real-time communication)

RT communication is the basic communication mechanism for PROFINET IO and is used during device monitoring. The transmission of real-time data with PROFINET IO is based on the cyclic data exchange with a provider-consumer model. To better scale the communication options and therefor the determinism for PROFINET IO, real-time classes have been defined for data exchange. These are unsynchronized and synchronized communication. The details are handled independently in the field devices. Real-time automatically includes an increase in priority with PROFINET compared to UDP/IP frames. This is necessary to prioritize the transmission of data in the switches so that RT frames are not delayed by UDP/IP frames.

Documentation on the Internet

Comprehensive information about PROFINET (https://www.profibus.com/) is available on the Internet.

Also observe the following documents:

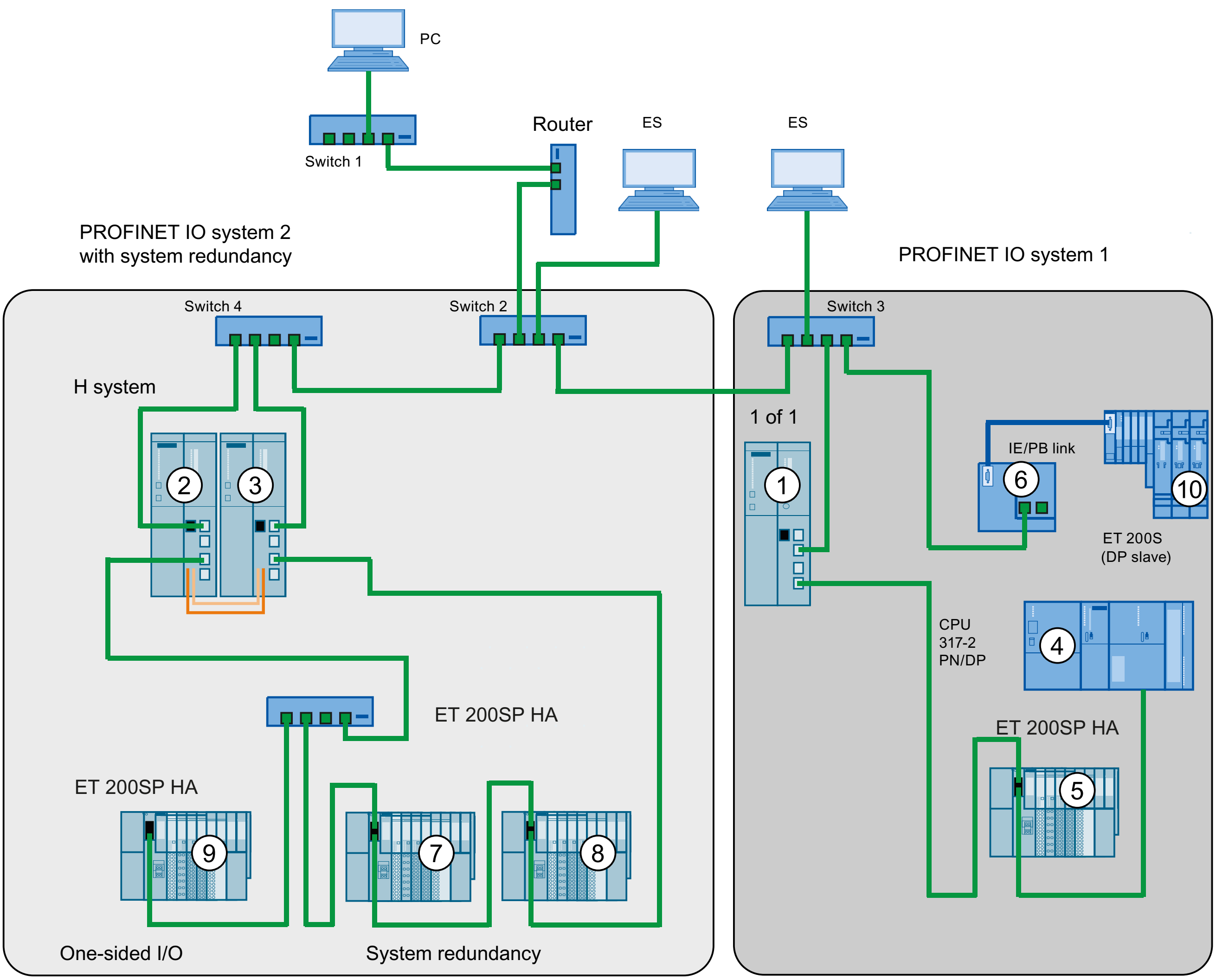
- Installation guideline
- Assembly guideline
- PROFINET_Guideline_Assembly

Additional information on the use of PROFINET IO in automation engineering is available at the following Internet address (https://new.siemens.com/global/en/products/automation/industrial-communication/profinet.html).

5.2 PROFINET IO systems

Functions of PROFINET IO

The following graphic shows the new functions in PROFINET IO:



The graphic shows	Examples of connection paths
The connection of company network and field level	You can access devices at the field level from PCs in your company network • Example: PC - Firewall - Switch 1 - Router - Switch 2 - Switch 3 - CPU 410 ①.
Connections between the automation system and field level	You can also access one of the other areas of the Industrial Ethernet from an ES on the field level. Example: • ES - Integrated switch 3 - Switch 2 - Switch 4 - CPU 410 ③.

The graphic shows	Examples of connection paths
The IO controller of CPU 410 ① spans PROFINET IO system 1 and directly controls devices on the Industrial Ethernet and PROFIBUS.	At this point, you see the IO features between the IO controller, intelligent device, and the IO device(s) on Industrial Ethernet: • The CPU 410 ① is the IO controller for the following components: – for the ET 200SP HA I/O device ⑤ – for switch 3 – for the I device CPU 317-2 PN/DP ④ – for the IE/PB link ⑥ • The IE/PB link is the master for the DP slave ⑩ and maps the latter as a device ⑩ in the PROFINET IO.
The fault-tolerant system, consisting of CPU 410 ② + ③, spans the PROFINET IO system 2 as IO controller. This IO controller operates IO devices in system redundancy as well as a one-sided IO device.	The fault-tolerant system, consisting of CPU 410 ② + ③, spans the PROFINET IO controller system 2 as IO controller. This IO controller operates IO devices in system redundancy as well as a one-sided IO device. Here, you can see that a fault-tolerant system can operate both system-redundant IO devices and one-sided IO devices: • The fault-tolerant system with its two IO controllers in rack 0 and rack 1 provides the IO controller for both system-redundant IO devices ET 200 ⑦ + ⑧ and for the one-sided IO device ⑨.

Further information

You will find further information about PROFINET IO in the documents listed below:

- In manual PROFINET system description (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/19292127)
- In Programming Manual Migration from PROFIBUS DP to PROFINET IO (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/19289930)

5.3 Device replacement without exchangeable medium / ES

IO devices having this function can be replaced in a simple manner:

- No exchangeable medium with stored device name is required. The name that you assigned for the IO device in HW Config applies.
- The PROFINET IO topology must be configured in HW Config for this.
- The "Support device replacement without exchangeable medium" option must be selected on the interface of the IO controller.
- The device name does not have to be assigned with the ES.
  The replacement IO device receives the device name from the IO controller. The IO controller uses the configured topology and the relations determined by the IO devices. The configured target topology must match the actual topology.

Before reusing IO devices that you already had in operation, reset these to factory settings.

Additional information

For additional information, refer to the STEP 7 Online Help and to the PROFINET System Description (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/19292127) manual.

I/O configuration variants

6

6.1 Stand-alone operation

Overview

This section provides information needed for stand-alone operation of the CPU 410. You will learn:

- how stand-alone operation is defined
- when stand-alone operation is required
- what you have to take into account for stand-alone operation
- how the fault tolerance-specific LEDs react in stand-alone operation
- how you configure a CPU 410 for stand-alone operation
- how you can expand a CPU 410 into a fault-tolerant system
- which system modifications are possible during stand-alone operation and which hardware requirements must be met

Definition

Stand-alone operation is the use of a CPU 410 in a standard SIMATIC-400 station.

Reasons for stand-alone operation

- No requirements for increased availability
- Use of fault-tolerant communication connections
- Configuration of the S7-400F fail-safe automation system

Note

The self-test is an integral component of the F-concept of the CPU 410 and is also performed in stand-alone operation.

What you must observe for stand-alone operation of a CPU 410

Observe the following for stand-alone operation of a CPU 410:

- No synchronization modules are permitted to be inserted in stand-alone operation of a CPU 410.
- The rack number must be set to "0".

Note the different procedures described below for any system change during operation:

Table 6-1 System modifications during operation

CPU 410 in stand-alone operation	CPU 410 in redundant system state
As described in Plant changes in RUN - CiR (Page 155).	As described in section Plant changes during redundant operation - H-CiR (Page 195) for redundant operation.

Fault tolerance-specific LEDs

The REDF, IFM1F, IFM2F, MSTR, RACK0 and RACK1 LEDs show the reaction specified in the table below in stand-alone operation.

LED	Behavior
REDF	Dark
IFM1F	Dark
IFM2F	Dark
MSTR	Lit
RACK0	Lit
RACK1	Dark

Configuring stand-alone operation

Requirement: No synchronization module is permitted to be inserted in the CPU 410.

Procedure:

1. Insert the CPU 410 in a standard rack (Insert > Station > SIMATIC 400 Station in SIMATIC Manager).
2. Configure the station with the CPU 410 corresponding to your hardware configuration.
3. Assign the parameters of the CPU 410. Use the default values, or customize the necessary parameters.
4. Configure the necessary networks and connections. For stand-alone operation, you can also configure "fault-tolerant S7 connections".

For help on procedure refer to the Help topics in SIMATIC Manager.

Expanding the configuration to a fault-tolerant system

Note

You can only expand your system to a fault-tolerant system if you have not assigned any odd numbers to expansion units in stand-alone operation.

If you later want to expand the CPU 410 to a fault-tolerant system, proceed as follows:

1. Open a new project and insert a fault-tolerant station.
2. Copy the entire rack from the standard SIMATIC-400 station and insert it twice into the fault-tolerant station.
3. Insert the required subnets and IO devices.
4. Copy the DP slaves from the old stand-alone operation project to the fault-tolerant station as required.
5. Reconfigure the communication connections.
6. Carry out all changes required, such as the insertion of one-sided I/O.

For information on how to configure the project, refer to the online help.

Changing the operating mode of a CPU 410

To change the operating mode of a CPU 410, you proceed differently depending on which operating mode you want to change to and which rack number was configured for the CPU:

Change from stand-alone to redundant operation, rack number 0

1. Insert the synchronization modules into the CPU.
2. Carry out a CPU memory reset or load a project to the CPU in which the CPU is configured for redundant operation.
3. Insert the synchronization cables into the synchronization modules.

Change from stand-alone mode to redundant operation, rack number 1

1. Set rack number 1 on the CPU.
2. Install the CPU.
3. Carry out a CPU memory reset.
4. Insert the synchronization modules into the CPU.
5. Insert the synchronization cables into the synchronization modules.

Changing from redundant to stand-alone operation

1. Remove the CPU.
2. Remove the synchronization modules.
3. Set rack number 0 on the CPU.
4. Install the CPU.
5. Download a project to the CPU in which the CPU is configured for stand-alone operation.

6.2 Fail-safe operation

Ensuring functional safety

A safety-related system encompasses sensors for signal acquisition, an evaluation unit for processing the signals, and actuators for signal output.

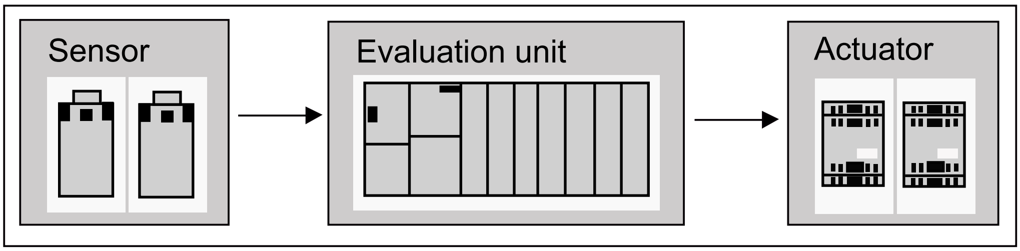


Figure 6-1 Processing chain: acquire, process, output

All of the components contribute to the functional safety of the system, in order, when a dangerous event occurs, to put the system into a safe state or to keep it in a safe state.

Safety of fail-safe SIMATIC Safety Integrated systems

For SIMATIC Safety Integrated systems, the evaluation unit consists, for example, of fail-safe single-channel CPUs and fail-safe dual-channel I/O modules. The fail-safe communications take place via the safety-related PROFIsafe profile.

Functions of a fail-safe CPU

A fail-safe CPU has the following functions:

- Comprehensive self-tests and self-diagnostics check the fail-safe state of the CPU.
- Simultaneous execution of standard and safety programs on one CPU. When there are changes to the standard user program, there are no unwanted effects on the safety program.

S7 F/FH Systems

The S7 F Systems optional package adds security functions to the CPU 410. The current TÜV certificates are available on the Internet: TÜV certificates (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/) under "Product Support".

Fail-safe I/O modules (F-modules)

F-modules have all of the required hardware and software components for safe processing in accordance with the required safety class. This includes wire tests for short-circuit and cross-circuit. You only program the user safety functions.

Safety-related input and output signals form the interface to the process. This enables, for example, direct connection of single-channel and two-channel I/O signals from devices such as EMERGENCY STOP buttons or light barriers.

Safety-related communication with PROFIsafe profile

PROFIsafe was the first communication standard according to the IEC 61508 safety standard that permits both standard and safety-related communication on one bus line. This not only results in an enormous savings potential with regard to cabling and part variety, but also the advantage of retrofit ability.

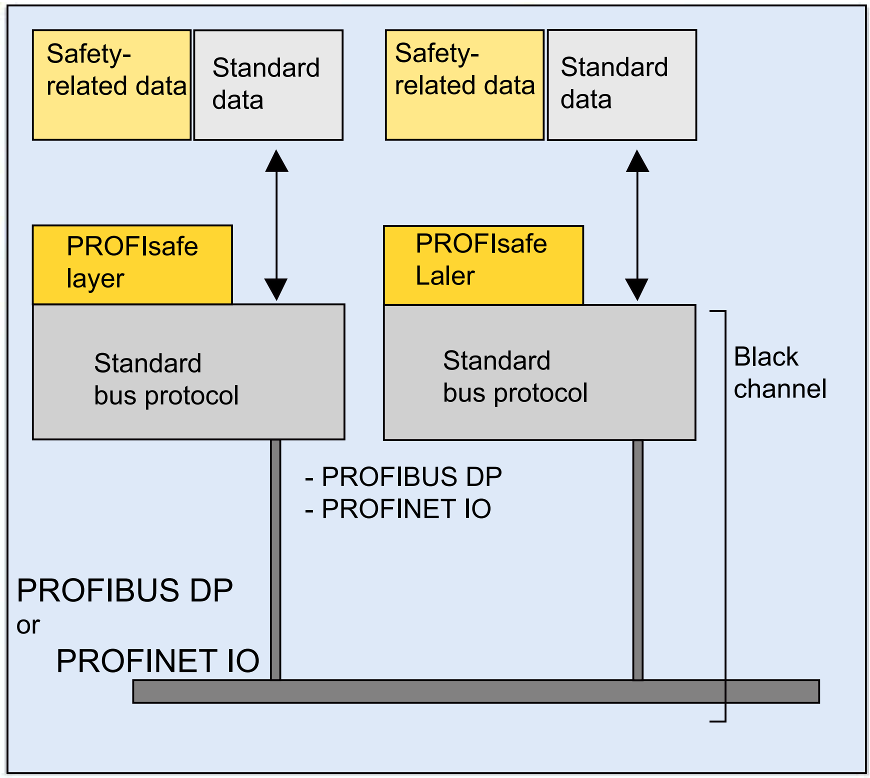


Figure 6-2 Safety-related communication

Safety-related and standard data are transmitted with PROFIsafe over the same bus line. Black channel means that collision-free communication via a bus system with media-independent network components (also wireless) is possible.

PROFIsafe is an open solution for safety-related communication via standard fieldbuses. Numerous manufacturers of safety components and end users of safety technology have helped to develop this vendor-neutral and open standard for PROFIBUS International (PI).

The PROFIsafe profile supports safe communication for the open PROFIBUS and PROFINET standard buses. An IE/PB Link ensures integrated, safety-related communication between PROFIBUS DP and PROFINET IO.

PROFIsafe is is certified to IEC 61784-3 and meets the highest requirements for the manufacturing and process industry.

PROFIBUS is the global standard for fieldbuses with approximately 13 million installed nodes. Its market acceptance is so high because a large number of manufacturers offer many products for PROFIBUS. With the PA transmission variant (IEC 1158-2), PROFIBUS extends the unified system concept of distributed automation to the process world.

PROFINET IO is the innovative and open Industrial Ethernet standard for automation. It enables fast reaction times and transmission of large data quantities.

PROFIsafe uses the PROFIBUS or PROFINET IO services for safe communication. A fail-safe CPU 410 and the fail-safe I/O exchange both user data as well as status and control information; no additional hardware is required for this.

PROFIsafe takes the following measures to counteract the various possible errors when transferring messages.

Table 6-2 Measures in PROFIsafe for error avoidance

Measure/ Error	Consecutive number	Time expectation with acknowledgment	Identifier for sender and receiver	Data backup CRC
Repetition	✓			
Loss	✓	✓		
Insertion	✓	✓	✓	
Incorrect sequence	✓			
Data falsification				✓
Delay		✓		
Coupling of safety-related messages and standard messages (masquerade)		✓	✓	✓
FIFO errors (first-in-first-out data register for maintaining the sequence)		✓		

See also

S7 F Systems optional package (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/us/en/view/109773062)

6.3 Fault-tolerant automation systems (redundancy operation)

6.3.1 Redundant SIMATIC automation systems

Operating objectives of redundant automation systems

Redundant automation systems are used in practice with the aim of achieving a higher degree of availability or fault tolerance.

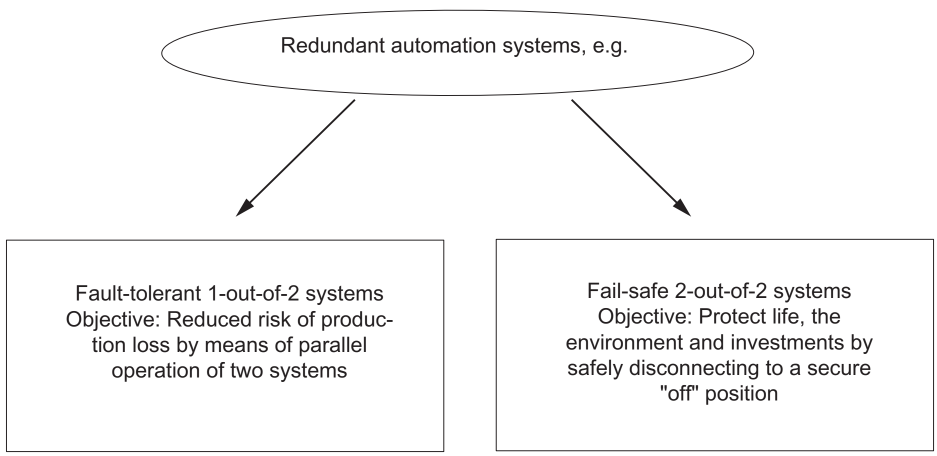


Figure 6-3 Operating objectives of redundant automation systems

Note the difference between fault-tolerant and fail-safe systems.
The S7-400H is a fault-tolerant automation system. You may only use the S7-400H to control safety-related processes if you have programmed it and assigned its parameters in accordance with the rules for F-systems. You can find information on this in following manual: SIMATIC Industrial Software S7 F/FH Systems (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109773062)

Why fault-tolerant automation systems?

The purpose of using fault-tolerant automation systems is to reduce production downtimes, regardless of whether the failures are caused by an error/fault or are due to maintenance work.

The higher the costs of production stops, the greater the need to use a fault-tolerant system. The generally higher investment costs of fault-tolerant systems are soon recovered since production stops are avoided.

Redundant I/O

Input/output modules are termed redundant when they exist twice and they are configured and operated as redundant pairs. The use of redundant I/O provides the highest degree of availability, because the system tolerates the failure of a CPU or of a signal module.

Single-channel switched I/O

In single-channel switched configuration, there is one of each of the input/output modules. In redundant operation, these modules can addressed by both subsystems. The single-channel switched I/O configuration is recommended for system components which tolerate the failure of individual modules.

See also

Connection of two-channel I/O to the PROFIBUS DP interface (Page 81)

6.3.2 Increase of plant availability, reaction to errors

System-wide integration

The CPU 410 and all other SIMATIC components, such as the SIMATIC PCS 7 control system, are matched to one another. The system-wide integration, ranging from the control room to the sensors and actuators, is implemented as a matter of course and ensures maximum system performance.

Graduated availability by duplicating components

The redundant structure of the S7-400H ensures requirements to reliability at all times. This means: all essential components are duplicated.

This redundant structure includes the CPU, the power supply, and the hardware for linking the two CPUs.

You yourself decide on any other components you want to duplicate to increase availability depending on the specific process you are automating.

Redundancy nodes

Redundant nodes represent the fail safety of systems with redundant components. A redundant node can be considered as independent when the failure of a component within the node does not result in reliability constraints in other nodes or in the overall system.

The availability of the overall system can be illustrated simply in a block diagram. With a 1-out-of-2 system, **one** component of the redundant node may fail without impairing the operability of the overall system. The weakest link in the chain of redundant nodes determines the availability of the overall system

No fault

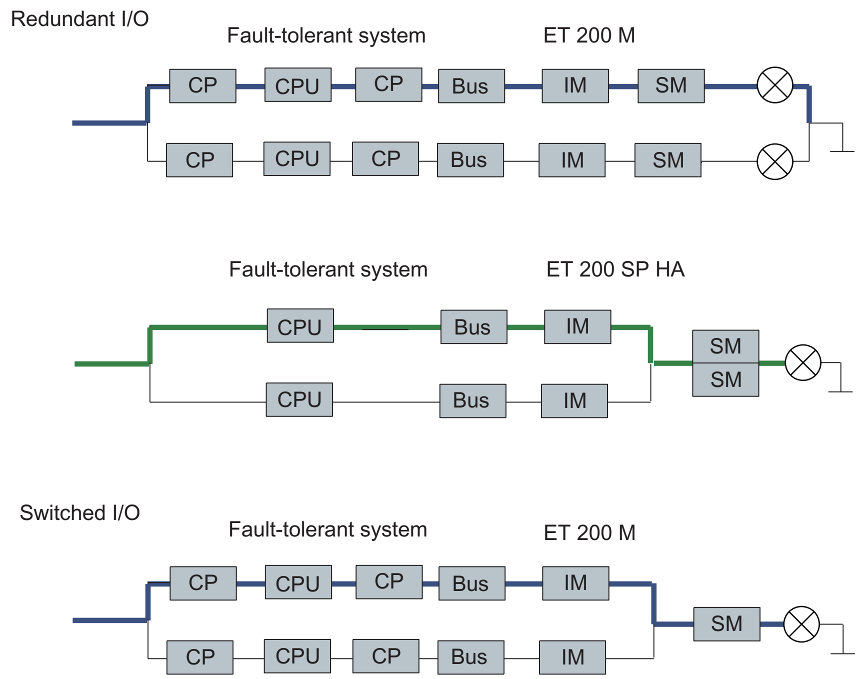


Figure 6-4 Example of redundancy in a network without error

With error/fault

The following figure shows how a component may fail without impairing the functionality of the overall system.

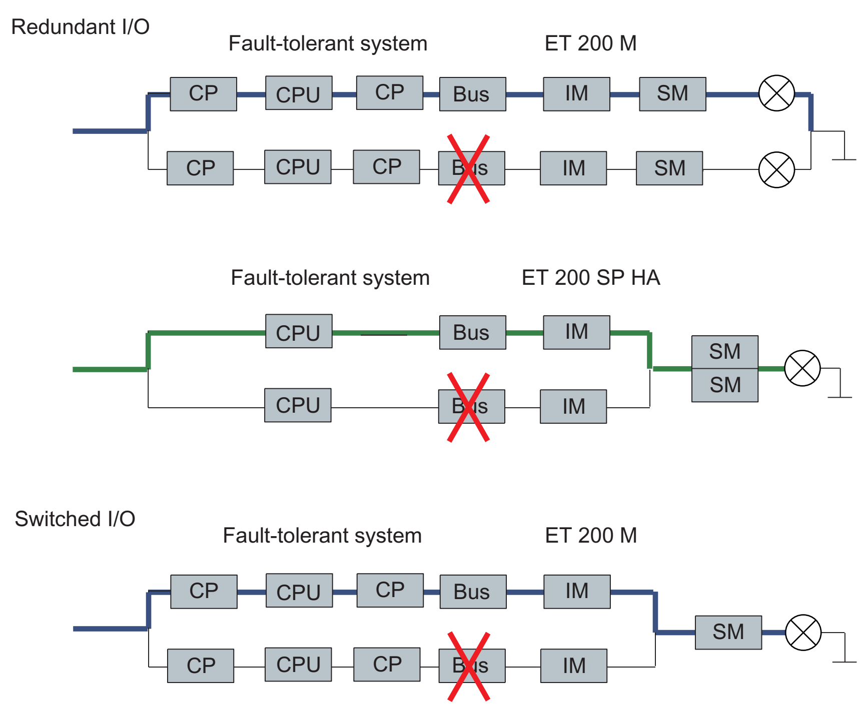


Figure 6-5 Example of redundancy in a 1-out-of-2 system with error

Failure of a redundant node (total failure)

The following figure shows that the overall system is no longer operable, because both subunits have failed in a 1-out-of-2 redundancy node (total failure).

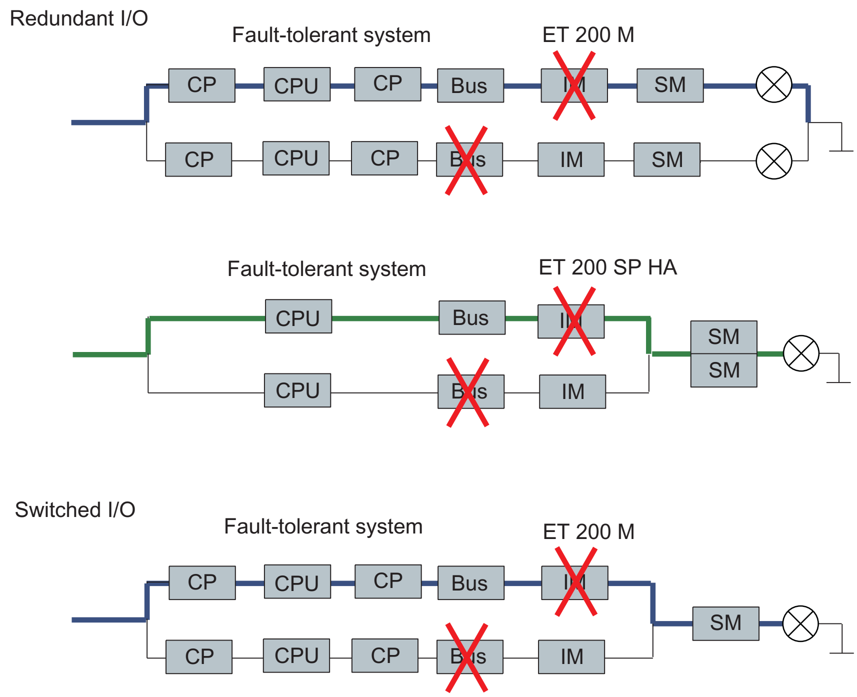


Figure 6-6 Example of redundancy in a 1-out-of-2 system with total failure

6.4 Introduction to the I/O link to fault-tolerant system

I/O installation types

In addition to the power supply module and CPUs, which are always redundant, the operating system supports the following I/O installation types. You specify the I/O installation types when configuring in HW Config.

Configuration	Availability
Fault-tolerant PROFINET IO (S2 with system redundancy) or switched I/O	Enhanced
Redundant PROFINET IO (R1 with system redundancy) or switched I/O	Enhanced
Redundant I/O	High

Note

IO redundancy

The term IO redundancy is also used for the connection of a redundant I/O to PROFINET IO

Addressing

If you are using an I/O in a system-redundant configuration, you always use the same address when addressing the I/O.

6.5 Using single-channel switched I/O

What is single-channel switched I/O?

In single-channel switched configuration, there is one of each of the input/output modules.

In redundant operation, these can addressed by both subsystems.

In stand-alone operation, the master subsystem always addresses **all switched I/O** (in contrast to one-sided I/O).

The single-channel switched I/O configuration is recommended for system components which tolerate the failure of individual modules within the ET 200M, ET 200iSP or ET 200SP HA.

Single-channel switched I/O configuration at the PROFIBUS DP interface

The installation with single-channel switched I/O is possible with the ET 200M distributed I/O device with active backplane bus and redundant PROFIBUS DP slave interface and with the ET 200iSP distributed I/O device.

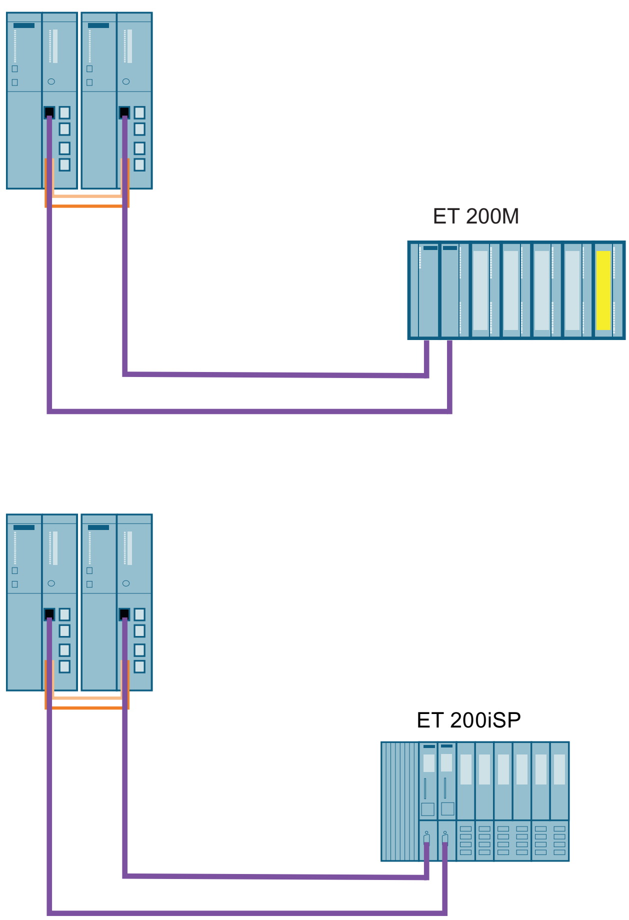


Figure 6-7 Single-channel switched distributed I/O configuration at the PROFIBUS DP interface

You can use the following interface modules for the I/O configuration at the PROFIBUS DP interface:

Table 6-3 Interface modules for use of single-channel switched I/O configuration at the PROFIBUS DP interface

Interface module	Article No.
IM 152 for ET 200iSP	6ES7152-1AA00-0AB0
IM 153-2 for ET 200M	6ES7153-2BA82-0XB0 6ES7153-2BA02-0XB0 6ES7153-2BA10-0XB0 6ES7153-2BA70-0XB0

Each S7-400H subsystem is interconnected with one of the two DP slave interfaces of the ET 200M over a DP master interface.

Bus modules for hot swapping

You can use the following bus modules for hot swapping a variety of components:

Table 6-4 Bus modules for hot swapping

Bus module	Article No.
BM PS/IM for load power supply and IM 153	6ES7195-7HA00-0XA0
BM 2 x 40 for two modules with 40 mm width	6ES7195-7HB00-0XA0
BM 1 x 80 for a module with 80 mm width	6ES7195-7HC00-0XA0
BM IM/IM for two IM 153-2/2 FO for design of redundant systems	6ES7195-7HD10-0XA0

DP/PA link

The DP/PA link consists of one or two IM 153-2 interface modules, and one to five DP/PA couplers that are either connected with one another via passive bus couplers or via bus modules.
The DP/PA link creates a gateway from a PROFIBUS DP master system to PROFIBUS PA. In this case the two bus systems are non-interacting through the IM 153-2 both physically (galvanically) and in terms of protocols and time.

PROFIBUS PA can be connected to a redundant system via a DP/PA link. The following IM 157 PA coupler is permissible: 6ES7157-0AC83-0XA0

You can use the following DP/PA links:

DP/PA link	Article No.
ET 200M as DP/PA link with	6ES7153-2BA82-0XB0 6ES7153-2BA81-0XB0 6ES7153-2BA70-0XB0

Y-Link

The Y Link consists of two IM 153-2 interface modules and one Y coupler that are connected with one another by bus modules.
The Y Link creates a gateway from the redundant DP master system of an S7-400H to a non-redundant DP master system. This means that devices with only one PROFIBUS DP interface can be connected to a S7-400H as switched I/Os.

A single-channel DP master system can be connected to a redundant system via a Y coupler. The following IM 157 Y coupler is permissible: 6ES7197-1LB00 0XA0.

You can use the following Y-Links:

Y-Link	Article No.
ET 200M as Y-Link with	6ES7153-2BA82-0XB0 6ES7153-2BA70-0XB0

FF Link

The FF Link bus link is a gateway between a PROFIBUS DP master system and a FOUNDATION Fieldbus H1 segment and thus enables the integration of FF devices in SIMATIC PCS 7. The two bus systems are uncoupled from each other by the IM 153-2 FF both physically (galvanically) and with respect to protocol and time.

The FF Link bus link consists of one or two IM 153-2 FF interface modules and an FDC 157 field device coupler or a redundant FDC 157 coupler pair, which are connected to one another via passive bus connectors or, in the case of the redundant installation, via bus modules.

The Compact FF Link bus link consists of one or two IM 655-5 FF interface modules.

FF Link	
IM 153-2 FDC 157	6ES7153-2DA80-0XB0 6ES7157-0AC85-0XA0
Compact FF Link	6ES7655-5BA00-0AB0

Rule for PROFIBUS DP

A single-channel switched I/O configuration must always be symmetrical.

- This means the fault-tolerant CPU and other DP masters must be installed in the same slots in both subsystems (for example slot 4 in both subsystems) or
- The DP slaves must be connected to the same DP interface in both subsystems (for example to the PROFIBUS DP interfaces of both fault-tolerant CPUs).

Single-channel switched I/O configuration at the PROFINET IO interface

The installation with single-channel switched I/O is possible with the ET 200M and ET 200SP HA distributed I/O devices with active backplane bus and redundant PROFINET IO interface.

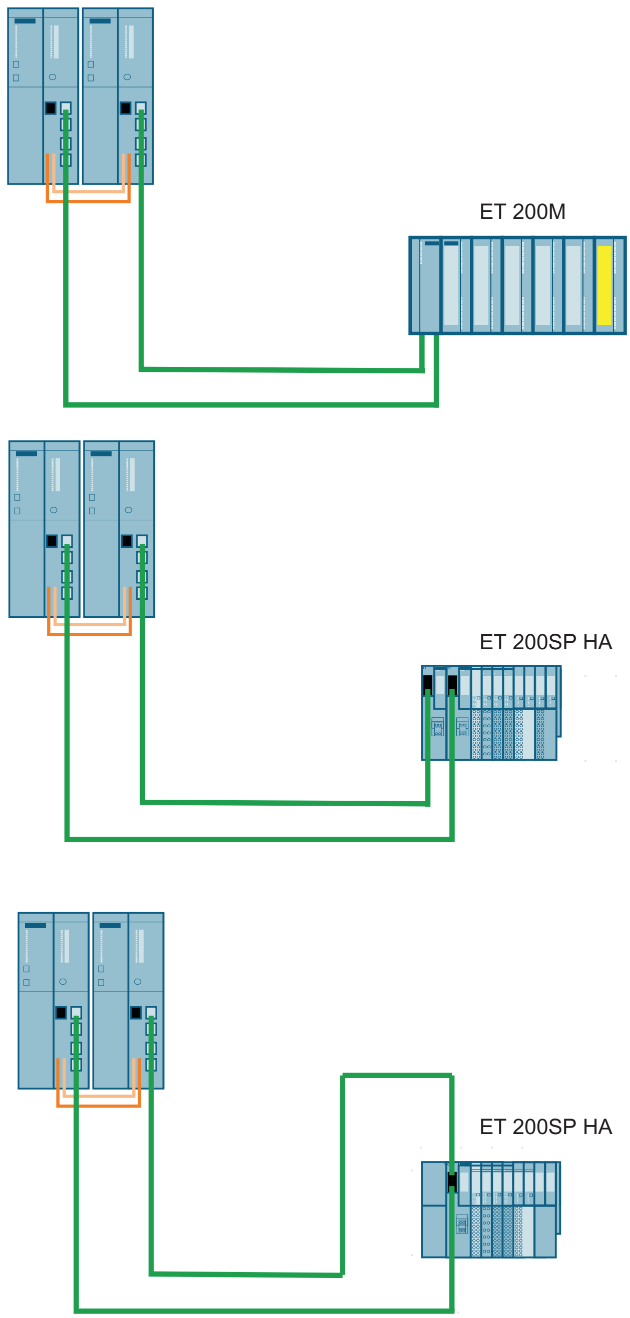


Figure 6-8 Single-channel switched distributed I/O configuration at the PROFINET IO interface

Each subsystem of the S7-400H is connected (over a PROFINET IO interface) to the PROFINET IO interface of the ET 200M or ET 200SP HA over one connection each. If the two PROFINET IO interfaces are located on one IM, this is known as an S2 configuration. The S stands for a single (single) IM and thus for only one PROFINET IO interface. If the PROFINET IO interfaces are located on two different IMs, this is known as an R1 configuration The R stands for redundant IMs and thus for two PROFINET IO interfaces. See Chapter Communication services (Page 285).

You can use the following interface module for the I/O configuration at the PROFINET IO interface:

Table 6-5 Interface module for use of single-channel switched I/O configuration at the PROFINET IO interface

Interface module	Article No.
IM 153-4 PN V4.0 and higher	6ES7153-4BA00-0XB0
IM 155-6 PN HA	6DL1155-6AU00-0PM0

Single-channel switched I/O and user program

In redundant operation, in principle any subsystem can access single-channel switched I/O. The data is automatically transferred via the synchronization link and compared. An identical value is available to the two subsystems at all times owing to the synchronized access.

If you have connected the I/O over two IMs, the CPU accesses the I/O over one IM. The active IM is indicated by illumination of the ACT LED.

The path via the currently active DP interface or PROFINET IO interface is called the **active channel**, while the path via the other interface is called the **passive channel**. The DP or PNIO cycle is always active on both channels. However, only the input and output values of the active channel are processed in the user program or output to the I/O. The same applies to asynchronous activities, such as interrupt processing and the exchange of data records.

Failure of the single-channel switched I/O

The fault-tolerant system with single-channel switched I/O responds to errors as follows:

- The faulty I/O is no longer available if an input/output module or a connected device fails.
- In certain failure situations (for example failure of a subsystem, a DP master system or an IM153-2 DP slave interface), the single-channel switched I/O continues to be available for the process.
  This is achieved by a changeover between active and passive channel. This changeover takes place separately for each DP or PNIO station. A distinction is made between the following two types of failure:
  - Failures affecting only one station (such as failure of the DP slave interface of the channel currently active)
  - Failures affecting all stations of a DP master system or PNIO system
    These include removal of the connector at the DP master interface or PNIO interface, shutdown of the DP master system (for example a RUN-STOP transition on a CP 443-5), and short-circuits at the cable harness of a DP master system or PNIO system.

The following applies to each station affected by a failure: If both DP slave interfaces or PN IO connections are functional and the active channel fails, the channel previously passive automatically becomes the active channel. A redundancy loss is reported to the user program when OB 70 starts (event W#16#73A3).

Once the problem is eliminated, redundancy is restored. This also starts OB 70 (event W#16#72A3). In this situation, there is no changeover between the active and passive channel.

If one channel has already failed, and the remaining (active) channel also fails, then there is a complete station failure. This starts OB 86 (event W#16#39C4).

There is also complete station failure if an IM fails in an S2 configuration. This starts OB 86 (event W#16#39C4).

Note

If the external DP master interface module can detect failure of the entire DP master system (due to a short-circuit, for example), it reports only this event ("Master system failure entering state" W#16#39C3). The operating system no longer reports individual station failures. This feature can be used to accelerate the changeover between the active and passive channel.

Duration of a changeover of the active channel

The maximum changeover time is

DP/PN error detection time + DP/PN changeover time + changeover time of the DP slave interface/ PNIO interface

You can determine the first two values from the bus parameters of your DP master system or PNIO system in STEP 7. You determine the last two values using the manuals of the DP slave interfaces or PNIO interfaces in question.

Note

When using fail-safe modules, always set a monitoring time for each fail-safe module that is longer than the changeover time of the active channel in the fault-tolerant system. If you ignore this rule, you risk passivation of the fail-safe modules during the changeover of the active channel.

You can use the Excel file "s7ftimea.xls" to calculate the monitoring and reaction times. The file is available at the following address (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/22557362):

Note

Please note that the CPU can only detect a signal change if the signal duration is greater than the specified changeover time.
When there is a changeover of the entire DP master system, the changeover time of the slowest DP component applies to all DP components. A DP/PA link or Y-Link usually determines the changeover time and the corresponding minimum signal duration. We therefore recommend that you connect DP/PA and Y-Links to a separate DP master system.

Changeover of the active channel during link-up and updating

During link-up and updating with master/standby changeover (see Link-up sequence (Page 325)), a changeover between the active and passive channels occurs for all stations of the switched I/O. At the same time OB 72 is called.

Bumpless changeover of the active channel

To prevent the I/O failing temporarily or outputting substitute values during the changeover between the active and passive channel, the DP or PNIO stations of the switched I/O put their outputs on hold until the changeover is completed and the new active channel has taken over.

To ensure that total failure of a DP or PNIO station is also detected during the changeover, the changeover is monitored by both the various DP/PNIO stations and by the DP master system or IO system.

System configuration and project engineering

You should allocate switched I/O with different changeover times to separate chains. This, for example, simplifies the calculation of monitoring times.

See also

Time monitoring (Page 120)

6.6 Versions of I/O connection to the PROFINET IO interface

6.6.1 Use of I/O connected to the PROFINET IO interface, system redundancy

System redundancy

You can configure the PROFINET IO system redundancy with switched devices connected to an IM. The configuring of the PROFINET I/O is comparable to the configuring of the PROFIBUS I/O.

You can connect a maximum of 256 IO devices to each of the two integrated PN/IO interfaces. You can configure these as one-sided or switched devices as desired. The station numbers are disjoint across both PN/IO interfaces and are between 1 and 256.

Note

The PROFINET IO device must support this function in order to be operated redundantly on the fault-tolerant system. Two ports does not mean that two system connections can be created, thereby achieving system redundancy.

Configuration

The following figure shows various different configurations for connecting IO devices to the fault-tolerant system.

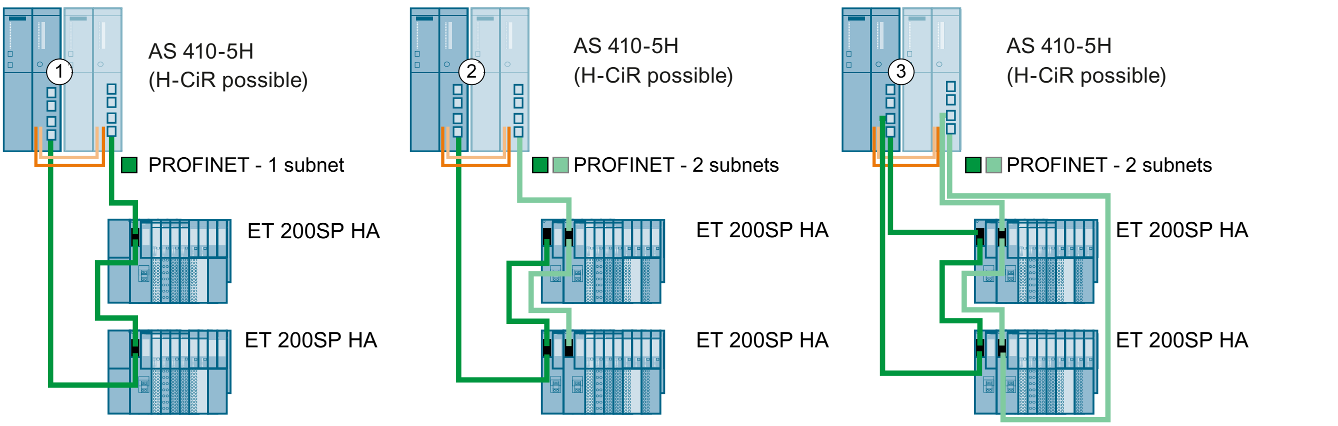


Figure 6-9 System redundancy

Configuration	Properties
①	Switched I/O at the PROFINET IO Each IO device is connected over one IM with two logic connections (system redundancy) to the two CPUs in the fault-tolerant system. This type of connection is also known as fault-tolerant PROFINET IO.
② and ③	Switched I/O at the redundant PROFINET IO Each IO device is connected over two IMs to the two CPUs in the fault-tolerant system. Each IM is assigned to one of the CPUs. The IM must support system redundancy. This type of connection is also known as redundant PROFINET IO. This allows independent redundant PROFINET networks to operate in the fault-tolerant system. At the same time, the two IMs increase availability. In ③, the connection to the CPU is also configured as a ring (redundant fault-tolerant PROFINET IO).

Note

Logical configuration and topology

The topology alone does not determine whether IO devices are configured at one side (assigned to only one CPU in the fault-tolerant system) or in a system-redundant configuration. This is specified in configuration. The IO devices in configuration ① can, for example, also be configured on one side instead of in a system-redundant configuration.

Configuration with two IO devices with independent, system-redundant connection

This configuration has the following advantage: The complete system can continue operating after a wire break, no matter where the wire break is located. One of the two communication connections of the IO devices is always retained. The IO devices that are redundant up this point continue operating as one-sided IO devices.

Network addresses on the PROFINET IO subsystem

In a redundant configuration, the network addresses of the interface modules must be unique across both PROFINET IO subsystems.

- In a ring structure, all network addresses must be within a PROFINET IO subsystem and you must specify the MRP role for each node.
- In the case of system redundancy with two subnets, the two interface modules of a station must be assigned to the following PROFINET IO subnet:
  - Interface module in slot 0 of the IO device is assigned to rack 0 of the IO controller.
  - Interface module in slot 1 of the IO device is assigned to rack 1 of the IO controller.

Commissioning of a system-redundant configuration

It is imperative that you assign unique names when commissioning.

When you change a project or download a new project, follow these steps:

1. Put the fault-tolerant system in STOP state on both ends
2. Perform a memory reset of the standby CPU
3. Download the new project to the master CPU
4. Start the Fault-tolerant system

Note

To edit the topology of a project, use the topology editor in HW Config.

S2 and R1 devices

S2 device: There is one IM connected to both CPUs.

R1 device: There are two IM (redundant). Each IM is connected to one CPU.

Cabinet concept with switched I/O connected to PROFINET IO

The following figure shows the system-redundant connection of nine IO devices via three switches. With this configuration, for example, IO devices can be arranged in multiple cabinets.

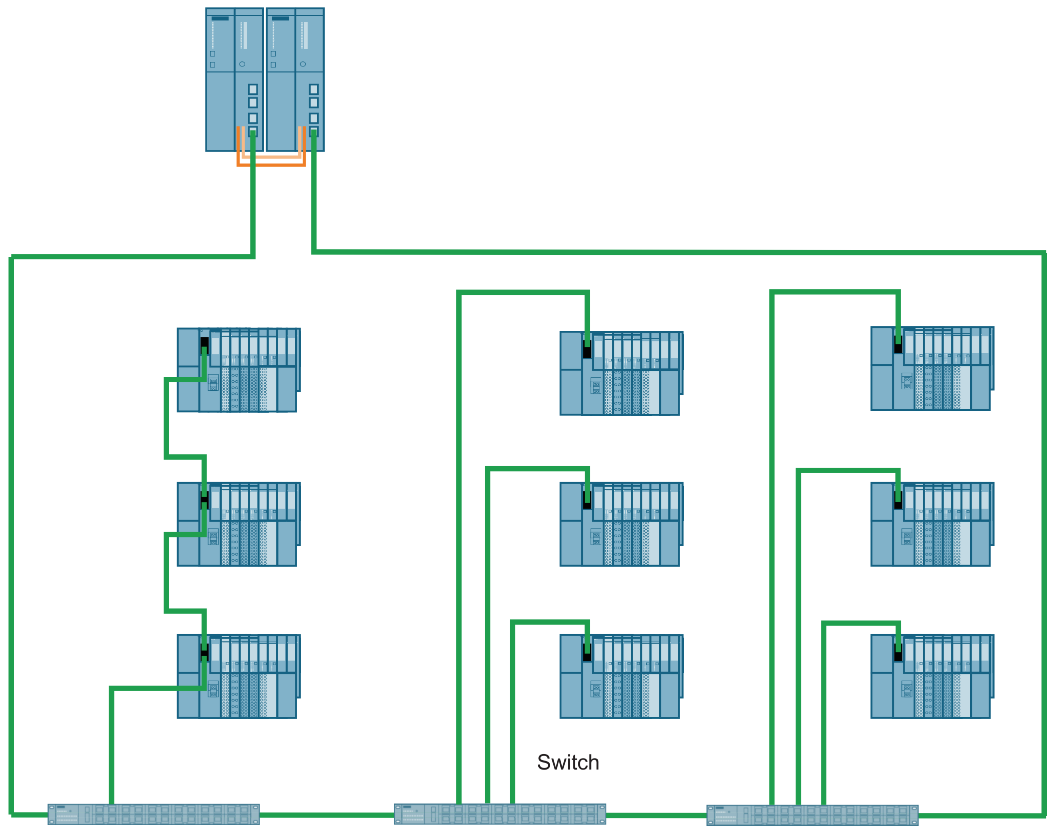


Figure 6-10 IO devices in multiple cabinets

6.6.2 Redundant I/O in an ET 200SP HA

Redundant I/O

To configure the redundant I/O connected to PROFINET IO, insert two I/O modules of the same type next to each other in a special terminal block (TB45R...).

This terminal block connects the respective process signals of the two IO modules to a common process terminal.

- There is less wiring work compared to connecting separate I/O modules, because the interconnection of the process signals is integrated in the system.
- The redundant signal processing of the sensors and actuators on the module level increases the availability of the system.
- In redundant operation, the switching characteristics of the output modules that can control the actuator in parallel are improved.

Application planning

Observe the following rules for configuring redundant I/O modules:

Hardware rule

- The I/O modules must be approved for redundant operation. You can find this information in the manual for the respective module.
- Redundantly deployed I/O modules must be identical, i.e. they must have the same article number, the same hardware version and the same firmware version.

Mounting rule

I/O modules of the same type are plugged in pairs next to each other in the same IO device.

- Both slots are located on the same support module.
- Both slots are located on the same terminal block (**TB45R**).

Note

Specific wiring

Always read the documentation of the I/O module used.

Configuring

- Configure redundancy for the I/O module.
  The settings you make for an I/O module always apply to the module pair.

Configuration

The following figure shows an example for the connection of the sensors or actuators each with two redundantly used input/output modules.

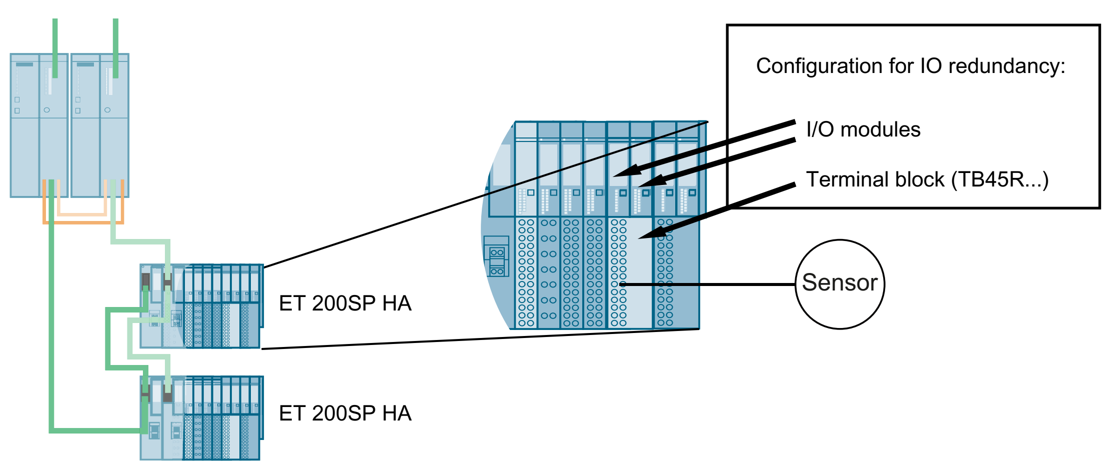


Figure 6-11 S7-400 H-system with sensors and actuators on module pairs (redundant signal processing)

Response to failure

The following applies when a I/O module or a channel of the two I/O modules fails (valid for input/output and mixed modules):

- The inputs continue to be available in the system.
- The outputs are controlled in the system.

Connecting sensors/actuators

You can connect a sensor/actuator to two redundant input/output modules.

The failure of an input module does not result in the loss of sensor data. When an output module fails, the connected actuator continues to be controlled.

In some cases, the hardware design requires the sensor also to be implemented redundantly, for example for RTD thermal resistors. Sensors can be powered using suitable input modules.

The redundant signal processing of the sensors and actuators at the module level increases the availability of the system. Firmware update and module replacement are possible during operation.

In redundant operation, the switching characteristics of the output modules that can control the actuator in parallel are improved. The modules can operate with twice the switching current and power distribution between two output modules.

The figure below shows a configuration with one sensor and one actuator for a pair of redundant I/O modules.

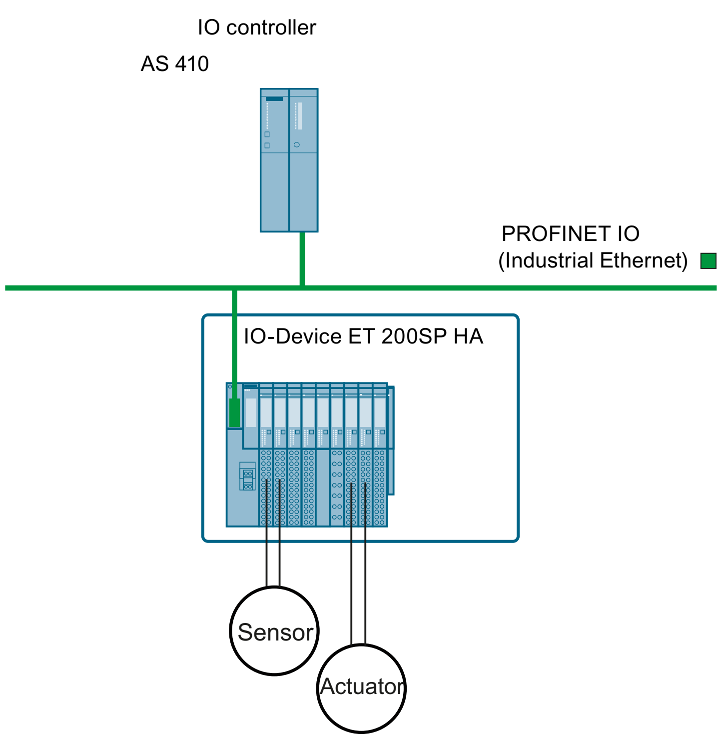


Figure 6-12 AS 410 with redundant module pairs

Maintenance and service

One of the following functions is possible in each case during operation:

- Firmware update
- Replacing a module

6.7 Connection of two-channel I/O to the PROFIBUS DP interface

6.7.1 Connecting redundant I/O

Redundant I/O in the switched DP slave

To achieve this, the signal modules are installed in pairs in ET 200M distributed I/O devices with active backplane bus.

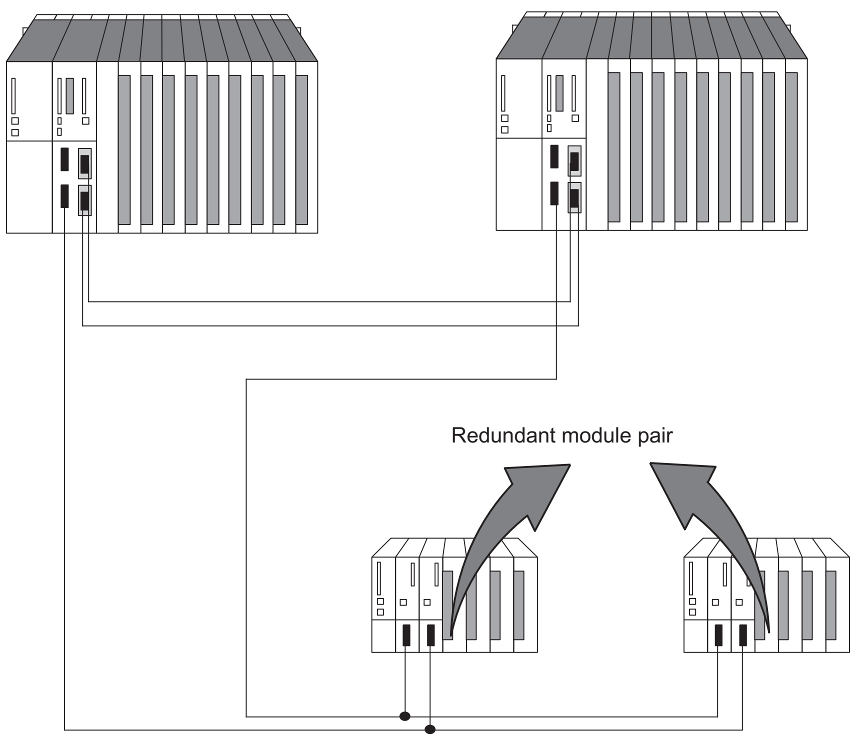


Figure 6-13 Redundant I/O in the switched DP slave

Principle of channel group-specific redundancy

Channel errors due to discrepancy cause the passivation of the respective channel. Channel errors due to diagnostic interrupts (OB82) cause the passivation of the channel group affected. Depassivation depassivates all affected channels as well as the modules passivated due to module errors. Channel group-specific passivation significantly increases availability in the following situations:

- Relatively frequent encoder failures
- Repairs that take a long time
- Multiple channel errors on one module

Note

Channel and channel group

Depending on the module, a channel group contains a single channel, a group of several channels, or all channels of the module. You can therefore operate all modules with redundancy capability in channel group-specific redundancy mode.

You can find an up-to-date list of modules with redundancy capability in Signal modules for redundancy (Page 84).

"Functional I/O redundancy" block library

The blocks you use for channel group-specific redundancy are located in the "Redundant IO CGP V50" library.

The "Functional I/O redundancy" block libraries that support the redundant I/O each contain the following blocks:

- FC 450 "RED_INIT": Initialization function
- FC 451 "RED_DEPA": Initiate depassivation
- FB 450 "RED_IN": Function block for reading redundant inputs
- FB 451 "RED_OUT": Function block for controlling redundant outputs
- FB 452 "RED_DIAG": Function block for diagnostics of redundant I/O
- FB 453 "RED_STATUS": Function block for redundancy status information

Configure the numbers of the management data blocks for the redundant I/O in HW Config under "CPU properties -> Fault-tolerant parameters". Assign unassigned DB numbers for these data blocks. The data blocks are created by FC 450 "RED_INIT" during CPU startup. The default setting for the management data block numbers is 1 and 2. These data blocks are not the instance data blocks of FB 450 "RED_IN" or FB 451 "RED_OUT".

You can open the libraries in the SIMATIC Manager with "File -> Open -> Libraries"

The relevant online help describes the functions and use of the blocks.

Using the blocks

Before using the blocks, configure the redundant modules as redundant in HW Config.

The OBs into which you need to link the various blocks are listed in the table below:

Block	OB
FC 450 "RED_INIT"	• OB 72 "CPU redundancy error" (only with fault-tolerant systems) FC 450 is only processed after start event B#16#33:"Standby/master switchover by operator" • OB 80 "Timeout error" (only in single mode) FC 450 is only executed after the start event "Resume RUN after reconfiguring" • OB 100 "Restart" (the administration DBs are recreated, see the online help) • OB 102 "Cold restart"
FC 451 "RED_DEPA"	If you call FC 451 in OB 83 while inserting modules or in OB 85 during alarm output, depassivation is delayed by approximately 3 seconds. In addition the FC 451 should be executed after the removal of the error response as specific call in OB 1 and/or OB 30 to 38. The FC451 only depassivates modules in the corresponding process image partition. Depassivation is delayed by 10 s.
FB 450 "RED_IN"	• OB 1 "Cyclic program" • OB 30 to OB 38 "Watchdog interrupt"
FB 451 "RED_OUT"	• OB 1 "Cyclic program" • OB 30 to OB 38 "Watchdog interrupt"
FB 452 "RED_DIAG"	• OB 72 "CPU redundancy error" • OB 82 "Diagnostic interrupt" • OB 83 "Remove/insert interrupt" • OB 85 "Program execution error"
FB 453 "RED_STATUS"	• OB 1 "Cyclic program" (fault-tolerant systems only) • OB 30 to OB 38 "Watchdog interrupt"

To be able to address redundant modules using process image partitions in watchdog interrupts, the relevant process image partition must be assigned to this pair of modules and to the watchdog interrupt. Call FB 450 "RED_IN" in this watchdog interrupt before you call the user program. Call FB 451 "RED_OUT" in this watchdog interrupt after you call the user program.

The valid values that can be processed by the user program are always located at the lower address of both redundant modules. This means that only the lower address can be used for the application; the values of the higher address are not relevant for the application.

Note

Use of FB 450 "RED_IN" and 451 "RED_OUT" when using process image partitions

For each priority class used (OB 1, OB 30 ... OB 38), you must use a separate process image partition.

HW configuration and configuring the redundant I/O

Follow the steps below to use redundant I/O:

1. Insert all the modules you want to operate redundantly. Please also observe the default rules for configuration detailed below.
2. Configure module redundancy in HW Config in the object properties of the relevant module. Either search for a partner module for each module or use the default settings.
   If the module is inserted in the slave with a DP address at slot X, the module in the slave with the next Profibus address at slot X will be suggested.
3. Enter the remaining redundancy parameters for the input modules.

Note

System modifications during operation are also supported with redundant I/O. You are not permitted to change the parameter settings for a redundant module per SFC.

Note

Always switch off power to the station or rack before you remove a redundant digital input module that does not support diagnostics functions and is not passivated. You might otherwise passivate the wrong module. This procedure is necessary, for example, when replacing the front connector of a redundant module.

Redundant modules must be in the process image of the inputs or outputs. Redundant modules are always accessed using the process image.

If you use redundant modules, you need to make the following settings on the "Cycle/clock memory" tab under "HW Config -> CPU 41x-H properties":

"OB 85 call on I/O area access error > Only incoming and outgoing errors"

6.7.2 Signal modules for redundancy

Signal modules as redundant I/O

You can use the signal modules listed below as redundant distributed I/O connected to PROFIBUS DP. Please note the latest information on use of the modules in the SIMATIC PCS 7 readme.

Note

The statements on the individual signal modules in this section refer exclusively to their use in redundant operation. Restrictions and special features listed here especially do not apply to the use of the corresponding module in stand-alone operation.

Take into account that you can only use modules of the same product version and same firmware version as redundant pairs.

A complete list of all modules approved for SIMATIC PCS 7 can be found in the area "Manuals for the SIMATIC PCS 7 V9.X software" > "SIMATIC PCS 7 system documentation" > "Approved modules V9.X" Technical documentation SIMATIC PCS 7 (https://new.siemens.com/global/en/products/automation/process-control/simatic-pcs-7/technical-documentation.html).

Table 6-6 Signal modules for redundancy

Module	Article No.
Redundant DI dual-channel	
DI16xDC 24 V, interrupt	6ES7 321-7BH00-0AB0
DI16xDC 24 V	6ES7 321-7BH01-0AB0
In the event of an error on one channel, the entire group (2 channels) is passivated. When using the module with HF index, only the faulty channel is passivated in the event of a channel error. Use with non-redundant encoder • This module supports the "wire break" diagnostic function. To implement this function, make sure that a total current between 2.4 mA and 4.9 mA flows even at signal state "0" when you use an encoder that is evaluated at two inputs in parallel. You achieve this by connecting a resistor across the encoder. Its value depends on the type of switch and usually ranges between 6800 and 8200 ohms for contacts. For BEROS, calculate the resistance using the following formula: (30 V / (4.9 mA - I_R_Bero) < R < (20 V / (2.4 mA - I_R_Bero)	
DI16xDC 24 V	6ES7 321-1BH02-0AA0
In some system states, it is possible that an incorrect value of the first module is read in briefly when the front connector of the second module is removed. This is prevented by using series diodes.	
DI32xDC 24 V	6ES7 321-1BL00-0AA0
In some system states, it is possible that an incorrect value of the first module is read in briefly when the front connector of the second module is removed. This is prevented by using series diodes.	
DI 8xAC 120/230V	6ES7 321-1FF01-0AA0
DI 4xNamur [EEx ib]	6ES7 321-7RD00-0AB0
You cannot use the module in redundant operation for applications in hazardous areas. Use with non-redundant encoder • You can only connect 2-wire NAMUR encoders or contact makers. • Equipotential bonding of the encoder circuit should always be at one point only (preferably encoder negative). • When selecting encoders, compare their properties with the specified input characteristics. Remember that this function must always be available, regardless of whether you are using one or two inputs.	
DI 16xNamur	6ES7321-7TH00-0AB0
Use with non-redundant encoder • Equipotential bonding of the encoder circuit should always be at one point only (preferably encoder negative). • Operate the two redundant modules on a common load power supply. • When selecting encoders, compare their properties with the specified input characteristics. Remember that this function must always be available, regardless of whether you are using one or two inputs.	
DI 24xDC 24 V	6ES7326-1BK01-0AB0 6ES7326-1BK02-0AB0
F module in standard mode	
DI 8xNAMUR [EEx ib]	6ES7326-1RF00-0AB0
F module in standard mode	
Redundant DO dual-channel	

Module	Article No.
DO8xDC 24 V/0.5 A	6ES7322-8BF00-0AB0
Definite evaluation of the diagnostics information "P short-circuit" and "wire break" is not possible. Deselect these individually in your configuration.	
DO8xDC 24 V/2 A	6ES7322-1BF01-0AA0
DO32xDC 24 V/0.5 A	6ES7322-1BL00-0AA0
DO8xAC 120/230 V/2 A	6ES7322-1FF01-0AA0
DO 4x24 V/10 mA [EEx ib]	6ES7322-5SD00-0AB0
You cannot use the module in redundant operation for applications in hazardous areas.	
DO 4x15 V/20 mA [EEx ib]	6ES7322-5RD00-0AB0
You cannot use the module in redundant operation for applications in hazardous areas.	
DO 16xDC 24 V/0.5 A	6ES7322-8BH01-0AB0
• The equipotential bonding of the load circuit should always be at one point only (preferably load minus). • Diagnostics of the channels is not possible.	
DO 16xDC 24 V/0.5 A	6ES7322-8BH10-0AB0
• The equipotential bonding of the load circuit should always be at one point only (preferably load minus).	
DO 10xDC 24 V/2 A	6ES7326-2BF00-0AB0 6ES7326-2BF01-0AB0
F module in standard mode	
Redundant AI dual-channel	
AI8x12Bit	6ES7331-7KF02-0AB0
Use in voltage measurement • The "wire break" diagnostics function in HW Config must not be enabled either the modules are operated with transmitters or when thermocouples are connected. Use for indirect current measurement • When determining the measuring error, observe the following: The total input resistance in measuring ranges > 2.5 V is reduced from a nominal 100 kilohms to 50 kilohms when you operate two inputs connected in parallel. • The "wire break" diagnostics function in HW Config must not be enabled either the modules are operated with transmitters or when thermocouples are connected. • Use a 50 ohm resistor (measuring range +/- 1 V) or 250 ohm resistor (measuring range 1 to 5 V) to map the current on a voltage. The tolerance of the resistor must be added on to the module error. • This module is not suitable for direct current measurement. Use of redundant encoders: • You can use a redundant encoder with the following voltage settings: +/- 80 mV (only without wire break monitoring) +/- 250 mV (only without wire break monitoring) +/- 500 mV (wire break monitoring not configurable) +/- 1 V (wire break monitoring not configurable) +/- 2.5 V (wire break monitoring not configurable) +/- 5 V (wire break monitoring not configurable) +/- 10 V (wire break monitoring not configurable) 1...5 V (wire break monitoring not configurable)	
AI 8x16Bit	6ES7 331-7NF00-0AB0

Module	Article No.
Use in voltage measurement • The "wire break" diagnostics function in HW Config must not be enabled when the modules are operated with transmitters. Use in indirect current measurement • When using indirect current measurement, ensure a reliable connection between the sensor resistances and the actual inputs, because a reliable wire break detection cannot be guaranteed in the case of a wire break of individual cables of this connection. • Use a 250 ohm resistor (measuring range 1 to 5 V) to map the current on a voltage. Use in direct current measurement • Suitable Zener diode: BZX85C8v2 • Circuit-specific additional error: If one module fails, the other may suddenly show an additional error of approx. 0.1%. • Load capability of 4-wire transmitters: R_B > 610 ohms (determined for worst case: 1 input + 1 Zener diode at an S7 overload value of 24 mA to $R_B = (R_E * I_{max} + U_{z\ max}) / I_{max})$ • Input voltage in the circuit when operating with a 2-wire transmitter: U_{e-2w}< 15 V (determined for worst case: 1 input + 1 Zener diode at an S7 overload value of 24 mA to $U_{e-2w} = R_E * I_{max} + U_{z\ max}$)	
AI 8x16Bit	6ES7 331-7NF10-0AB0
Use in voltage measurement • The "wire break" diagnostics function in HW Config must not be enabled either the modules are operated with transmitters or when thermocouples are connected. Use in indirect current measurement • Use a 250 ohm resistor (measuring range 1 to 5 V) to map the current on a voltage. Use in direct current measurement • Suitable Zener diode: BZX85C8v2 • Load capability of 4-wire transmitters: R_B > 610 ohms (determined for worst case: 1 input + 1 Zener diode at an S7 overload value of 24 mA to $R_B = (R_E * I_{max} + U_{z\ max}) / I_{max})$ • Input voltage in the circuit when operating with a 2-wire transmitter: U_{e-2w}< 15 V (determined for worst case: 1 input + 1 Zener diode at an S7 overload value of 24 mA to $U_{e-2w} = R_E * I_{max} + U_{z\ max}$)	
AI 6xTC 16Bit iso	6ES7331-7PE10-0AB0
Notice: You may use this module only with redundant sensors. You can use this module with Version 3.5 or higher of FB 450 "RED_IN" in the library "Redundant IO MGP" and Version 5.8 or higher of FB 450 "RED_IN" in the library "Redundant IO CGP" V50. Observe the following when measuring temperatures by means of thermocouples and assigned redundancy: The value specified in "Redundancy" under "Tolerance window" is always based on 2765 °C. For example, a check is made for a tolerance of 27 degrees when "1" is entered and 138 degrees when "5" is entered. A FW update is not possible in redundant operation An online calibration is not possible in redundant operation. Use in voltage measurement • The "wire break" diagnostics function in HW Config must not be enabled when the modules are operated with thermo-couples. Use in indirect current measurement • Due to the maximum voltage range +/- 1 V, the indirect current measurement can be carried out exclusively via a 50 ohm resistor. Mapping that conforms to the system is only possible for the area +/- 20 mA.	
AI 4x15Bit [EEx ib]	6ES7331-7RD00-0AB0

Module	Article No.
You cannot use the module in redundant operation for applications in hazardous areas. It is not suitable for indirect current measurement. Use in direct current measurement • Suitable Zener diode 6.2 V, for example BZX85C6v2 • Load capability of 4-wire transmitters: RB > 325 ohms determined for worst case: 1 input + 1 Zener diode at an S7 overload value of 24 mA to RB = (RE * I_{max} + $U_{z\,max}$)/I_{max} • Input voltage for 2-wire transmitters: Ue-2Dr < 8 V calculated for worst case: 1 input + 1 Zener diode at an S7 overload value of 24 mA to Ue-2Dr = RE * I_{max} + $U_{z\,max}$ **Note:** You can only connect 2-wire transmitters with a 24 V external supply or 4-wire transmitters. The internal power supply for transmitters cannot be used in the circuit because it outputs only 13 V, which means in the worst case it would supply only 5 V to the transmitter.	
AI 8x0/4...20mA HART	6ES7 331-7TF01-0AB0
A FW update is not possible in redundant operation An online calibration is not possible in redundant operation. See Manual *ET 200M Distributed I/O Device; HART Analog Modules* manual	
AI6x0/4...20mA HART	6ES7336-4GE00-0AB0
F module in standard mode	
AI 6x13Bit	6ES7 336-1HE00-0AB0
F module in standard mode	
Redundant AO dual-channel	
AO4x12 Bit	6ES7332-5HD01-0AB0
AO8x12 Bit	6ES7332-5HF00-0AB0
AO4x0/4...20 mA [EEx ib]	6ES7332-5RD00-0AB0
You cannot use the module in redundant operation for applications in hazardous areas.	
AO 8x0/4...20mA HART	6ES7 332-8TF01-0AB0
A firmware update is not possible in redundant operation. Online calibration is not possible in redundant operation. See Manual *ET 200M Distributed I/O Device; HART Analog Modules*	

Note

You need to install the F-ConfigurationPack for F modules.
The F ConfigurationPack can be downloaded free of charge from the Internet.
You can find it on the Customer Support site at Download of F Configuration Pack (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/15208817)

Using digital input modules as redundant I/O

The following parameters were set to configure digital input modules for redundant operation:

- Discrepancy time (maximum permitted time in which the redundant input signals may differ). The specified discrepancy time must be a multiple of the update time of the process image and therefore also the basic conversion time of the channels.
  When there is still a discrepancy in the input values after the configured discrepancy time has expired, an error has occurred.
- Response to a discrepancy in the input values

First, the input signals of the paired redundant modules are checked for consistency. If the values match, the uniform value is written to the lower memory area of the process input image. If there is a discrepancy and it is the first, it is marked accordingly and the discrepancy time is started.

During the discrepancy time, the most recent matching (non-discrepant) value is written to the process image of the module with the lower address. This procedure is repeated until the values once again match within the discrepancy time or until the discrepancy time of a bit has expired.

If the discrepancy continues past the expiration of the configured discrepancy time, an error has occurred.

The defective side is localized according to the following strategy:

1. During the discrepancy time, the most recent matching value is retained as the result.
2. Once the discrepancy time has expired, the following error message is displayed:
   Error code 7960: "Redundant I/O: discrepancy time at digital input expired, error not yet localized". Passivation is not performed and no entry is made in the static error image. Until the next signal change occurs, the configured response is performed after the discrepancy time expires.
3. If another signal change now occurs, the channel in which the signal change occurred is the intact channel and the other channel is passivated.

Note

The time that the system actually needs to determine a discrepancy depends on various factors: Bus runtimes, cycle times and call times of the user program, conversion times, etc. For this reason, it is possible for redundant input signals to be different for longer than the configured discrepancy time.

Modules with diagnostics capability are also passivated by calling OB 82.

MTA Terminal Modules

MTA terminal modules (Marshalled Termination Assemblies) can be used to connect field devices, sensors and actuators to the I/O modules of the ET 200M remote I/O stations simply, quickly and reliably. They can be used to significantly reduce the costs and required work for cabling and commissioning, and prevent wiring errors.

The individual MTA terminal modules are each tailored to specific I/O modules from the ET 200M range. MTA versions for standard I/O modules are also available, as for redundant and safety-related I/O modules. The MTA terminal modules are connected to the I/O modules using 3 m or 8 m long preassembled cables.

Details on combinable ET 200M modules and suitable connecting cables and on the current MTA product range can be found at the following address: Update and expansion of the MTA terminal modules (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/29289048)

Using redundant digital input modules with non-redundant encoders

With non-redundant encoders, you use digital input modules in a 1-out-of-2 configuration:

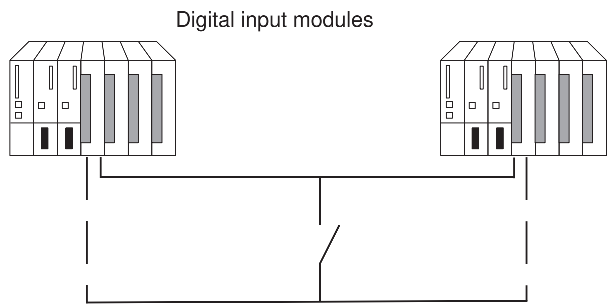


Figure 6-14 Fault-tolerant digital input module in 1-out-of-2 configuration with one encoder

The use of redundant digital input modules increases their availability.

Discrepancy analysis detects "Continuous 1" and "Continuous 0" errors of the digital input modules. A "Continuous 1" error means the value 1 is applied permanently at the input; a "Continuous 0" error means that the input is not energized. This can be caused, for example, by a short-circuit to L+ or M.

The current flow over the chassis ground connection between the modules and the encoder should be the minimum possible.

When connecting an encoder to several digital input modules, the redundant modules must operate at the same reference potential.

If you want to replace a module during operation and are not using redundant encoders, you will need to use decoupling diodes.

If you do not use terminal modules, see the interconnection examples in the Appendix Connection examples for redundant I/Os (Page 369).

Note

Remember that the proximity switches (Beros) must provide the current for the channels of both digital input modules. The technical specifications of the respective modules, however, specify only the required current per input.

Using redundant digital input modules with redundant encoders

With redundant encoders, you use digital input modules in a 1-out-of-2 configuration:

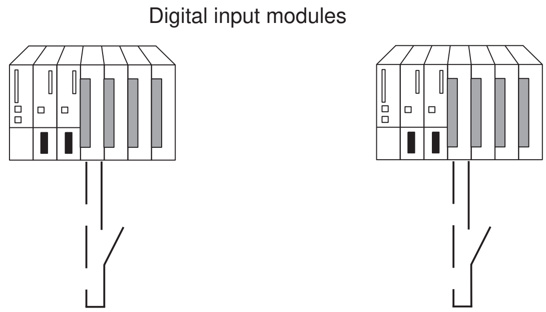


Figure 6-15 Fault-tolerant digital input modules in 1-out-of-2 configuration with two encoders

The use of redundant encoders also increases their availability. A discrepancy analysis detects all errors, except for the failure of a non-redundant load voltage supply. You can enhance availability by installing redundant load power supplies.

You will find interconnection examples in Appendix Connection examples for redundant I/Os (Page 369).

Redundant digital output modules

Fault-tolerant control of a final controlling element can be achieved by connecting two outputs of two digital output modules or fail-safe digital output modules in parallel (1-out-of-2 configuration).

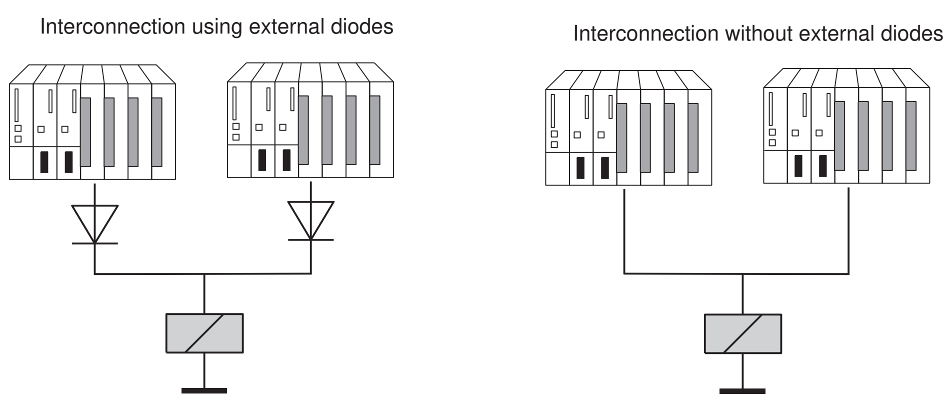


Figure 6-16 Fault-tolerant digital output modules in 1-out-of-2 configuration

The digital output modules must be connected to a common load voltage supply.

If you do not use terminal modules, see the interconnection examples in the Appendix Connection examples for redundant I/Os (Page 369).

Using analog input modules as redundant I/O

You specified the following parameters when you configured the analog input modules for redundant operation:

- Tolerance window (configured as a percentage of the end value of the measuring range)
  Two analog values are considered equal if they are within the tolerance window.
- Discrepancy time (maximum permitted time in which the redundant input signals can be outside the tolerance window). The specified discrepancy time must be a multiple of the update time of the process image and therefore also the basic conversion time of the channels.
  An error is generated when there is an input value discrepancy after the configured discrepancy time has expired.
  If you connect identical sensors to both analog input modules, the default value for the discrepancy time is usually sufficient. If you use different sensors, in particular temperature sensors, you will have to increase the discrepancy time.
- Applied value
  The applied value represents the value of the two analog input values that is applied to the user program.

The system verifies that the two read-in analog values are within the configured tolerance window. If they are, the applied value is written to the lower data memory area of the process input image. If there is a discrepancy and it is the first, it is marked accordingly and the discrepancy time is started.

When the discrepancy time is running, the most recent valid value is written to the process image of the module with the lower address and made available to the current process. If the discrepancy time expires, the channel with the configured standard value is declared as valid and the other channel is passivated. If the maximum value from both modules is configured as the standard value, this value is then taken for further program execution and the other channel is passivated. If the minimum value is set, this channel supplies the data to the process and the channel with the maximum value is passivated. Whichever is the case, the passivated channels are entered in the diagnostic buffer.

If the discrepancy is eliminated within the discrepancy time, analysis of the redundant input signals is still carried out.

Note

The time that the system actually needs to determine a discrepancy depends on various factors: Bus runtimes, cycle times and call times of the user program, conversion times, etc. For this reason, it is possible for redundant input signals to be different for longer than the configured discrepancy time.

Note

There is no discrepancy analysis when a channel reports an overflow with 16#7FFF or an underflow with 16#8000. The relevant channel is passivated immediately.

You should therefore disable all unused inputs in HW Config using the "Measurement type" parameter.

Redundant analog input modules with non-redundant encoder

With non-redundant encoders, analog input modules are used in a 1-out-of-2 configuration:

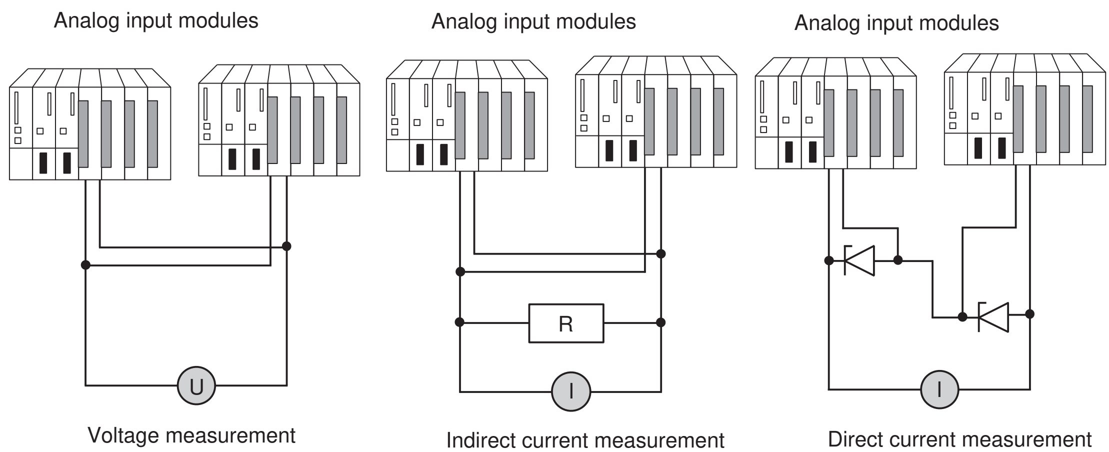


Figure 6-17 Fault-tolerant analog input modules in 1-out-of-2 configuration with one encoder

Remember the following when connecting an encoder to multiple analog input modules:

- Connect the analog input modules in parallel for voltage sensors (left in figure).
- You can convert a current into voltage using an external load to be able to use voltage analog input modules connected in parallel (center in the figure).
- 2-wire transmitters are powered externally to allow you to repair the module online.

The redundancy of the fail-safe analog input modules enhances their availability.

If you do not use terminal modules, see the interconnection examples in the Appendix Connection examples for redundant I/Os (Page 369).

Redundant analog input modules for indirect current measurement

The following applies to the wiring of analog input modules:

- Suitable encoders for this circuit are active transmitters with voltage output and thermocouples.
- The "wire break" diagnostics function in HW Config must not be enabled either the modules are operated with transmitters or when thermocouples are connected.
- Suitable encoder types: active 4-wire and passive 2-wire transmitters with output ranges +/-20 mA, 0 to 20 mA, and 4 to 20 mA. 2-wire transmitters are powered by an external auxiliary voltage.
- Criteria for the selection of resistance and input voltage range are the measurement accuracy, number format, maximum resolution and possible diagnostics.
- In addition to the options listed, other input resistance and voltage combinations according to Ohm’s law are also possible. However, note that the number format, diagnostic capability and resolution may then be lost. The measurement error also depends largely on the size of the measure resistance of certain modules.
- Use a measure resistance with a tolerance of +/- 0.1% and TC 15 ppm.

Additional conditions for specific modules

AI 8x12 bit 6ES7 331-7K..02-0AB0

- Use a 50 ohm or 250 ohm resistor to map the current on a voltage:

Resistor	50 ohms	250 ohms	
Current measuring range	+/-20 mA	+/-20 mA *)	4...20 mA
Input range to be assigned	+/-1 V	+/-5 V	1...5 V
Measuring range cube position	"A"	"B"	
Resolution	12 bits + sign	12 bits + sign	12 bits
S7 number format	x	x	
Circuit-specific measuring error - 2 parallel inputs - 1 input	- -	0.5% 0.25%	
"Wire break" diagnostics	-	-	x *)
Load for 4-wire transmitters	50 ohms	250 ohms	
Input voltage for 2-wire transmitters	> 1.2 V	> 6 V	
*) The AI 8x12bit outputs diagnostic interrupt and measured value "7FFF" in the event of wire break.			

The listed measuring error results solely from the interconnection of one or two voltage inputs with a measure resistance. Allowance has neither been made here for the tolerance nor for the basic/operational limits of the modules.

The measuring error for one or two inputs shows the difference in the measurement result depending on whether two inputs or, in case of error, only one input acquires the current of the transmitter.

AI 8x16 bit 6ES7 331-7NF00-0AB0

- Use a 250 ohm resistor to map the current on a voltage:

Resistor	250 ohms *)	
Current measuring range	+/-20 mA	4...20 mA
Input range to be assigned	+/-5 V	1...5 V
Resolution	15 bits + sign	15 bits
S7 number format	x	
Circuit-specific measuring error - 2 parallel inputs - 1 input	- -	
"Wire break" diagnostics	-	x
Load for 4-wire transmitters	250 ohms	
Input voltage for 2-wire transmitters	> 6 V	
*) It may be possible to use the freely connectible internal module 250 ohm resistors		

Redundant analog input modules for direct current measurement

The following applies to the wiring of analog input modules:

- Suitable encoder types: active 4-wire and passive 2-wire transmitters with output ranges +/-20 mA, 0 to 20 mA, and 4 to 20 mA. 2-wire transmitters are powered by an external auxiliary voltage.
- The "wire break" diagnostics function supports only the 4...20 mA input range. All other unipolar or bipolar ranges are excluded in this case.
- Suitable diodes include the types of the BZX85 or 1N47..A series (1.3 W Zener diodes) with the voltages specified for the modules. When selecting other elements, make sure that the reverse current is as low as possible.
- A fundamental measuring error of max. 1 μA results from this type of circuit and the specified diodes due to the reverse current. In the 20 mA range and at a resolution of 16 bits, this value leads to an error of < 2 bits. Individual analog inputs in the circuit above lead to an additional error, which may be listed in the constraints. The errors specified in the manual must be added to these errors for all modules.
- The 4-wire transmitters used must be capable of driving the load resulting from the circuit above. You will find details in the technical specifications of the individual modules.
- When connecting 2-wire transmitters, please note that the Zener diode circuit weighs heavily in the power budget of the transmitter. The required input voltages are therefore included in the technical specifications of the individual modules. Together with the inherent supply specified on the transmitter data sheet, the minimum supply voltage is calculated to $L+ > U_{e-2w} + U_{IS-TR}$

Redundant analog input modules with redundant encoders

With double-redundant encoders, it is better to use fail-safe analog input modules in a 1-out-of-2 configuration:

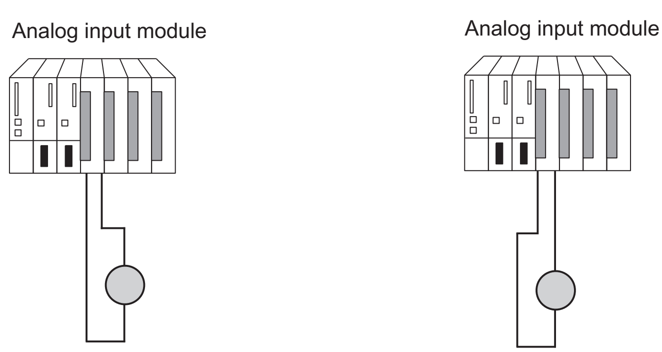


Figure 6-18 Fault-tolerant analog input modules in 1-out-of-2 configuration with two encoders

The use of redundant encoders also increases their availability.

A discrepancy analysis also detects external errors, except for the failure of a non-redundant load voltage supply.

You will find interconnection examples in Appendix Connection examples for redundant I/Os (Page 369).

The general comments made at the beginning of this documentation apply.

Redundant analog output modules

You implement fault-tolerant control of a final controlling element by wiring two outputs of two analog output modules in parallel (1-out-of-2 configuration)

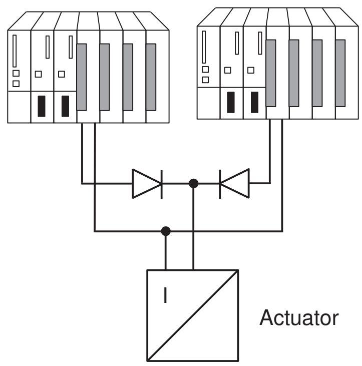


Figure 6-19 Fault-tolerant analog output modules in 1-out-of-2 configuration

The following applies to the wiring of analog output modules:

- Wire the ground connections in a star structure to avoid output errors (limited common-mode suppression of the analog output module).

If you do not use terminal modules, see the interconnection examples in the Appendix Connection examples for redundant I/Os (Page 369)

Analog output signals

Only analog output modules with current outputs (0 to 20 mA, 4 to 20 mA) can be operated redundantly.

The output value is divided by 2, and each of the two modules outputs half. If one of the modules fails, the failure is detected and the remaining module outputs the full value. As a result, the surge at the output module in the event of an error is not as high.

Note

The output value drops briefly to half, and after the reaction in the program it is returned to the proper value. The duration of the output value drop is determined by the following time intervals:

- Time interval between the initial occurrence of an interrupt and the interrupt report reaching the CPU.
- Time interval until the next RED_OUT (FB 451) call.
- Time interval until the intact analog output module has doubled the output value.

In the case of passivation or a CPU STOP, redundant analog outputs output an assignable minimum current of approximately 120-1000 µA per module (or 240-1000 µA for HART analog output modules), i.e., a total of approximately 240-2000 µA (or 480-2000 µA for HART analog output modules). Considering the tolerance, this means that the output value is always positive.

A configured substitute value of 0 mA will produce at least these output values. In a redundant configuration of analog outputs, the substitute value of the current outputs is automatically set permanently to "zero current and zero voltage". You can also specify a configurable compensation current of 0-400 µA for an output range of 4-20 mA.

This means you have the option of matching the minimum/compensation current to the connected I/O.

To minimize the error of the total current at the summing point in case of one-sided passivation, the assigned compensation current is subtracted in this case from the current of the depassivated (i.e., active) channel with a pre-set value of 4 mA (range +-20 µA).

Note

If both channels of a channel pair were passivated (e.g., by OB 85), the respective half of the current value is still output to both storage locations in the process image of outputs. If one channel is depassivated, then the full value is output on the available channel. If this is not required, a substitute value must be written to the lower channels of both modules prior to executing FB 451 "RED_OUT".

Depassivation of modules

Passivated modules are depassivated by the following events:

- When the fault-tolerant system starts up
- When the fault-tolerant system switched to "redundant" mode
- After system modifications during operation
- If you call FC 451 "RED_DEPA" and at least one redundant channel or module is passivated.

The depassivation is executed in FB 450 "RED IN" after one of these events has occurred. Completion of the depassivation of all modules is logged in the diagnostics buffer.

Note

When a redundant module is assigned a process image partition and the corresponding OB is not available on the CPU, the complete passivation process may take approximately 1 minute.

See also

S7-400H Systems Redundant I/O (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/9275191)

6.7.3 Evaluating the passivation status

Procedure

First, determine the passivation status by evaluating the status byte in the status/control word "FB_RED_IN.STATUS_CONTROL_W". If you see that one or more modules have been passivated, determine the status of the respective module pairs in MODUL_STATUS_WORD.

Evaluating the passivation status using the status byte

The status word "FB_RED_IN.STATUS_CONTROL_W" is located in the instance DB of FB 450 "RED_IN". The status byte returns information on the status of the redundant I/Os. The assignment of the status byte is described in the online help for the respective block library.

Evaluating the passivation status of individual module pairs by means of MODUL_STATUS_WORD

MODUL_STATUS_WORD is an output parameter of FB 453 and can be interconnected accordingly. It returns information on the status of individual module pairs.

The assignment of the MODUL_STATUS_WORD status byte is described in the online help for the respective function block library.

6.8 Media redundancy

Media redundancy is a function for ensuring network availability and thus contributes to increasing the plant availability. Redundant transmission links in a ring topology ensure that an alternative communication path is always available if a transmission link fails. Following a fault in one transmission link, data traffic can resume over the alternative link after a maximum reconfiguration time of 200 ms.

For the components involved, you can enable the media redundancy protocol (MRP) in HW Config. The components (IO devices, switches) must support MRP. MRP is a component of the PROFINET IO standardization according to IEC 61158.

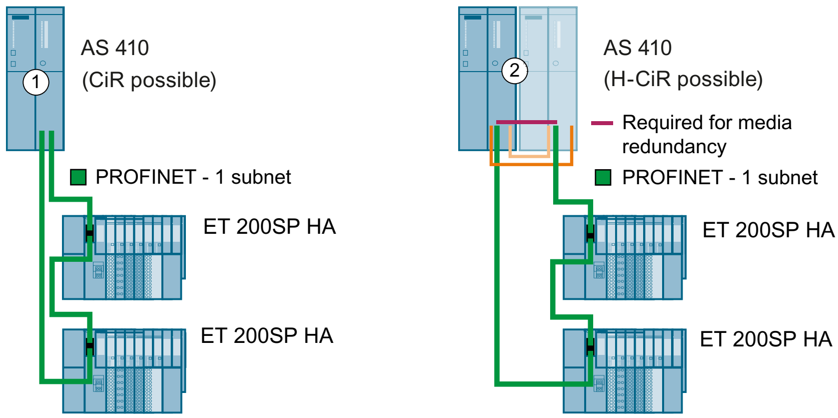
Note

Support of PRP (Parallel Redundancy Protocol) or MRPD (Media Redundancy Protocol Domain) does not equal MRP functionality or vice versa.

In the case of media redundancy with MRP, one device is specified as the media redundancy manager (MRM) in HW Config. All other devices are redundancy clients.

Configuration

The following figure shows examples of the connection of IO devices to the PROFINET IO system:



Configuration	Properties
①	Media redundancy Each node is connected to two other nodes in a ring configuration. The IO controller must be configured as an MRP manager in HW Config. The nodes connected to PROFINET IO must be assigned unique names.
②	Media redundancy + system redundancy The PROFINET IO system begins and ends at one IO controller each in this example. Each node is connected to two other nodes in a ring configuration. The MRP parameter assignment must be complete. If a PROFINET IO system is created at each PN IO connection of the CPU, a newly inserted interface module is automatically connected to the PROFINET IO system of the CPU. The nodes on the fieldbus (PROFINET IO) must be assigned unique names.

Installing a ring topology

To set up a ring topology with media redundancy, you must join both free ends of a line network topology in the same device. You join the line topology to form a ring via two ports (ring ports, port ID "R") of a device connected to the ring.

The data paths between the individual devices are automatically reconfigured if the ring is interrupted at any point. The devices are available again after reconfiguration.

Note

The real-time communication is interrupted (station failure) when the reconfiguration time of the ring exceeds the selected watchdog time of the IO devices. This applies to all IO devices whose IO data is transmitted over a ring.

Note

Before physically joining the ring together, download the configuration of your project to the individual devices.

Topology

You can also combine media redundancy under PROFINET IO with other PROFINET IO functions.

Additional information

For additional information, refer to the STEP 7 Online Help and to Manual PROFINET System Description (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/19292127).

7 System and operating states of the CPU 410

7.1 CPU 410 operating modes

7.1.1 RUN mode

Reaction of the CPU

If there is no startup problem or error and the CPU was able to switch to RUN, the CPU either executes the user program or remains idle. The I/O can be accessed.

- You can read out programs from the CPU with the ES (CPU -> ES).
- You can transfer programs from the ES to the CPU (ES -> CPU).

The user program is executed by at least one CPU in the following system states:

- Stand-alone operation
- Single mode
- Link-up, update
- Redundant

Single mode, link-up, update

In the system states solo mode, link-up and update, the master CPU is in RUN and executes the user program in stand-alone mode.

Redundant system mode

The master CPU and standby CPU are always in RUN when operating in the redundant system state. Both CPUs execute the user program in synchronism, and perform mutual checks.

In redundant system mode it is not possible to test the user program with breakpoints.

The redundant system state is only supported if the two CPUs have the same version and firmware version. Redundancy will be lost if one of the errors listed in the following table occurs.

Table 7-1 Causes of error leading to redundancy loss

Cause of error	Reaction
Failure of one CPU	Replacement of a CPU during redundant operation (Page 221)
Failure of the redundant link (synchronization module or fiber-optic cable)	Replacement of synchronization module or fiber-optic cable (Page 226)
RAM comparison error	ERROR-SEARCH mode (Page 105)

Redundant use of modules

Redundantly used module pairs must be identical, i.e. the two modules that are redundant to each other must have the same article number and the same product version/firmware version.

7.1.2 STOP mode

Reaction of the CPU

The CPU does not execute the user program. The output modules output 0 or - if configured - a substitute value. The signals of the input modules are set to 0.

- You can read out programs from the CPU with the ES (CPU -> ES).
- You can transfer programs from the ES to the CPU (ES -> CPU).

Special features in redundant mode

When you download a configuration to one of the CPUs while both are in STOP operating state, observe the points below:

- Start the CPU to which you downloaded the configuration first in order to set it up for master mode.
- If the system start is requested by the ES, the CPU with the active connection is started first, regardless of its master or reserve status. Then the second CPU starts up and will become the standby CPU after link-up and update operations.

Note

A system startup may trigger a master–standby changeover.

A CPU 410 can only exit the STOP operating state with a loaded configuration.

Memory reset

The memory reset function affects only the selected CPU. To reset both CPUs, you must reset one and then the other.

7.1.3 STARTUP mode

Startup types

The CPU 410 distinguishes between two startup types: cold restart and warm restart.

Cold restart

- During a cold restart, all data (process image, bit memory, timers, counters and data blocks) is reset to the start values stored in the program (load memory), regardless of whether they were configured as retentive or non-retentive.
- The associated startup OB is OB 102
- Program execution is restarted from the beginning (OB 102 or OB 1).

Warm restart

- A warm restart resets the process image and the bit memories, timers, and counters.
  All data blocks assigned the "Non Retain" attribute are reset to the start values from the load memory.
  The other data blocks retain their last valid value if buffering is active. If there is no buffering, the values are reset to the start values from the load memory after power off/on.
- The associated startup OB is OB 100
- Program execution is restarted from the beginning (OB 100 or OB 1).

Special features in redundant mode

The special features described below apply to startup when you operate two CPUs 410 redundantly.

Startup processing by the master CPU

The startup system state is always processed by the master CPU in redundant mode.

During STARTUP, the master CPU compares the existing I/O configuration with the hardware configuration that you created in STEP 7. If these are different, the system can only be started up if "Startup when expected/actual configurations differ" was configured.

The master CPU checks and assigns parameters for the following:

- the switched I/O devices
- the one-sided I/O including CPs and FMs assigned to it

Startup of the standby CPU

The standby CPU startup routine does not call an OB 100 or OB 102.

The standby CPU checks and assigns parameters for the following:

- the one-sided I/O including CPs and FMs assigned to it

Special features at startup

During a Power On with battery backup of a CPU 410 with large configurations containing many CPs and/or external DP masters, it may take up to 2 minutes until a requested warm restart is executed. During this time, the LEDs on the CPU light up successively as follows:

1. All LEDs light up.
2. The STOP LED flashes as it does during a memory reset.
3. The RUN and STOP LEDs are flashing.
4. The RUN LED flashes briefly 2 to 3 times.
5. The STOP LED lights up.
6. The RUN LED starts flashing again.

This begins the start up.

Additional information

For detailed information on STARTUP operating state, refer to Manual *Programming with STEP 7*.

7.1.4 HOLD mode

The HOLD mode is for test purposes. You need to have set respective breakpoints in the user program for this purpose. It can only be reached from the RUN mode.

Special features in redundant mode

A transition to HOLD is only available during STARTUP and in RUN in single mode. It is not possible to set breakpoints when the fault-tolerant system is in redundant system mode. Link-up and update operations are not available while the CPU is in HOLD mode; the standby CPU remains in STOP which is logged in the diagnostics buffer.

7.1.5 LINK-UP and UPDATE modes

The master CPU checks and updates the memory content of the standby CPU before the fault-tolerant system assumes redundant system mode. This is implemented in two successive phases: link-up and update.

The master CPU is always in RUN mode and the reserve CPU is in LINK-UP or UPDATE mode during the link-up and update phases.

In addition to the link-up and update functions, which are carried out to establish redundant system mode, the system also supports linking and updating in combination with master/reserve changeover.

For detailed information on connect and updating, refer to section Link-up and update (Page 119).

7.1.6 ERROR-SEARCH mode

The purpose of ERROR-SEARCH operating state is to find a faulty CPU. The standby CPU runs the entire self-test; the master CPU remains in RUN. If a hardware fault is detected, the CPU switches to DEFECTIVE mode. If no fault is detected the CPU is linked up again. The fault-tolerant system switches back to the redundant system state.

No communication, for example through PG access, is possible with the CPU in TROUBLESHOOTING mode. The ERROR-SEARCH operating state is indicated by the flashing RUN and STOP LEDs, see Chapter Status and error displays (Page 43).

Note

If the master CPU changes to STOP during troubleshooting, the troubleshooting is continued on the standby CPU. However, once troubleshooting is completed, the standby CPU does not start up again.

The following events will trigger the ERROR-SEARCH operating state:

1. If there is a one-sided call of OB 121 in redundant operation (at only one CPU), a hardware fault is assumed and that CPU switches to TROUBLESHOOTING mode. The other CPU becomes master, if necessary, and continues running in solo operation.
2. If a checksum error occurs on only one CPU in redundant operation, that CPU switches to ERROR-SEARCH operating state. The other CPU becomes master, if necessary, and continues running in solo operation.
3. If a RAM/PAA comparison error occurs in redundant operation, the backup CPU switches to TROUBLESHOOTING mode (default response) and the master CPU continues running in solo mode.
   A different response to a RAM/PAA comparison error can be configured (for example backup CPU switches to STOP).
4. If a multiple-bit error occurs on a CPU in redundant operation, that CPU will switch to ERROR-SEARCH operating state. The other CPU becomes master, if necessary, and continues running in solo operation.
   But: OB 84 is called if 2 or more single-bit errors occur on a CPU in redundant operation within 6 months. The CPU does not change to ERROR-SEARCH operating state.
5. If synchronization is lost during redundant operation, the standby CPU changes to ERROR-SEARCH operating state. The other CPU remains master and continues running in solo operation.

You can find additional information on the self-test in Self-test (Page 114).

7.1.7 DEFECTIVE state

If an error has occurred that cannot be automatically cleared by the operating system, the CPU switches to the DEFECTIVE state and all LEDs flash.

The CPU switches to the DEFECTIVE state in the following cases:

- The user data is inconsistent.
- A reboot has already been carried out within the previous 24 hours.
- The event that led to the defect is preventing an automatic reboot.

CPU response following reboot

The CPU operating system tries to switch back to RUN by rebooting the CPU.

The CPU responds as follows to a reboot:

1. The CPU writes the cause of the error to the diagnostics buffer.
2. The CPU generates the current service data.
3. The CPU checks if a reboot is possible.
   A reboot is not possible in the following cases:
   – There is an inconsistency in the user data.
   – A reboot has already been carried out within the previous 24 hours.
   – The event that led to the defect is preventing an automatic reboot.
4. The CPU records the automatic reboot in the diagnostics buffers (event W#16#4309 "Memory reset launched automatically" or W#16#452B "CPU REBOOT for clearing data inconsistency")
5. The CPU runs internal tests.
6. In a redundant system, the standby CPU links up to the master in operation.
7. In stand-alone operation and solo mode, the CPU load the backed up user program and executes a warm restart

7.2 System states of the redundant CPU 410

7.2.1 Introduction

The S7-400H consists of two redundantly configured subsystems that are synchronized via fiber-optic cables.

The two subsystems form a fault-tolerant automation system that operates with a dual-channel (1-out-of-2) structure based on the "active redundancy" principle.

What does active redundancy mean?

Active redundancy means that all redundant resources are constantly in operation and simultaneously involved in the execution of the control task.

For the S7-400H, this means that the user programs in both CPUs are identical and executed synchronously by the two CPUs.

Convention

To identify the two subsystems, we use the traditional expressions of "master" and "standby" for dual-channel fault-tolerant systems in this description. However, the standby runs event-synchronized with the master at all times and not just when an error occurs.

The differentiation between the master and standby CPUs is primarily important for ensuring reproducible fault responses. The standby goes into troubleshooting mode when RAM/PIQ errors are detected, for example, while the master CPU remains in RUN.

Master-standby assignment

When the S7-400H is first switched on, the CPU that started up first becomes the master CPU, and the other CPU becomes the standby CPU.

The preset master-standby assignment is retained when both CPUs power up simultaneously.

The master-standby assignment changes when:

1. The standby CPU starts up before the master CPU (interval of at least 3 s)
2. The master CPU fails or switches to STOP in the redundant system state
3. No error was found in ERROR-SEARCH operating state (see Chapter ERROR-SEARCH mode (Page 105))
4. Programmed master-standby switchover with SFC 90 "H_CTRL"
5. The sequence of a system modification during operation
6. A firmware update in RUN mode
7. Switch to CPU with modified configuration
8. Switching to a CPU with modified operating system
9. Switching to a CPU using only one intact redundant link
10. Switching to a CPU with modified PO limit

Synchronizing the subsystems

The master and standby CPUs are linked by fiber-optic cables. Both CPUs maintain event-synchronous program execution via this connection.

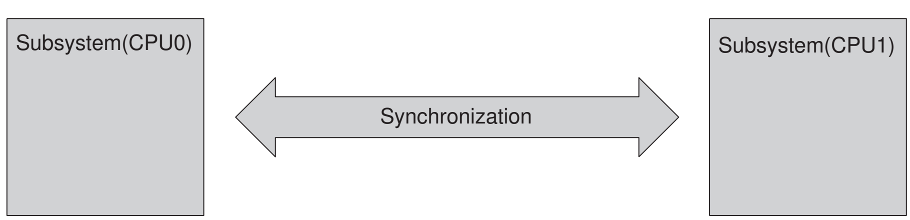


Figure 7-1 Synchronizing the subsystems

Synchronization is performed automatically by the operating system and has no effect on the user program. You create your program in the same way as for standard S7-400 CPUs.

Event-driven synchronization procedure

The "event-driven synchronization" procedure patented by Siemens was used for the S7-400H.

Event-driven synchronization means that the master and standby always synchronize their data when an event occurs which may lead to different internal states of the subsystems.

Such events include, for example, alarms or changes of data through communication functions.

Continued bumpless operation even if redundancy of a CPU is lost

Event-driven synchronization ensures bumpless continuation of operation by the standby CPU even if the master CPU fails. The inputs and outputs do not lose their values during the master-standby switchover.

Self-test

Malfunctions or errors must be detected, localized and reported as quickly as possible. Extensive self-test functions have therefore been implemented in the S7-400H that run automatically and entirely in the background.

The following components and functions are tested:

- Coupling of the central controllers
- Processor
- Internal memory of the CPU
- I/O bus

If the self-test detects an error, the fault-tolerant system tries to eliminate it or to suppress its effects.

A description of the self-test is available in Chapter Self-test (Page 114).

System operation without STOP

To best meet the requirements of the process industry for system operation without STOP, SIMATIC PCS 7 intercepts as many possible STOP causes as possible. The CPU 410 was enhanced such that it, as a redundant system, automatically achieves the RUN redundant operating state over and over again if possible. A change in the operating mode is only possible through an engineering system command. The diagnostic information always indicates the RUN switch position.

7.2.2 The system states of the fault-tolerant system

The system states of the fault-tolerant system result from the operating states of the two CPUs. The term "system state" is used as a simplified term which identifies the concurrent operating states of the two CPUs.

Example: Instead of "the master CPU is in RUN and the standby CPU is in LINK-UP mode", we use "the fault-tolerant system" is in the "link-up" system state.

Overview of system states

The table below provides an overview of the possible states of the fault-tolerant system.

Table 7-2 Overview of system states of the fault-tolerant system

System states of the fault-tolerant system	Operating states of the two CPUs	
	Master	**Standby**
STOP	STOP	STOP, power off, DEFECTIVE
STARTUP	STARTUP	STOP, power off, DEFECTIVE, no synchronization
Single mode	RUN	STOP, ERROR-SEARCH, power off, DEFECTIVE, no synchronization
Link-up	RUN	STARTUP, LINK-UP
Update	RUN	UPDATE
Redundant	RUN	RUN
HOLD	HOLD	STOP, ERROR-SEARCH, power off, DEFECTIVE, no synchronization

7.2.3 Displaying and changing the system state of a fault-tolerant system

Procedure:

1. Select a CPU in SIMATIC Manager.
2. Select the menu command PLC > Diagnostics/Setting >Operating state.

Note

STOP is only possible with authorization in projects with password protection.

Result:

The "Operating state" dialog box shows the current system state of the fault-tolerant system and the operating states of the individual central processing units.

The CPU that was selected in SIMATIC Manager when the menu command was executed is the first one displayed in the table.

Changing the system state:

The options of changing the system state depend on the current system state of the fault-tolerant system.

7.2.4 System status change from the STOP system state

Requirement

You have selected one of the two CPUs in SIMATIC Manager and opened the "Operating state" dialog box using the PLC > Diagnostics/Setting > Operating state menu command.

Changing to redundant system mode (starting the fault-tolerant system)

1. Select the fault-tolerant system in the table.
2. Select the Restart button (warm restart).

Result:

The CPU displayed first in the table starts up as master CPU. Then the second CPU starts up and will become the standby CPU after link-up and update operations.

Changing to standalone mode (starting only one CPU)

1. In the table, select the CPU you want to start up.
2. Select the Restart button (warm restart).

7.2.5 System status change from the standalone mode system status

Requirements:

- For CPU access protection with password: You have entered the CPU access password with the menu command PLC > Access Rights > Setup in SIMATIC Manager.
- You have opened the "Operating state" dialog box using the PLC > Diagnostics/Setting > Operating state menu command in SIMATIC Manager.
- The standby CPU is not in ERROR-SEARCH operating state.

Changing to redundant system state (starting the standby CPU)

1. In the table, select the CPU that is in STOP, or the fault-tolerant system.
2. Select the Restart button (warm restart).

Changing to system status STOP (stopping the running CPU)

1. In the table, select the CPU that is in RUN, or the fault-tolerant system.
2. Select the STOP button.

Note

Any set up access right is not canceled until you stop the SIMATIC Manager. You should reset the access right once again to prevent unauthorized access. You reset the access right in the SIMATIC Manager with the menu command PLC > Access Rights > Cancel.

7.2.6 System status change from the redundant system state

Requirement:

- For CPU access protection with password: You have entered the CPU access password with the menu command PLC > Access Rights > Setup in SIMATIC Manager.
- You have opened the "Operating state" dialog box using the PLC > Diagnostics/Setting > Operating state menu command in SIMATIC Manager.

Changing to STOP system state (stopping the fault-tolerant system)

1. Select the fault-tolerant system in the table.
2. Select the Stop button.

Result

Both CPUs switch to STOP.

Changing to standalone mode (stop of one CPU)

1. In the table, select the CPU that you want to stop.
2. Select the Stop button.

Result:

The selected CPU goes into the STOP state, while the other CPU remains in RUN state; the fault-tolerant system continues operating in standalone mode.

Note

Any set up access right is not canceled until you stop the SIMATIC Manager. You should reset the access right once again to prevent unauthorized access. You reset the access right in the SIMATIC Manager with the menu command PLC > Access Rights > Cancel.

7.2.7 System diagnostics of a fault-tolerant system

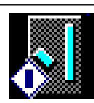
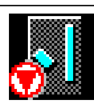
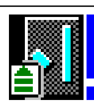
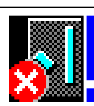
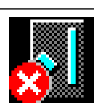
The diagnose hardware function identifies the state of the entire fault-tolerant system.

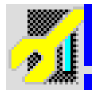
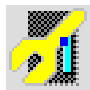
Procedure:

1. Select the fault-tolerant station in SIMATIC Manager.
2. Select the menu command PLC > Diagnostics/Setting >Diagnose hardware.
3. In the "Select CPU" dialog, select the CPU and confirm with OK.

Result:

The operating state of the selected CPU can be identified based on the display of the selected CPU in the "Diagnose hardware" dialog:

CPU icon	Operating state of the respective CPU
	Master CPU is in RUN operating state
	Standby CPU is in RUN operating state
	Master CPU is in STOP operating state
	Standby CPU is in STOP operating state
	Master CPU is in STARTUP operating state
	Master CPU or a module whose parameters it assigned is faulty.
	Standby CPU or a module whose parameters it assigned is faulty
	Maintenance required on master CPU
	Maintenance required on standby CPU

CPU icon	Operating state of the respective CPU
	Maintenance request on master CPU
	Maintenance request on standby CPU

Note

The view is not updated automatically in the Online view. Use the F5 function key to view the current operating state.

7.3 Self-test

Processing the self-test

The CPU executes the complete self-test program after an unbuffered POWER ON, e.g., POWER ON after initial insertion of the CPU or POWER ON without backup battery, and in the ERROR-SEARCH operating state.

The duration of the self-test is approximately 7 minutes.

In a fault-tolerant system, if the CPU calls for a memory reset and a buffered Power Off/On is then carried out, the CPU performs a self-test even though it was buffered.

In RUN the operating system splits the self-test routine into several small program sections ("test slices") which are processed in multiple successive cycles. The cyclic self-test is organized to perform a single, complete pass in a certain time. This time interval is at least 90 minutes and can be extended in the configuration to reduce the impact of the self-test on the runtime of the user program. However, it also extends the time interval in which a possible error is detected.

Response to errors during the self-test

If the self-test returns an error, the following happens:

Table 7-3 Response to errors during the self-test

Type of error	System response
Hardware fault	The faulty CPU switches to DEFECTIVE state. Fault-tolerant system switches to stand-alone operation. The cause of the error is written to the diagnostics buffer.
Hardware fault, which is signaled via a one-sided OB 121 call	The CPU with the one-sided OB 121 switches to ERROR-SEARCH. Fault-tolerant system switches to stand-alone operation (see below).
RAM/PIQ comparison error	The cause of the error is written to the diagnostics buffer. The configured system or operating state is assumed (see below).
Checksum errors	The response depends on the error situation (see below).
Multiple-bit errors	The faulty CPU switches to ERROR-SEARCH operating state.

Hardware fault with one-sided OB 121 call

If a hardware fault occurs that triggers a one-sided OB 121 call and this fault occurs for the first time since the last unbuffered POWER ON, the faulty CPU switches to ERROR SEARCH operating state. The fault-tolerant system switches to stand-alone operation. The cause of the error is written to the diagnostics buffer.

RAM/PIQ comparison error

If the self-test detects a RAM/PIQ comparison error, the fault-tolerant system exits redundant operating state and the standby CPU switches to ERROR SEARCH operating state (default setting). The cause of the error is written to the diagnostics buffer.

The response to a recurring RAM/PIQ comparison error depends on whether the error recurs in the first self-test cycle after troubleshooting or not until later.

Table 7-4 Response to a recurring comparison error

Comparison error recurs ...	Reaction
in the first self-test cycle after troubleshooting	Fault-tolerant system switches to stand-alone operation. Standby CPU switches to ERROR SEARCH and then remains in STOP.
after two or more self-test cycles after troubleshooting	Fault-tolerant system switches to stand-alone operation. Standby CPU switches to ERROR SEARCH.

Checksum errors

When a checksum error occurs for the first time since the last POWER ON without battery backup, the system reacts as follows:

Table 7-5 Reaction to checksum errors

Time of detection	System response
During the startup test after POWER ON	The faulty CPU switches to DEFECTIVE state. Fault-tolerant system remains in stand-alone operation.
In the cyclic self-test (STOP or solo operation)	The error is corrected. The CPU remains in STOP operating state or in solo operation.
In the cyclic self-test (redundant system state)	The error is corrected. The faulty CPU switches to ERROR-SEARCH operating state. Fault-tolerant system switches to stand-alone operation.
In the ERROR-SEARCH operating state	The faulty CPU switches to DEFECTIVE state.

The cause of the error is written to the diagnostics buffer.

In an F-system, the F-program is already signaled at the first occurrence of a checksum error in STOP operating state or in stand-alone operation that the self-test has detected an error.

Hardware fault with one-sided OB 121 call, checksum error, 2nd occurrence

The response of a CPU 410 to the second occurrence of hardware faults with one-sided OB 121 call and checksum errors is as shown in the following table for the various operating modes of a CPU 410.

Table 7-6 Hardware fault with one-sided OB 121 call, checksum error, 2nd occurrence

Error	CPU in stand-alone operation/single mode	CPU in redundant operation
Hardware fault with one-sided OB 121 call	OB 121 is executed	The faulty CPU switches to ERROR-SEARCH operating state. The fault-tolerant system switches to stand-alone operation.
Checksum error	The CPU enters the DEFECTIVE state if two errors occur within two successive test cycles (You configure the length of the test cycle in HW Config)	The CPU enters the DEFECTIVE state if a second error triggered by the first error event occurs in ERROR-SEARCH mode.

If a second checksum error occurs in solo or stand-alone operation after twice the test cycle time has expired, the CPU reacts as it did on the first occurrence of the error. If a second error (hardware fault with one-sided OB 121 call, checksum error) occurs in redundant operation after expiration of the troubleshooting operation, the CPU responds the same as to the first occurrence of the error.

Multiple-bit errors

If a multiple-bit error is detected during redundant operation of a fault-tolerant system, the CPU switches to ERROR-SEARCH operating state. When troubleshooting is finished, the CPU can be linked up and updated again, and resume redundant operation. If there is no error on the CPU 410, it switches to RUN and becomes the master. The cause of the error is signaled by the call of OB 84.

There are some rare cases in which multiple-bit and single-bit errors can occur due to very challenging ambient conditions. If they occur only once, they do not interfere with the hardware. If bit errors occur frequently, however, replace the hardware.

Single-bit errors

Single-bit errors are also detected and eliminated outside the self-test. After elimination of the error, the CPU 410 calls OB 84.

Influencing the cyclic self-test

SFC 90 "H_CTRL" allows you to influence the scope and execution of the cyclic self-test. For example, you can remove various test components from the overall test and re-introduce them. In addition, you can explicitly call and process specific test components.

For detailed information on SFC 90 "H_CTRL", refer to Manual *System Software for S7-300/400, System and Standard Functions*.

Note

In a fail-safe system, you are not allowed to disable and then re-enable the cyclic self-tests.

7.4 Performing a memory reset

Memory reset process in the CPU

You can perform a memory reset of the CPU from the ES. During a memory reset, the following process occurs on the CPU:

- The CPU deletes the entire user program in the main memory.
- The CPU deletes the user program from the load memory.
- The CPU deletes all counters, bit memories, and timers, but not the time of day.
- The CPU tests its hardware.
- The CPU sets its parameters to default settings.

The LEDs behave as following during the memory reset:

1. The STOP LED flashes for about 1-2 seconds at 2 Hz.
2. All LEDs light up for approximately 10 seconds.
3. The STOP LED flashes for approximately 30 seconds at 2 Hz.
4. The RUN LED and the STOP LED flash for approximately 2 seconds at 0.5 Hz.
   This operation can also take a few seconds longer depending on the utilization level of the memory.
5. The RUN LED and the STOP LED flash for approximately 2 seconds at 0.5 Hz.
   If a large data volume is being deleted, the LEDs may flash longer.
6. The STOP LED lights up permanently.

Data retained after a memory reset...

The following values are retained after a memory reset:

- The content of the diagnostic buffer
- The baud rate of the DP interface
- The parameters of the PN interfaces
  - Name (NameOfStation)
  - IP address of CPU
  - Subnet mask
  - Static SNMP parameters
- The time of day
- The status and value of the operating hours counter

Link-up and update 8

8.1 Effects of link-up and updating

The link-up and update operations are indicated by the REDF LED on both CPUs. During link-up, the LEDs flash at a frequency of 0.5 Hz, and when updating at a frequency of 2 Hz.

Link-up and update have various effects on user program execution and on communication functions.

Table 8-1 Properties of link-up and update functions

Process	Link-up	Update
Execution of the user program	All priority classes (OBs) are processed.	Processing of the priority classes is delayed section by section. All requests are caught up with after the update. For details, refer to the sections below.
Deleting, loading, generating, and compressing of blocks	Blocks cannot be deleted, loaded, created or compressed. When such actions are busy, link-up and update operations are inhibited.	Blocks cannot be deleted, loaded, created or compressed.
Execution of communication functions, ES operation	Communication functions are executed.	Execution of the functions is restricted section by section and delayed. All the delayed functions are caught up with after the update. For details, refer to the sections below.
CPU self-test	Not performed	Not performed
Testing and commissioning functions, such as "Monitor/modify tag", "Monitor (on/off)".	No testing and commissioning functions are possible. When such actions are busy, link-up and update operations are inhibited.	No testing and commissioning functions are possible.
Handling of connections on the master CPU	All connections are retained; no new connections can be made.	All connections are retained; no new connections can be made. Interrupted connections are not restored until the update is completed
Handling of connections on the reserve CPU	All the connections are cancelled; no new connections can be made.	All connections are already down. Cancellation takes place during link-up. Connections of the standby are not established until Redundant system state.

8.2 Link-up and update via an ES command

Which commands you can use on the programming device to initiate a link-up and update operation is determined by the current conditions on the master and standby CPU. The following table shows the possible PG commands for the link-up and update in various circumstances.

Table 8-2 PG commands for link-up and update

Link-up and update as PG command:	Firmware version on master and standby CPU	Available sync connections	Hardware version on master and standby CPU	Number of POs on system expansion cards
Restart of the standby	Are identical	2	Are identical	Are identical
Switching to a partner CPU with modified configuration	Are identical	2	Are identical	Are identical
Switching to a partner CPU with modified operating system	Are different	2	Are identical	Are identical
Switching to a partner CPU with modified hardware product version	Are identical	2	Are different	Are identical
Switching to a partner CPU using only one intact redundant link	Are identical	1	Are identical	Are identical
Switching to a partner CPU with modified PO limit	Are identical	2	Are identical	Are different

8.3 Time monitoring

Program execution is interrupted for a certain time during updating. This section is relevant to you if this period is critical in your process. If this is the case, configure one of the monitoring times described below.

During updating, the fault-tolerant system monitors the cycle time extension, communication delay and inhibit time for priority classes > 15 in order to ensure that their configured maximum values are not exceeded, and that the configured minimum I/O retention time is maintained.

You made allowances for the technological requirements in your configuration of monitoring times.

The monitoring times are described in detail below.

- Maximum cycle time extension
  - Cycle time extension: The time during the update in which neither OB 1 nor any other OBs up to priority class 15 are executed. "Normal" cycle time monitoring is disabled within this time span.
  - Max. cycle time extension: The maximum permissible cycle time extension configured by the user.
- Maximum communication delay
  - Communication delay: The time span during the update during which no communication functions are processed. Note: The master CPU, however, maintains all existing communication links.
  - Maximum communication delay: The maximum permissible communication delay configured by the user.
- Maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15
  - Inhibit time for priority classes > 15: The time span during an update during which no OBs (and thus no user program) are executed nor any I/O updates are implemented.
  - Maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15: The maximum permissible inhibit time for priority classes > 15 configured by the user.
- Minimum I/O retention time:
  This represents the interval between copying of the outputs from the master CPU to the standby CPU, and the time of the master/standby changeover (time at which the previous master CPU goes into STOP and the new master CPU goes into RUN). Both CPUs control the outputs within this period, in order to prevent the I/O from going down when the system performs an update with master/standby changeover.
  The minimum I/O retention time is of particular importance when updating with master/standby changeover.

The monitoring start times are indicated in the highlighted boxes in Figure 12-2. These times expire when the system enters the redundant system mode or when there is a master/standby changeover, i.e. on the transition of the new master to RUN when the update is completed.

The figure below provides an overview of the relevant update times.

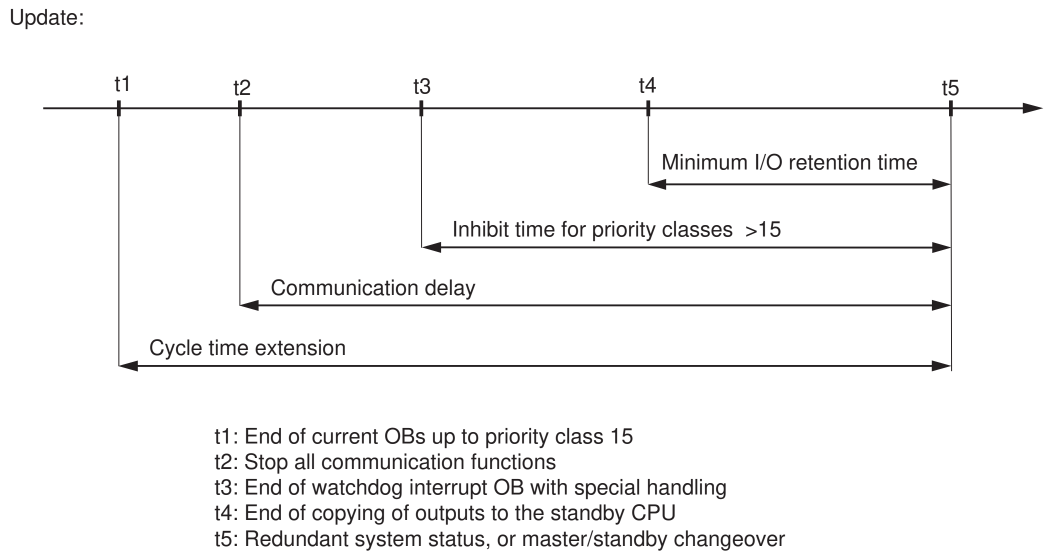


Figure 8-1 Meanings of the times relevant for updates

Response to time-outs

If one of the times monitored exceeds the configured maximum value, the following procedure is started:

1. Cancel update
2. Fault-tolerant system remains in standalone mode, with the previous master CPU in RUN
3. Cause of cancelation is entered in diagnostic buffer
4. Call OB 72 (with corresponding start information)

The standby CPU then reevaluates its system data blocks.
Following this, after at least one minute, the CPU tries again to perform the link-up and update. If still unsuccessful after a total of 10 retries, the CPU abandons the attempt. You yourself will then need to start the link-up and update again.

A monitoring timeout can be caused by:

- High interrupt load (e.g. from I/O modules)
- High communication load causing prolonged execution times for active functions
- In the final update phase, the system needs to copy unusually large amounts of data to the standby CPU.

8.3.1 Time response

Time response during link-up

The influence of link-up operations on your plant's control system should be kept to an absolute minimum. The current load on your automation system is therefore a decisive factor in the increase of link-up times. The time required for link-up is in particular determined by

- the communication load
- the cycle time

Link-up takes about 2 minutes for automation systems without load.

It can take more than one hour when there is a high load on your automation system.

Time response during updating

The transmission time during updating depends on the current changes of the process values and the communication load.

As a simple approximation, we can interpret the maximum inhibit time to be configured for priority classes > 15 as a function of the data volume in the work memory. The volume of code in the work memory is irrelevant.

8.3.2 Determining the monitoring times

Calculation using STEP 7 or formulas

STEP 7 automatically calculates the monitoring times listed below for each new configuration. You can also calculate these times using the formulas and procedures described below. They are equivalent to the formulas provided in STEP 7.

- Maximum cycle time extension
- Maximum communication delay
- Maximum inhibit time for priority classes
- Minimum I/O retention time

You can also start automatic calculation of monitoring times with Properties CPU > H Parameters in HW Config.

Monitoring time accuracy

Note

The monitoring times determined by STEP 7 or by using formulas merely represent recommended values.

These times are based on a fault-tolerant system with two communication peers and an average communication load.

Your system profile may differ considerably from those scenarios, therefore the following rules must be observed.

- A high communication load can significantly increase cycle time.
- Any modification of the system in operation may lead to a significant increase in cycle times.
- Any increase in the number of programs executed in priority classes > 15 (in particular processing of communication blocks) increases the delay in communication and extends the cycle time.
- You can even undercut the calculated monitoring times in small plants with high-performance requirements.

Configuration of the monitoring times

When configuring monitoring times, always make allowances for the following dependencies; conformity is checked by STEP 7:

Maximum cycle time extension
> maximum communication delay
> (maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15)
> minimum I/O retention time

If you have configured different monitoring times in the CPUs and perform a link-up and update operation with master/standby changeover, the system always applies the higher of the two values.

Calculating the minimum I/O retention time (T_{PH})

The following applies to the calculation of the minimum I/O retention time:

- With central I/O: T_{PH} = 30 ms
- For distributed I/O (PROFIBUS DP): $T_{PH} = 3 \times T_{TRmax}$
  Where T_{TRmax} = maximum target rotation time
  of all DP master systems of the fault-tolerant station
- For distributed I/O (PROFINET IO): $T_{PH} = T_{wd\_max}$
  with T_{wd_max} = maximum cyclic interrupt time (product of WD factor and update time) of a switched device in all IO subsystems of the fault-tolerant station

When using central and distributed I/O, the resultant minimum I/O retention time is:

$T_{PH} = MAX (30 ms, 3 \times T_{TRmax}, T_{wd\_max})$

The following figure shows the correlation between the minimum I/O retention time and the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15.

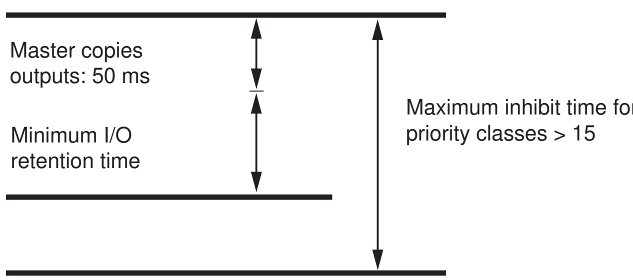


Figure 8-2 Correlation between the minimum I/O retention time and the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15

Note the following condition:

50 ms + minimum I/O retention time ≤
(maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15)

It follows that a high minimum I/O retention time can determine the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15.

Calculating the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15 (T_{P15})

The maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15 is determined by 4 main factors:

- As shown in Figure 12-2, all the contents of data blocks modified since last copied to the standby CPU are once again transferred to the standby CPU on completion of the update. **The number and structure of the DBs** you write to in the high-priority classes is a decisive factor in the duration of this operation, and thus in the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15. Relevant information is available in the remedies described below.
- In the final update phase, all OBs are either delayed or inhibited. To avoid any unnecessary extension of the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15 due to unfavorable programming, you should always process the time-critical I/O components in a **selected cyclic interrupt**. This is particularly relevant in fail-safe user programs. You can define this cyclic interrupt in your configuration. It is then executed again right after the start of the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15, provided you have assigned it a priority class > 15.

- In link-up and update operations with master/standby changeover (see section Link-up sequence (Page 325)), you also need to changeover the active communication channel on the switched DP slaves and switched IO devices on completion of the update. This operation prolongs the time within which valid values can neither be read nor output. How long this process takes is determined by your **hardware configuration**.
- The **technological conditions in your process** also decide how long an I/O update can be delayed. This is particularly important in time-monitored processes in fail-safe systems.

Note

For details, refer to Manual *S7-400F and S7-400FH Automation Systems* and Manual *S7-300 Automation Systems, Fail-safe Signal Modules*. This applies in particular to the internal execution times of fail-safe modules.

1. Based on the bus parameters in STEP 7, determine the following for each DP master system:
   - T_{TR} for the DP master system
   - DP changeover time (referred to below as T_{DP_UM})
2. From the STEP 7 configuration, determine the following for each IO subsystem:
   - Maximum update time of the IO subsystem (referred to below as T_{max_Akt})
   - PN changeover time (referred to below as T_{PN_UM})
3. Based on the technical data of the switched DP slaves, determine the following for each DP master system:
   - The maximum changeover time of the active communication channel (referred to below as T_{SLAVE_UM}).
4. Based on the technical specifications of the switched PN devices, determine the following for each IO subsystem:
   - Maximum changeover time of the active communication channel (referred to below as T_{Device_UM}).
5. Based on the technological specifications of your system, determine the following:
   - Maximum permissible time during which there is no update of your I/O modules (referred to below as T_{PTO}).
6. Based on your user program, determine the following:
   - Cycle time of the highest-priority or selected (see above) cyclic interrupt (T_{WA})
   - Execution time of your program in this cyclic interrupt (T_{PROG})
7. For each DP master system this results in:
   T_{P15} (DP master system) = $T_{PTO} - (2 \times T_{TR} + T_{WA} + T_{PROG} + T_{DP\_UM} + T_{SLAVE\_UM})$ [1]
8. For for each IO subsystem, this results in:
   T_{P15} (IO subsystem) = $T_{PTO} - (2 \times T_{max\_Akt} + T_{WA} + T_{PROG} + T_{PN\_UM} + T_{Device\_UM})$ [1]

Note

If T_{P15}(DP master system) < 0 or T_{P15}(IO subsystem) < 0, stop the calculation here. Possible remedies are shown below the following example calculation. Make appropriate changes and then restart the calculation at 1.

9. Select the minimum of all T_{P15} (DP master system, IO subsystem) values.
   This time is referred to below as TP15_HW.
10. Determine the share of the maximum inhibit time for I/O classes > 15 that is required by the minimum I/O retention time (T_{P15_OD}):
    T_{P15_OD} = 50 ms + min. I/O retention time [2]

    Note

    If $T_{P15\_OD} > T_{P15\_HW}$, stop the calculation here. Possible remedies are shown below the following example calculation. Make appropriate changes and then restart the calculation at 1.

    ---
11. Using the information in Chapter Performance values for link-up and update (Page 130), calculate the share of the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15 that is required by the user program (T_{P15_AWP}).

    Note

    If $T_{P15\_AWP} > T_{P15\_HW}$, stop the calculation here. Possible remedies are shown below the following example calculation. Make appropriate changes and then restart the calculation at 1.

    ---
12. The recommended value for the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15 is now obtained from:
    $T_{P15} = MAX(T_{P15\_AWP}, T_{P15\_OD})$ [3]

Example of the calculation of T_{P15}

In the next steps, we take an existing system configuration and define the maximum permitted time span of an update, during which the operating system does not execute any programs or I/O updates.

There are two DP master systems and one IO subsystem: DP master system_1 is connected via the DP interface of the CPU, and DP master system_2 is connected to the CPU via an external DP master interface. The IO subsystem is connected via the integrated Ethernet interface.

1. Based on the bus parameters in STEP 7:
   T_{TR_1} = 25 ms
   T_{TR_2} = 30 ms
   $T_{DP\_UM\_1}$ = 100 ms
   $T_{DP\_UM\_2}$ = 80 ms
2. Based on the configuration in STEP 7:
   T_{max_Akt} = 8 ms
   T_{PN_UM} = 110 ms
3. Based on the technical data of the DP slaves used:
   $T_{SLAVE\_UM\_1}$ = 30 ms
   $T_{SLAVE\_UM\_2}$ = 50 ms
4. Based on the technical specifications of the PN devices used:
   T_{Device_UM} = 20 ms
5. Based on the technological settings of your system:
   T_{PTO_1} = 1250 ms
   T_{PTO_2} = 1200 ms
   T_{PTO_PN} = 1000 ms

6. Based on the user program:
   T_{WA} = 300 ms
   T_{PROG} = 50 ms
7. Based on the formula [1]:
   T_{P15} (DP master system_1)
   = 1250 ms - (2 x 25 ms + 300 ms + 50 ms + 100 ms + 30 ms) = 720 ms
   T_{P15} (DP master system_2)
   = 1200 ms - (2 x 30 ms + 300 ms + 50 ms + 80 ms + 50 ms) = 660 ms
8. Based on the formula [1]:
   T_{P15} (IO subsystem)
   = 1200 ms - (2 x 8 ms + 300 ms + 50 ms + 110 ms + 20 ms) = 704 ms

Check: Since $T_{P15} > 0$, continue with

1. T_{P15_HW} = MIN (720 ms, 660 ms, 704 ms) = 660 ms
2. Based on the formula [2]:

T_{P15_OD} = 50 ms + T_{PH} = 50 ms + 90 ms = 140 ms

Check: Since T_{P15_OD} = 140 ms < T_{P15_HW} = 660 ms, continue with

1. Based on section Performance values for link-up and update (Page 130) with 170 KB of user program data:
   T_{P15_AWP} = 194 ms

Check: Since T_{P15_AWP} = 194 ms < T_{P15_HW} = 660 ms, continue with

1. Based on formula [3], we obtain the recommended max. inhibit time for priority classes > 15:

T_{P15} = MAX (194 ms, 140 ms)

T_{P15} = 194 ms

This means that by setting a maximum inhibit time of 194 ms for priority classes > 15 in STEP 7, you ensure that any signal changes during the update are detected with a signal duration of 1250 ms or 1200 ms.

Remedies if it is not possible to calculate T_{P15}

If no recommendation results from calculating the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15, you can remedy this by taking various measures:

- Reduce the cyclic interrupt cycle of the configured cyclic interrupt.
- If T_{TR} times are particularly high, distribute the slaves across several DP master systems.
- If possible, reduce the maximum update time of switched devices on the IO subsystem.
- Increase the baud rate on the affected DP master systems.
- Configure the DP/PA links and Y links in separate DP master systems.
- If there is a great difference in changeover times on the DP slaves, and thus (generally) great differences in T_{PTO}, distribute the slaves involved across several DP master systems.

- If you do not expect any significant load caused by interrupts or parameter assignments in the various DP master systems, you can also reduce the calculated T_{TR} times by around 20% to 30%. However, this increases the risk of a station failure in the distributed I/O.
- The time value T_{P15_AWP} represents a guideline and depends on your program structure. You can reduce it by taking the following measures, for example:
  - Save data that changes often in different DBs than data that does not change as often.
  - Specify a smaller DB sizes in the work memory.

If you reduce the time T_{P15_AWP} without taking the measures described, you run the risk that the update operation will be canceled due to a monitoring timeout.

Calculation of the maximum communication delay

Use the following formula:

Maximum communication delay =
4 x (maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15)

Decisive factors for determining this time are the process status and the communication load in your system. This can be understood as the absolute load or as the load relative to the size of your user program. You may have to adjust this time.

Calculation of the maximum cycle time extension

Use the following formula:

Maximum cycle time extension =
10 x (maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15)

Decisive factors for determining this time are the process status and the communication load in your system. This can be understood as the absolute load or as the load relative to the size of your user program. You may have to adjust this time.

8.3.3 Performance values for link-up and update

User program share T_{P15_AWP} of the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15

The user program share T_{P15_AWP} of the maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15 can be calculated using the following formula:

T_{P15_AWP} in ms = 0.7 x size of DBs in work memory in KB + 75

The table below shows the derived times for some typical values in work memory data.

Table 8-3 Typical values for the user program part

Work memory data	T_{P15_AWP}
500 KB	220 ms
1 MB	400 ms
2 MB	0.8 s
5 MB	1.8 s
10 MB	3.6 s

The following assumptions were made for this formula:

- 80% of the data blocks are modified prior to delaying the interrupts of priority classes > 15. In particular for fail-safe systems, this calculated value must be more precise to avoid any timeout of driver blocks (see section Determining the monitoring times (Page 124)).
- For active or queued communication functions, allowance is made for an update time of approximately 100 ms per MB in the work memory occupied by data blocks. Depending on the communication load of your automation system, you will need to add or deduct a value when you set T_{P15_AWP}.

8.3.4 Influences on time response

The period during which no I/O updates take place is primarily determined by the following influencing factors:

- The number and size of data blocks modified during the update
- The number of instances of SFBs in S7 communication and of SFBs for generating block-specific messages
- System modifications during operation
- Expansion of distributed I/Os with PROFIBUS DP (a lower baud rate and higher number of slaves increases the time it takes for I/O updates).
- Expansion of distributed I/Os with PROFINET IO (a higher update time and higher number of devices increases the time it takes for I/O updates).

In the worst case, this period is extended by the following amounts:

- Maximum cyclic interrupt used
- Duration of all cyclic interrupt OBs
- Duration of high-priority interrupt OBs executed until the start of interrupt delays

8.4 Special features in link-up and update operations

Requirement for input signals during the update

Any process signals read previously are retained and not included in the update. The CPU only recognizes changes of process signals during the update if the changed signal state remains after the update is completed.

The CPU does not detect pulses (signal transitions "0 → 1 → 0" or "1 → 0 →1") which are generated during the update.

You should therefore ensure that the interval between two signal transitions (pulse period) is always greater than the required update period.

Communication links and functions

Connections on the master CPU are not be shut down. However, associated communication jobs are not executed during updates. They are queued for execution as soon as one of the following cases occurs:

- The update is completed, and the system is in the redundant state.
- The update and master/standby changeover are completed, the system is in solo operation.
- The update was canceled (e.g., due to timeout), and the system has returned to solo operation.

An initial call of communication blocks is not possible during the update.

Memory reset request on cancelation of link-up

If the link-up operation is canceled while the content of load memory is being copied from the master to the standby CPU, the standby CPU requests a memory reset. This indicated in the diagnostics buffer by event ID W#16#6523.

Special functions of the CPU 410 9

9.1 Security functions of the CPU 410

Automation system protection

The CPU 410 has a range of functions with which you can protect your automation system.

- Signed firmware:
  The firmware of the CPU 410 has a signature to detect manipulations on the CPU itself. If firmware with errors in its signature is loaded, the CPU 410 rejects the firmware update.
- Protection level:
  A number of different protection levels regulate access to the CPU. See Security levels (Page 134)
- SysLogEvents:
  Security-related changes to the CPU can be sent to one or more SIEM systems as SysLogEvent; see Security event logging (Page 136)
- Field Interface Security:
  If an interface of the CPU is only used for connecting field devices, access for other devices at the interface can be prevented; see Field Interface Security (Page 138)
- Support of "Block Privacy":
  Blocks can be encrypted with a password using the STEP 7 "Block Privacy". The CPU 410 supports this function and can therefore process protected blocks; see Access-protected blocks (Page 139)

There are also additional products in the SIMATIC range for increasing the security of your automation system. For connection to the plant bus or third-party systems, for example, the CP443-1 Advanced can be used to protect communications connections in particular. With a combination of different security measures such as firewall, NAT/NAPT router and VPN (Virtual Private Network) over IPsec tunnel, the CP443-1 Advanced protects individual devices or entire automation cells from unauthorized access.

Reference

You can find additional information about Industrial Security in the introduction in Security information (Page 18).

9.2 Security levels

You can define a protection level for your project in order to prevent unauthorized access to the CPU programs. The objective of these protection level settings is to grant a user access to specific programming device functions which are not protected by password, and to allow that user to execute those functions on the CPU.

Setting protection levels

You can set the CPU protection levels 1 to 3 in HW Config.

The following table shows the protection levels of a CPU.

Table 9-1 Protection levels of a CPU

CPU function	Protection level 1	Protection level 2	Protection level 3
Display of list of blocks	Access granted	Access granted	Access granted
Monitor variables	Access granted	Access granted	Access granted
Module status STACKS	Access granted	Access granted	Access granted
Operator control and monitoring functions	Access granted	Access granted	Access granted
S7 communication	Access granted	Access granted	Access granted
Read time of day	Access granted	Access granted	Access granted
Set time of day	Access granted	Access granted	Access granted
Block status	Access granted	Access granted	Password required
Load in PG	Access granted	Access granted	Password required
Controlling selection	Access granted	Password required	Password required
Modify variable	Access granted	Password required	Password required
Breakpoint	Access granted	Password required	Password required
Clear breakpoint	Access granted	Password required	Password required
Stop a CPU or the system	Access granted *	Password required	Password required
Load in CPU	Access granted *	Password required	Password required
Delete blocks	Access granted *	Password required	Password required
Compress memory	Access granted *	Password required	Password required
Memory reset	Access granted *	Password required	Password required
Firmware update	Access granted *	Password required	Password required

* A password is required if the program has a safety program.

Note

Any set up access right is not canceled until you stop the SIMATIC Manager. You should reset the access right once again to prevent unauthorized access. You reset the access right in the SIMATIC Manager with the menu command PLC > Access Rights > Cancel.

Setting the protection level with SFC 109 "PROTECT"

You can set the following protection levels on your CPU with SFC 109:

- SFC 109 call with MODE=0: Setting the protection level 1. If the password legitimization is locked, the lock is canceled by calling SFC 109 with MODE=0.
- SFC 109 call with MODE=1: Setting of protection level 2 with password legitimization. This means you can cancel the write protection set with SFC 109 if you know the valid password. The SFC 109 call with MODE=1 overrides any existing lock of password legitimization.
- SFC 109 call with MODE=12: Setting of protection level 3 without password legitimization. This means you cannot cancel the write and read protection set with SFC 109 even if you know the valid password. If a legitimate connection exists when you call SFC-109 with MODE=12, the SFC-109 call has no effect on this connection.

Note

Setting a lower protection level

You can use SFC 109 "PROTECT" to set a lower protection level than the one you configured with HW Config.

NOTICE
Use SFC 109 only with existing protection level
Only use SFC 109 if you have configured protection levels in HW Config.

Additional aspects

- Both fault-tolerant CPUs of a fault-tolerant system can have different protection levels in STOP.
- The protection level is transferred from the master to the standby during link-up/update operations.
- The set protection levels of both fault-tolerant CPUs are retained if you make modifications to the plant during operation.
- The protection level is transferred to the target CPU in the following cases:
  - Switch to CPU with modified configuration
  - Switching to a CPU with modified PO limit
  - Switching to a CPU with modified operating system
  - Switching to a CPU using only one intact redundant link

9.3 Security event logging

Security events

The CPU 410 supports security events according to IEC 62443-3-3. The security events can be sent from the CPU in syslog frames to up to four external SIEM servers (Security Information and Event Management). If an external SIEM server can be accessed, the CPU 410 stores up to 3200 events in the work memory. If more than 3200 security events occur, the oldest events are overwritten.

You can store security events as a text file using Simatic Manager -> PLC -> Save Security Events.

Parameter description

The entries in the saved text file are structured as follows:

CEF parameter	Key name	Meaning
CEF	CEF	0
Manufacturer		Siemens AG
Device		e.g.: CPU 410-5H
Version		e.g.: V8.2.0
Event ID		Corresponds to Security Event ID (see below)
Event		Security Event (textual name of the signature ID)
Priority		1: Alarm (A) This situation requires immediate action. 3: Error (E) Correctable error in general. 5: Note (N) A situation has occurred that could require targeted action. 6: Information (I) Message during runtime
Protection level	protlevel	Set protection level 0 or 1 to 3, CPU-specific
Start time	start	Time stamp for occurrence of the event Format: MMM dd yyyy HH:mm:ss.SSS
Operating mode (optional)	opmod	Operating mode of the CPU (e.g. STOP)
Reason (optional)	reason	Byte-encoded origin of the event

CEF parameter	Key name	Meaning
Connection parameters (optional)		The following parameters are summarized under the term "Connection parameters": • Connection_id, Session ID • Protocol • Application protocol • Connection type • Gateway session ID • Source addresses – Source IP address – Source MAC address – SourcePort – Source tsap id – Source subnet id – Source Profibus address – Source C-bus rack number – Source C-bus slot number • Destination addresses – Destination IP address – Destination MAC address – Destination port – Destination tsap id – Destination subnet id – Destination Profibus address – Destination K bus rack number – Destination C-bus slot number
Status (optional)	status	Contains the number of overwritten unsent security events

Note

You can request the details of specific encodings from Customer Support.

Events

The following table provides an overview of the individual events.

Security event ID	Event	Security Event Severity meaning
3	SE_NETWORK_SUCCESSFUL_LOGON	Connection established with correct authentication
4	SE_NETWORK_UNSUCCESSFUL_LOGON	Error occurred during logon. Incorrect password or logon not currently possible (due to AaA)
5	SE_LOGOFF	Cancel logon
11	SE_ACCESS_PWD_ENSABLED	Password protection was set up

Security event ID	Event	Security Event Severity meaning
12	SE_ACCESS_PWD_DISABLED	Password protection was revoked
13	SE_ACCESS_PWD_CHANGED	Password has been changed.
20	SE_ACCESS_DENIED	A connection setup from the outside is rejected because Field Interface Security is activated for this interface
71	SE_SOFTWARE_INTEGRITY_CHECK_FAILED	An attempt was made to install invalid firmware.
75	SE_SESSION_CLOSED	Connection closed
94	SE_SECURITY_CONFIGURATION_CHANGED	The CPU security settings have been changed.
95	SE_SESSION_ESTABLISHED	Connection established
96	SE_CFG_DATA_CHANGED	A configuration change was made
97	SE_USER_PROGRAM_CHANGED	A PCS 7 user program change has been transferred
98	SE_OPMOD_CHANGED	Operating state changed
99	SE_FIRMWARE_LOADED	A firmware change has been downloaded.
100	SE_FIRMWARE_ACTIVATED	The previously downloaded firmware change has been activa- ted.
101	SE_SYSTEMTIME_CHANGED	The time of day has been reset.

Note

You can request the details of specific encodings from Customer Support.

Procedure

You can configure the sending of security events in HW Config as follows:

- Send Yes/No, common switch for all messages
- IP address of the SIEM server. You can specify two different IP addresses.
- The port number on the SIEM server
- You can assign a maximum of 4 IP addresses per station and assign all 4 IP addresses to one interface (X5, X8).

9.4 Field Interface Security

Activating additional protection at the DP or PNIO interface

If want to prevent access to the CPU over the DP or PNIO interface, you can block that access.

To achieve the greatest possible protection from unauthorized access, you can disable all functions that are not required for the actual automation task. For the IO interfaces (DP and PN), this means that all incoming connection requests are rejected.

You can prevent an incoming connection attempt for each interface with the setting "Activate additional protection at the interface (Field Interface Security)" in HW Config. This prevents any connections being established by external bus nodes. All requests are then rejected. The connections required for IO operation are still established from the CPU

Features of disable

- If you have set a disable for a specific interface, connections that have already been established passively over this interface will be terminated. This applies for all connection types.
- If an incoming connection is rejected because a disable is set, a security event (SysLog) is generated.
- A T_CONNECT for a passive connection (ISOonTCP or TCP) is canceled and an error output at a disabled interface.
- The receipt of UDP message frames (TURCV, both active and passive) is not possible at a blocked interface. TURCV is canceled and an error output.
- The disable applies irrespective of the CPU protective levels.
- For configured H connections with individual partial connections both over X5 and over X8, the partial connections are terminated.

9.5 Access-protected blocks

S7-Block Privacy

The STEP 7 add-on package S7-Block Privacy can be used to protect the functions and function blocks against unauthorized access.

Observe the following information when using S7-Block Privacy:

- S7-Block Privacy is operated by means of shortcut menus. To view a specific menu help, press the "F1" function key.
- You can no longer edit protected blocks in STEP 7. Moreover, testing and commissioning functions such as "Monitor blocks" or breakpoints are no longer available. Only the interfaces of the protected block remain visible.
- Protected blocks can only be released again for editing if you have the correct key and the corresponding decompilation information included in your package. Make sure that the key is always kept in a safe place.
- If your project contains sources, you can use these to restore the protected blocks by means of compilation. The S7-Block Privacy sources can be removed from the project.

Note

Memory requirements

Each protected block with decompilation information occupies 232 additional bytes in load memory.

Each protected block without decompilation information occupies 160 additional bytes in load memory.

Note

Extended runtimes

The startup time of the CPU at power on, the loading time of blocks and the startup after a system modification at runtime may be significantly prolonged.

To optimize additional time requirements, it is best practice to protect one large block instead of many small blocks.

Additional information

For additional information, refer to "S7 block privacy" in the STEP 7 Online Help.

9.6 Retentive load memory

Retentivity of the user program

The load memory is retentive starting from Version 8.2. All blocks are available again after Power On/Off even if you do not use a backup battery. With the CFC in SIMATIC PCS 7 V9.0 or higher, you can additionally back up all contents of data blocks from the work memory. The data blocks in the load memory are then overwritten with the current values from the work memory.

As a result, the user program is retained in the CPU after an unbuffered Power Off. Power failures are ridden through. The user program, the configuration and the parameters set in data blocks retain their state at the last backup.

Note

If you want to operate the CPU 410 without a backup battery, you must switch off the buffer monitoring on the power supply. Otherwise, the CPU remains in STOP when powering up after Power On and does not switch automatically to RUN.

Without a backup battery, the following data is not buffered:

- Diagnostic buffer
- Security event buffer
- Date and time
- Process image

- Data blocks that were not backed up to the load memory with CFC
- Data blocks created by the program (CREATE_DB instruction)
- Operating hours counter
- Bit memory
- Timers
- Counters

> **CAUTION**
>
> **Caution when replacing a CPU**
>
> If you reuse a CPU that has previously been used at a different location, ensure that the contents backed up in the load memory cannot pose a hazard at the new point of use.
>
> Reset the CPU to factory settings if its previous use is unknown.

Buffering with a battery

If you are using one or two backup batteries in the power supply module and the power supply module is switched off or the supply voltage in the CPU and configurable modules fails, the set parameters and the memory content (RAM) will be buffered via the backplane bus as long as there is still battery capacity.

9.7 Type update with interface change in RUN

Overview

The S7-410 automation system supports the type update with interface change in RUN.

Gives you the option to update the instances at block types after an interface change and download the update to the PLC in RUN.

You will find more detailed information on this topic in the *Process Control System PCS 7, CFC for SIMATIC S7* manual.

9.8 Resetting the CPU 410 to delivery condition (reset to factory setting)

CPU factory settings

A general memory reset is performed when you reset the CPU to its factory settings and the properties of the CPU are set to the following values:

Table 9-2 CPU properties in the factory settings

Properties	Value
Contents of the diagnostics buffer	Empty
IP parameters	None
SNMP parameters	Default values
Operating hours counter	0 without battery backup
Contents of the load memory	Empty

Procedure

Proceed as follows to reset a CPU to its factory settings:

1. Switch off the line voltage.
2. Switch on the line voltage while pressing and holding down the Reset button.
3. Wait until LED lamp image 1 from the subsequent overview is displayed. In this lamp pattern, INTF flashes at 0.5 Hz. EXTF, BUSxF, MAINT, IFMxF, RUN, and STOP remain unlit.
4. Wait until LED lamp image 2 from the subsequent overview is displayed. In this LED pattern, INTF is lit. EXTF, BUSxF, MAINT, IFMxF, RUN, and STOP remain unlit.
5. The CPU performs a memory reset and the STOP LED flashes at 2 Hz.

The CPU is now reset to its factory settings. It starts up and switches to STOP operating state or links up. The event "Reset to factory setting" is entered in the diagnostics buffer.

LED patterns during CPU reset

While you are resetting the CPU to its factory settings, the LEDs light up consecutively in the following LED patterns:

Table 9-3 LED patterns

LED	LED pattern 1	LED pattern 2
INTF	Flashes at 0.5 Hz	Lit
EXTF	Dark	Dark
BUSxF	Dark	Dark
MAINT	Dark	Dark
IFMxF	Dark	Dark
RUN	Dark	Dark
STOP	Dark	Dark

9.9 Reset during operation

CPU operating state

The following procedure references the RED or RUN RED operating state.

Note

If you perform a reset to prevent a malfunction of the CPU, you should read out the diagnostics buffer and the service data before the reset with the menu command "PLC -> Save service data".

Reset procedure during operation

Press and hold down the Reset button for 5 seconds. The CPU generates the current service data and writes the event W#16#4308 ("Memory reset started by switch operation") to the diagnostics buffer. The CPU then switches back to RUN.

Reset in stand-alone operation with restart

Note

During Power On with battery backup of a fault-tolerant system with large configurations, many CPs and/or external DP masters, it may take up to 30 seconds until a requested restart is executed. During this time, the LEDs on the CPU light up successively as follows:

1. All LEDs light up
2. The STOP LED flashes as it does during a memory reset
3. The RUN and STOP LEDs are flashing
4. The RUN LED flashes briefly 2 to 3 times
5. The STOP LED lights up
6. The RUN LED starts flashing again.
   This begins the start up.

9.10 Response to fault detection

Response to fault detection

In order to ensure a high level of reliability, in particular, of the fault tolerant system, the CPU 410 has many self diagnostics. Faults can thus be detected and eliminated at an early stage. In the rare instance that a fault occurs that cannot be eliminated by the firmware, the current service data is saved internally for further evaluation by SIEMENS specialists. An automatic reboot is then started. This behavior reduces the downtime of the CPU to a minimum. Access to the process is restored as soon as possible.

Automatic reboot in the event of a one-sided defect in the fault-tolerant system

The defective CPU performs the complete self-test. The other CPU remains in RUN. If a hardware fault is detected, the CPU switches to DEFECTIVE operating state. If no fault is detected, the CPU links up again. The H system switches back to the redundant system state.

You can use the "Save service data" function immediately afterwards to save the necessary data during operation.

9.11 Reading service data

Application case

If you need to contact Customer Support due to a service event, the department may require specific diagnostic information on the CPU status of your system. This information is stored in the diagnostic buffer and in the service data.

Select the "PLC -> Save service data" command to read this information and save the data to two files. You can then send these to Customer Support.

Note the following:

- If possible, read out the service data immediately after the CPU goes into STOP or immediately after the synchronization of a fault-tolerant system has been lost.
- Always read out the service data of both CPUs in a fault-tolerant system.

Procedure

1. Select the "PLC > Save service data" command.
   In the dialog box that opens up, select the file path and the file names.
2. Save the files.
3. Forward these files to Customer Support on request.

Note

Customer Support may also request a readout of the security events for diagnostic purposes in the service case. You can store the security events as a text file with:

>Simatic Manager - PLC - Save Security Events

See also Security event logging (Page 136)

9.12 Updating firmware in stand-alone operation

Basic procedure

To update the firmware of a CPU, you will receive several files (*.UPD) containing the current firmware. You download these files to the CPU. You can update the firmware in a single work step or you can first download it to the CPU and then activate it at a later time.

Requirement

The CPU whose firmware you want to update must be accessible online, e.g., via PROFIBUS or Industrial Ethernet. The files containing the current firmware versions must be downloaded into the programming device/PC file system. A folder may contain only the files of one firmware version. If the CPU is protected with a password, you need the respective password for the update.

Note any information posted in the firmware download area.

Note

Checking the firmware update files (*.UPD)

The CPU checks the firmware update files (*.UPD) during the update process. If an error is detected, the old firmware remains active and the new firmware is rejected.

For CPU access protection with password: in SIMATIC Manager, select a CPU of the fault-tolerant system, then select "PLC > Access Rights > Setup" from the menu. Enter the CPU access password.

Firmware update in two stages

The advantage of updating the firmware in two stages is that the automation system only switches to STOP during the actual activation of the new firmware. The firmware is loaded in RUN. This allows you to carry out the longer process of loading the firmware beforehand in RUN at a suitable time, and launch the quicker activation process later.

Proceed as follows to update the firmware of a CPU:

1. Open the station containing the CPU you want to update in HW Config.
2. Select the CPU.
3. Select the "PLC -> Update firmware" menu command.
4. In the "Update firmware" dialog, select the path to the firmware update files (*.UPD) using the "Browse" button.
   After you have selected a file, the information in the bottom boxes of the "Update firmware" dialog box will indicate the modules for which the file is suitable and as of which firmware version.
5. Select "Only load firmware".
   The firmware will be loaded to the CPU.

Proceed as follows to activate the loaded firmware at a later time:

1. Open the station containing the CPU you want to update in HW Config.
2. Select the CPU.
3. Select the "PLC -> Update firmware" menu command.
4. Select "Activate loaded firmware" and click "Execute".
5. Acknowledge the security prompt with "OK".
   The firmware update will run automatically.
6. Acknowledge the final message with "Yes".

The CPU is now in RUN again.

Firmware update in one stage

Proceed as follows to update the firmware of a CPU:

1. Open the station containing the CPU you want to update in HW Config.
2. Select the CPU.
3. Select the "PLC -> Update Firmware" menu command.
4. In the "Update Firmware" dialog, select the path to the firmware update files (*.UPD) using the "Browse" button.
   After you have selected a file, the information in the bottom boxes of the "Update Firmware" dialog box indicate the modules for which the file is suitable and from which firmware version.
5. Select "Load and activate firmware" and click "Execute".
6. Acknowledge the security prompt with "OK".
   The firmware update will run automatically.
7. Acknowledge the final message with "Yes".

The CPU is now in RUN again.

Values retained after a firmware update

The following values are retained after a firmware update:

- IP address of the CPU
- Device name (NameOfStation)
- Subnet mask
- Static SNMP parameters
- Contents of the load memory

9.13 Updating firmware in redundant mode

Requirement

You are operating the CPU 410 in a fault-tolerant system. Both Sync links exist and are working. There are no redundancy losses. The REDF LED is not lit and both CPUs are in redundant mode.

Note any information posted in the firmware download area.

Note

Checking the firmware update files (*.UPD)

The CPU checks the firmware update files (*.UPD) during the update process. If an error is detected, the old firmware remains active and the new firmware is rejected.

For CPU access protection with password: in SIMATIC Manager, select a CPU of the fault-tolerant system, then select "PLC > Access Rights > Setup" from the menu. Enter the CPU access password.

Note

Redundancy error

There must not be a redundancy error, e.g. a faulty IM153-2, because the update may otherwise lead to station failures.

Firmware update in two stages

The advantage of updating the firmware in two stages is that the fault-tolerant system only operates in solo mode during the actual activation of the new firmware. The firmware is loaded in redundant mode. This allows you to carry out the longer process of loading the firmware beforehand in redundant mode at a suitable time, and launch the quicker activation process later.

Proceed as follows to update the firmware of the CPUs of a fault-tolerant system in RUN:

1. Open the station containing the CPU you want to update in HW Config.
2. Select the CPU.
3. Select the "PLC -> Update firmware" menu command.
4. In the "Update firmware" dialog, select the path to the firmware update files (*.UPD) using the "Browse" button.
   After you have selected a file, the information in the bottom boxes of the "Update firmware" dialog box will indicate the modules for which the file is suitable and as of which firmware version.
5. Select "Only load firmware" and click "Execute".
   The firmware will be loaded to both CPUs. Both CPUs remain in redundant mode. Loading can take several minutes.

Proceed as follows to activate the loaded firmware at a later time:

1. Open the station containing the CPU you want to update in HW Config.
2. Select the CPU.
3. Select the "PLC -> Update firmware" menu command.
4. Make sure that the same firmware version as the loaded firmware has been loaded to both CPUs.
   The version of the loaded firmware is displayed in the "Update firmware" dialog.
5. Select "Activate loaded firmware" and click "Execute".
   The CPU in rack 1 is switched to STOP
   The new firmware is activated in the CPU in rack 1
6. Click "Continue".
   The system switches to the CPU with the new firmware.
   The new firmware is activated in the CPU in rack 0.
   The CPU in rack 0 is started.
   The CPU in rack 0 is linked up and updated.

Both CPUs have updated firmware (operating system) and are in the redundant operating state.

Firmware update in one stage

Proceed as follows to update the firmware of the CPUs of a fault-tolerant system in RUN:

1. For CPU access protection with password: Select a CPU of the fault-tolerant system in SIMATIC Manager and select menu command
   PLC > Access Authorization > Setup. Enter the CPU access password.
2. Select the CPU.
3. Open the station containing the CPU you want to update in HW Config.
4. Select the "PLC -> Update firmware" menu command.
5. In the "Update Firmware" dialog, select the path to the firmware update files (*.UPD) using the "Browse" button.
   After you have selected a file, the information in the bottom boxes of the "Update Firmware" dialog box indicates the modules for which the file is suitable and as of which firmware version.
6. Select "Load and activate firmware".
7. Click "Execute".
   The CPU in rack 1 is switched to STOP.
   The new firmware is loaded to and activated in the CPU in rack 1.
8. Click "Continue".
   The system switches to the CPU with the new firmware.
   The new firmware is loaded to and activated in the CPU in rack 0.
   The CPU in rack 0 is started.
   The CPU in rack 0 is linked up and updated.

Both CPUs have updated firmware (operating system) and are in redundant operating state.

Note

Only the third number of the firmware versions of the master and standby CPU may differ by 1. You can only update to the newer version.

The constraints described in Chapter System and operating states of the CPU 410 (Page 101) also apply to a firmware update in RUN.

Any set up access right is not canceled until you stop the SIMATIC Manager. You should reset the access right once again to prevent unauthorized access. You reset the access right in the SIMATIC Manager with the menu command PLC > Access Rights > Cancel.

Values retained after a firmware update

The following values are retained after a firmware update:

- IP address of the CPU
- Device name (NameOfStation)
- Subnet mask
- Static SNMP parameters
- Contents of the load memory

10 Time synchronization and time stamping

Definition of time synchronization

Time synchronization refers to the process in which various S7 stations receive or retrieve their local time from a central time source (central time transmitter/time server).

Time-of-day synchronization is required when the time sequence of events from different stations is to be evaluated.

Interfaces

Time-of-day synchronization is possible across all interfaces of the CPU 410:

- PROFINET IO interface via Industrial Ethernet
  Time-of-day synchronization using the NTP method; the CPU is the client.
  Time-of-day synchronization using the SIMATIC method as master or slave. The PTCP master is also possible for synchronization of IO devices of type ET 200SP HA.
- Within the station (in the AS) using the S7-400 backplane bus
  You can configure the CPU as a time master or a time slave.
- PROFIBUS DP interface
  You can configure the CPU as a time master or a time slave.

Time-of-day synchronization via the PROFINET IO interface

With the PROFINET IO interface, time-of-day synchronization is possible using the NTP method and the SIMATIC method. The CPU 410 is the client in this case.

You can configure up to four NTP servers. You can set an update interval of between 10 seconds and 1 day. An NTP request of the CPU 410 always occurs every 90 minutes for times greater than 90 minutes.

If you synchronize the CPU 410 in the NTP method, you should use SICLOCK or an NTP server on the OS.

Time-of-day synchronization is also possible via Ethernet MMS (Simatic method on Ethernet) as master or slave. NTP can in this case be combined with the SIMATIC method.

CPU 410 as time slave

If the CPU 410 is a time slave on the S7-400 backplane bus, synchronization is via the CP with a clock connected to the LAN.

You can use a CP to forward the time to the S7-400 station. If the CP supports a direction filter, the CP must be configured for time forwarding with the "from LAN to station" option.

CPU 410 as time master

If you configure the CPU 410 as the time master, you must specify a synchronization interval. You can select any interval between 1 s and 24 h.

Select a synchronization interval of 10 s if the CPU 410 is the time master on the S7-400 backplane bus.

The time master does not send time frames until you have set the time. You can set the time as a time slave (NTP client/slave) with Step 7 or an interface.

Definition of time stamping

Time stamping refers to the assignment of an event to its acquisition time. The more precise this assignment is, the more precisely the acquisition time corresponds to the event.

For time stamping, the IO controller/DP master sends its time of day to the local IO subsystem/DP line.

The IO device/DP slave receives this time of day and uses the time information for time stamping.

This time stamping is referred to as "high-precision time stamping" in the context of SIMATIC PCS 7.

Example:

In the ET 200SP HA, signal changes can be acquired and time stamped with a precision of 1 ms.

Relationship between time synchronization and time stamping

To examine the chronological relationship between time stamped events from different S7 stations, the S7 stations must be time synchronized.

The synchronism among the individual systems is dependent on the selected time synchronization method, the topology and the utilized interface in the S7 station.

Precision

The precision of the time stamping is the maximum difference of the time stamps that result from signals that were recorded simultaneously by digital input modules.

The precision depends on the hardware used and the configuration of the plant.

Resolution

The resolution is the smallest possible time difference between two different time stamps.

Additional information

You can find additional information about time-of-day synchronization and time stamping with SIMATIC PCS 7 in the following manuals:

- High-precision Time Stamping with ET 200SP HA
- High-precision Time Stamping (V9.0)
- Time-of-day Synchronization (V9.0)

Plant changes in RUN - CiR 11

11.1 Motivation for CiR via PROFINET IO

There are systems that may not be shut down during operation. This may be the case, for example, due to the complexity of the automated process or the high costs associated with restarting the system. However, a removal or rebuild may still be required.

Using CiR to make plant changes in RUN, certain configuration changes can be performed in RUN. This interrupts processing for a maximum of 60 ms.

Note

The term "CiR" stands for "Configuration in RUN". The process for plant changes in RUN described in this documentation is used. The requirements listed below must be met in this case.

Hardware requirements for PROFINET IO

The following hardware and firmware requirements must be met for plant changes in RUN using CiR:

- Use of a CPU 410 in stand-alone operation, firmware version V8.2 or higher
- IO devices to which individual I/O modules are to be added or from which individual I/O modules are to be removed must have CiR capability.
- Complete IO devices can be added or removed even if they do not have CiR capability.
- If you want to add I/O modules to an ET 200SP HA:
  Use of the IM 155-6 HA requires free slots for I/O modules in the IO device.
  Configure ET 200SP HA with slot covers for standby modules. You replace the slot covers when you install I/O modules later.

Note

CiR-capable devices are marked in color in HW Config.

The following also applies to the IO controller:

- Your IO controller has CiR capability.
- If you are using different IO devices, the IO device on which you want to make configuration changes must support plant changes during operation.

Configuration requirements for PROFINET IO

You need to select saving the data on the CPU for all components within the station for which you can choose whether the configuration data is saved on the module itself or on the CPU.

Software requirements

To make a configuration change in RUN, the user program must meet the following requirement: It must be written so that station failures or module faults, for example, do not result in a CPU STOP.

The following OBs must be available in your CPU:

- Hardware interrupt OBs (OB 40 to OB 47)
- Cycle time error OB (OB 80)
- Diagnostic interrupt OB (OB 82)
- Pull/plug module interrupt OB (OB 83)
- Priority class error OB (OB 85)
- Rack failure OB (OB 86)
- I/O access error OB (OB 122)

Note

These requirements are always met with SIMATIC PCS 7.

11.2 Permitted changes over PROFINET IO

Permitted configuration changes for PROFINET IO

The process introduced here supports the following changes to your AS:

- Adding and removing an IO device.
  The IO device does not need CiR capability for this step.
  The station address in the PROFINET IO subsystem of an IO device that is removed in a CiR operation must not be added back again in the same CiR operation.
  Station addresses that are removed in a CiR operation may not be added again in the same CiR operation.
- Adding and removing I/O modules in the IO device.
  The device in question must have CiR capability for this step.
  An I/O module that is removed with CiR must not be replaced with a different I/O module in the same CiR step.
  However, it is possible to remove I/O modules in a CiR operation and to add I/O modules at a different location.
  Addresses must not be changed in a CiR operation.
  Addresses that are removed in a CiR operation may not be added again in the same CiR operation.
- Changing parameters of the I/O modules.
  The device in question must have CiR capability for this step.
- Changing properties of the ports (PEDV), e.g. topology, monitoring, etc.
  You cannot reconfigure the local PDEV submodules of the IO controller.

- Changing the update time
  The IO device must have CiR capability.
- Changing process image partition assignment

Configuration changes in RUN are permitted for the interface module added in HW Config (in HW Config: Properties of the interface module > "General" tab > "Short description" area > "Configuration changes in RUN" entry

Rules for configuration changes

- You need at least two downloads to the CPU to replace an I/O module with an I/O module of a different type for a configuration that already exists in the CPU:
  - 1st CiR operation: The CPU receives the configuration that no longer contains the I/O modules to be removed.
  - 2nd CiR operation: The CPU receives the configuration with the newly added I/O modules.

Restriction

All changes that are not explicitly permitted above as part of plant changes in RUN, are not permitted during operation and are not explained in more detail here.

Recommendations plant changes during operation using CiR

- Create a backup copy of your current plant configuration after every modification of the configuration. Further processing of the project without loss of CiR capability is only possible with this backup version.
- If possible, change the configuration in multiple steps and make only a few changes in each step. In this way, you can keep track of the changes.

11.3 Procedure for PROFINET IO

11.3.1 Overview

Requirement

You need to load the hardware configuration from HW Config to the module in STOP

Note

You do not have to define CiR elements in PROFINET IO subsystems.

Procedure

The following basic operating steps are available in RUN mode:

- Add or remove IO devices or I/O modules
  IO devices and I/O modules can be added and removed in the same step.
- Rebuild hardware when adding an IO device
- Change process image partition assignment
- Re-configure existing modules or I/O modules
- Undo previously made changes (Undo functionality)

Note

IO devices that are to be added or removed do not have to be CiR-capable.

Note that the neighborhood relation on the ports may not be change in RUN for non-CiR-capable devices. In the properties of the device ports, a partner port may only be entered for "Topology" if it is ensured that nothing will change from this relationship. Otherwise, you should select the "Any partner" setting. Only then can you remove the neighbor in a CiR operation and add a new neighbor in another CiR operation.

All other plant changes mentioned below require a CiR-capable IO device connected to the PROFINET IO system.

Back up your current configuration after each download of the station configuration from HW Config (regardless of the operating state of the CPU). This is the only way for you to ensure that you can continue working with the backed up project in case of an error (loss of data) without loss of the CiR capability.

Note

SFB 52; 53 and 81

If SFB 52, SFB 53 or SFB 81 is called during a CiR operation on the line, the call is acknowledged with error code 0x80C3.

Different update times

Please note the following if you have set "automatic" for the update time for an IO device without CiR capability:

If you have set "automatic" for the update time and the CPU outputs a consistency error during the CiR consistency check because the update time has changed for a non-CiR-capable IO device, you can check the original project to see update time was achieved and configure that time as the fixed update time for that IO device.

On a CiR-capable IO device on which CiR is run, the update time after that CiR operation must be at least 1 ms. This is checked by the CPU.

11.3.2 Add IO devices or I/O modules

Procedure

Adding IO devices or I/O modules in RUN mode includes the following operating steps:

1. Expand and download the configuration with HW Config.
2. Rebuild the hardware.
3. Expand, test and download the user program.

You must adhere to this order of steps.

Rules for PROFINET IO

Within a PROFINET IO subsystem, you must assign an NoS (Name of Station) to an added IO device.
You must set the NoS locally on the interface module of the IO device.
Recommendation:
Prior to local installation, configure the NoS of the interface modules in a separate network.

The NoS is enough for the IO controller that is to address the device. However, you must make check that the IO device does not have an IPv4 address that is already assigned in the system.

11.3.3 Rebuild hardware when adding an IO device

Procedure

If you are planning to add an IO device using CiR and the device does not support PROFINET LLDP mode V2.3, check in HW Config to see which LLDP mode is set in the IO controller. You cannot add the IO device using CiR if the option PROFINET LLDP mode V2.3 is set.

When adding an IO device to a PROFINET subsystem, make sure that no bus cables are disconnected that could lead to device failure.

You can do this as follows:

- Install additional ports at the future installation sites in the PROFINET subsystem to be expanded. Connect the new IO device to these ports if necessary.
- If permitted by the plant configuration, you can integrate switches in the PROFINET subsystem. In this case, follow these steps when adding an IO device:
  Connect the new IO device to previously unused ports of a switch. In doing so, observe the applicable installation guidelines (see *Installation manual: Automation System S7-400 Configuration and Use)*.

11.3.4 Change process image partition assignment

Procedure

You change the assignment of the process image partition of an existing module or a compact slave as follows:

1. Specify the new process image partition in the "Addresses" tab of the Properties window of the module or slave.
2. Download the changed configuration with HW Config.

11.3.5 Re-configuring existing I/O modules in IO devices

Procedure

The procedure for using previously unused channels is described in the section Using a Previously Unused Channel (Page 163).

The procedure for re-configuration of previously used channels of I/O modules is described in the sections on re-configuration of a previously used channel or for removing a previously used channel.

See also

Reconfiguring an already used channel. (Page 163)

Delete an already used channel. (Page 165)

11.3.6 Replacing IO devices or I/O modules

Procedure (replacing)

The replacement of an IO device with another IO device or an I/O module with another I/O module is only possible in two separate CiR operations:

1. Remove IO device/module from the configuration and download the configuration
2. Add new IO device/module to the configuration and download the configuration

11.4 Re-configuring I/O modules and ports in IO devices

11.4.1 Requirements for Reconfiguration

Note

You can use previously unused channels as well as re-configure previously used channels.

You must not change the addresses of existing I/O modules using CiR.

Requirement for configuration

I/O modules and ports can only be re-configured if the relevant device is CiR-capable. If the neighboring device is involved, this device must also be CiR-capable.

Hardware requirements

The I/O modules that can be re-configured in CPU RUN are listed in the info text in the "Catalog" window.

11.4.2 I/O module response to re-configuration

Principle

The following three responses are possible during re-configuration of input modules:

- The channels that are not involved still provide the current process value.
- The channels that are not involved provide the last process value that was valid before the parameter assignment.
- All channels return the value "0" (DI or DO I/O modules) or W#16#7FFF (AI or AO I/O modules).

Please refer to the technical specifications of the individual I/O modules for their responses.

Output modules behave as follows during re-configuration:

The channels that are not involved output the last output value that was valid before the parameter assignment.

11.4.3 CPU response during reconfiguration

Re-configuration sequence

Once you have made the parameter changes in HW Config and have downloaded them to the CPU in RUN mode, the CPU runs the tests described in "Behavior of the CPU after download of the configuration in RUN" and the status of the input and output values changes to "BAD". This indicates that as of now the input or output data of the I/O modules in question may no longer be correct. You may no longer call any functions that trigger jobs for sending data records to the I/O modules involved, otherwise a conflict could occur between the data records sent by the system and those sent by the user.

You may only access those values in the process image that belong to the process image partition of the currently processed OB.

After transmission of the data records, the IO controller marks the I/O modules in the module status data as follows:

- When the transmission was successful, as available.
- When the transmission was not successful, as unavailable.
  An I/O access error occurs when the I/O module is accessed:
  - During the update of the input process image, during transmission of the output process image to the I/O module, or during direct access to the module. Depending on the type of access, OB 85 or OB 122 is started.
  - The input or output data of the I/O modules behaves in the same way as after a remove module interrupt, which means it may not yet be correct (because the I/O module may not yet have evaluated its data records).
    However, the restriction that data record functions for the I/O modules can no longer be active no longer applies.

Note

If the re-configuration of an I/O module involves disabling the diagnostic interrupt, for example, the I/O module may still subsequently send an interrupt that it has already prepared.

Re-configuring a port (PDEV submodule)

Ports are re-configured in the same way to I/O modules.

Possible fault scenarios during re-configuring

The following error scenarios are possible:

- The I/O module receives the parameter data records but cannot evaluate them.
- Serious errors, in particular protocol errors, may cause the IO controller to completely suspend the associated IO device, causing all I/O modules of this station to fail.

Dependency of re-configuration on CPU operating states

Re-configuration takes place after SDB evaluation (see Behavior of the CPU after download of the configuration in RUN) in RUN mode. The INTF-LED is on during re-configuration.

The re-configuration process is interrupted during transition to the HOLD operating state. The process is continued when the CPU changes to STOP or RUN. In STOP only the calls of OB83 are stopped.

Re-configuration is aborted if there is a power failure. Once power is restored, all existing IO devices are re-configured.

OB calls in re-configuration

Once the CPU has run the tests described in "Behavior of the CPU after download of the configuration in RUN", it starts OB 83 with the event W#16#335A. This means that as of now the input or output data of the I/O modules in question may no longer be correct. You may no longer call any SFCs that trigger new jobs for sending data records to the I/O modules involved, otherwise a conflict could occur between the data records sent by the system and those sent by the user.

Once the CPU has completed OB 83, it sends the parameter data records with each I/O module involved receiving the total number of data records (regardless of how many data records are affected by your change).

Another OB 83 start follows (start event W#16#325A if sending was successful or W#16#395B if it was not). No other priority class is interrupted by this processing of OB 83.

11.4.4 Reconfiguration Procedure

11.4.4.1 Using a Previously Unused Channel

Procedure

1. Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
2. Save your project.
3. Make the change to the wiring.
4. Change the user program and download it to the CPU.

11.4.4.2 Reconfiguring an already used channel.

Introduction

The procedure depends on whether or not changes to the user program and the associated hardware are necessary due to the re-configuration. The individual cases are described below.

Procedure without change

The user program need not be changed as a result of re-configuration. This is the case, for example, when you change an alarm limit or when you disable the diagnostic interrupt.

- Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.

Procedure for changing the user program

The user program need not be changed as a result of the re-configuration. This is the case, for example, when you change the measuring range for a channel of an analog input module and when you compare the associated analog value with a constant in your program. The constant must be adapted in this case.

1. Set the values of the channel being re-configured to simulation (in the associated driver).
2. Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
3. Save your project.
4. If necessary, adapt the user program to the changed channel and download it to the CPU. Cancel the simulation for the re-configured channel (in the corresponding driver).

Procedure for changing the user program and the hardware

The user program and the hardware must be changed as a result of the re-configuration. This is the case, for example, when you re-configure an input channel from "0 to 20 mA" to "0 to 10 V".

1. Set the values of the channel being re-configured to simulation (in the associated driver).
2. Change the associated hardware.
3. Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
4. Save your project.
5. If necessary, adapt the user program to the changed channel and download it to the CPU. Cancel the simulation for the re-configured channel (in the corresponding driver).

Procedure for changing the address area of a HART I/O module

This is the case, for example, when you use IEEE values of a HART I/O module.

Follow these steps:

1. Set the values of the module being re-configured to simulation (in the associated driver).
2. Delete the module in the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
3. Insert the module once again and configure it for your configuration as needed.
4. Download the hardware configuration to the CPU.
5. Save your project.
6. If necessary, adapt the user program to the changed module and download it to the CPU.
7. Cancel the simulation for the re-configured module (at the associated driver).

11.4.4.3 Delete an already used channel.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to remove a channel that has not been used:

1. Change the application in such a way that the channel to be removed is not evaluated anymore and upload it to the CPU.
2. Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
3. Save your project.
4. Change the corresponding hardware (remove sensor or actuator, etc.).

11.4.4.4 Delete an already used channel.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to remove a channel that has not been used:

1. Change the user program so that the channel to be removed is no longer evaluated, and download it to the CPU.
2. Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
3. Save your project.
4. Change the corresponding hardware (remove sensor or actuator, etc.).

11.4.4.5 Change the update time

Procedure

You can change the update time of a CiR-capable device in RUN. To do so, change the update time in HW Config and load the new configuration to the CPU.

You cannot change the send clock in RUN.

11.5 Motivation for CiR on PROFIBUS DP

There are plants that must not be shut down during operation. This may be the case, for example, due to the complexity of the automated process or due to high restart costs. Nevertheless, it may be necessary to expand or modify a configuration.

Using CiR to make plant changes in RUN, certain configuration changes can be performed in RUN. In so doing, processing is stopped for a brief time interval. The upper limit of this time interval is 60 ms. Process inputs retain their last value during this time.

Note

The term "CiR" stands for "Configuration in RUN". The process for plant changes in RUN is used for the description in this documentation. The requirements listed below must be met in this case.

Hardware requirements for PROFIBUS DP

The following hardware and firmware requirements must be met for plant changes in RUN using CiR:

- If you want to make plant changes in RUN to a DP master system with external DP master (CP 443-5 extended), the external DP master must have at least firmware version V5.0.
- If you want to add modules to ET 200M: Use of the IM 153-2 as of MLFB 6ES7153-2BA00-0XB0 or of the IM 153-2FO as of MLFB 6ES7153-2BB00-0XB0. You must also configure the ET 200M with active bus elements and sufficient free space for the planned expansion. You may not integrate the ET 200M as DPV0 slave (with a GSD file).
- If you want to add additional electronic modules to the ET 200iSP: Configure the ET 200iSP with standby modules. You replace the standby modules when you install electronic modules later.
- If you want to add entire stations: Stock the corresponding bus connectors, repeaters, etc.
- If you want to add PA slaves (field devices): Use of the IM 157 as of MLFB 6ES7157-0AA82-0XA00 in the associated DP/PA link.
- Use of the CR2 rack is not permitted.

11.6 Permitted changes over PROFIBUS DP

Permitted configuration changes: Overview

The method presented here supports the following modifications in your automation system:

- Addition of modules for a modular DP slave, provided you have not integrated it as a DPV0 slave (via a GSD file).
- Reassignment of module parameters, e.g. selection of different alarm limits or use of previously unused channels
- Replacement of standby modules with future electronic modules of the ET 200iSP
- Reassignment of parameters of ET 200iSP modules
- Addition of DP slaves to an existing DP master system
- Addition of PA slaves (field devices) to an existing PA master system
- Addition of DP/PA couplers downstream of an IM 157

- Addition of DP/PA links (including PA master systems) to an existing DP master system
- Assignment of added modules to a process image partition
- Modification of the process image partition assignment for existing modules or compact slaves
- Reassignment of parameters of existing modules in DP stations (standard modules and fail-safe signal modules in standard operation)
- Undoing of modifications (undo functionality): added modules, DP slaves and PA slaves (field devices) can be removed again

Note

If want to add or remove slaves or modules or modify the existing process image partition assignment, this is possible on a maximum of four DP master systems.

All modifications that are not expressly permitted above are not permitted as part of a plant change during operation and are not further discussed here. These include, for example,

- Change of CPU-properties.
- Change of properties of centrally inserted I/O modules.
- Change of properties of existing DP master systems including bus parameters.
- Change of the following parameters of a DP slave: bus address, assignment of DP master, parameter assignment data, diagnostic address.
- Reassignment of parameters of fail-safe signal modules in safety operation.
- Addition and removal of DP master systems.
- Removal of any modules from modular DP slaves, see undoing of previously made changes.
- Removal of any DP slaves from an existing DP master system, see undoing of previously made changes.

Recommendations for plant changes in RUN using CiR

Some tips are given below for Configuration in RUN.

- Create a backup copy of your current plant configuration after each configuration change. Further processing of the project without loss of CiR capability is only possible with this backup version.
- If possible, change the configuration in multiple steps and make only a few changes in each step. This approach will help you to keep things under control.

11.7 CiR objects and CiR modules for PROFINET DP

11.7.1 Basic Requirements

Overview

A system modification during RUN via CiR is based on the provisions you have made in your initial configuration for an expansion of your PLC hardware. Define suitable CiR-compatible elements that you can later replace step-by-step in RUN mode with real objects (slaves and/or modules). You can then download such a modified configuration to the CPU during runtime.

Procedure

The table below shows the procedures required for modification of the program and of the configuration, as well as the corresponding system phase.

Step	Action	CPU mode	System status
1	Configuration of your current (real) system configuration	STOP	Offline configuration
2	Defining CiR Elements	STOP	Offline configuration
3	Configuration download	STOP	Commissioning
4	System modifications are only possible on master systems which contain a CiR object or on ET 200M stations which are equipped with a CiR module.	RUN	Continuous operation

If required, execute several passes of the CiR sequence (step 4 of the table above). You merely have to provide a sufficient number of slaves or adequate I/O volume for all of your system expansions before you switch to continuous operation.

11.7.2 Types of CiR Elements

Overview

The following CiR elements are available:

Component	CiR Element
existing DP master system	CiR object You can edit the number of additional DP slaves this object contains.
existing PA master system	CiR object You can edit the number of additional DP slaves this object contains.
modular DP slave of the type ET 200M / ER 200iSP	CiR module You can edit the additional I/O volume this object contains.

Note

When STEP 7 identifies the bus parameters, it takes the configured slaves as well as the CiR elements into account. When it converts CiR elements to real slaves and /or modules in CPU RUN mode, the bus parameter will therefore remain unchanged.

You can add CiR elements either automatically or individually.

CiR Objects

Specify the following properties for a CiR object:

- The number of slaves that can definitely be added (Default: 15 per DP master system, 6 per PA master system)
- Volume of the I/O bytes for future use (Default: 1220 per DP master system, 80 per PA master system). These specifications refer to future user data addresses. You can configure diagnostics addresses regardless of these settings.

CiR Modules

Use a CiR module to define additional I/O volume for the modular ET200M /ET200iSP distributed I/O device by specifying the number of additional I/O bytes in SUM. These specifications refer to future user data addresses. You can configure diagnostics addresses regardless of these settings.

There is never any need to fully utilize user data volume. However, the currently existing user data volume may never be exceeded. STEP 7 ensures this.

See also

Defining CiR Elements (Page 172)

11.7.3 CiR Elements and I/O Address Areas

CiR Objects

The following rule applies to the DP master system: The total configured number of real slaves and of the guaranteed number of slaves of a CiR object may not exceed the volume of dynamic project data in the corresponding DP master.

HW Config monitors compliance with this rule when you define the CiR objects.

I/O Volume for Future Use with CiR Objects and CiR Modules

For all DP masters, the following rules apply to future utilization of the I/O bytes:

I/O	Rule 1
Inputs	The total number of physical configured user addresses for inputs and for the input bytes that can be utilized in the future may not exceed the volume of dynamic project data in the corresponding DP master.
Outputs	The total number of physical configured user addresses for outputs and for the output bytes that can be utilized in the future may not exceed the volume of dynamic project data in the corresponding DP master.

HW Config monitors compliance with these rules immediately when you define CiR elements for a DP master system.

In order to provide an optimal flexibility for the use of CiR elements, however, the following applies to the CPU:

I/O	Rule 2
Inputs	The total number of physical configured inputs and of input bytes that can be utilized in the future may not exceed the volume of dynamic project data in the CPU.
Outputs	The total number of physical configured inputs and of input bytes that can be utilized in the future may not exceed the volume of dynamic project data in the CPU.

HW Config performs a check to verify that the CPU is equipped with sufficient address space resources for handling the number of added slaves and/or modules only after the CiR elements have been put into use.

11.8 Procedure for PROFIBUS DP

11.8.1 Basic Procedures in STOP Mode

11.8.1.1 Overview

Note

Back up your current configuration after each download of the station configuration from HW Config (regardless of the operating state of the CPU). This is the only way for you to ensure that you can continue working with the backed up project in case of an error (loss of data) without loss of the CiR capability.

Overview

The following basic operating steps are available in STOP state:

- Defining CiR elements
- Deleting CiR elements
- Editing CiR elements
- Downloading the configuration

Defining CiR elements

You can define CiR objects for previously configured DP and PA master systems and CiR modules for modular DP slaves of type ET 200M / ET 200iSP. For the exact procedure, see Defining CiR elements.

The "Activate CiR capability" function is additionally available for DP master systems. If you select this function, a CiR object is created on the selected DP master system and on each CiR-capable lower-level PA master system. A CiR module is inserted on each CiR-capable modular slave of type ET 200M / ET 200iSP on the selected DP master system.

Note

The "Activate CiR capability" function is only possible on DP master systems on which a CiR object is not yet defined.

Deleting CiR elements

In STOP operating state, you can delete CiR objects on DP and PA master systems or CiR modules on modular DP slaves of type ET 200M / ET 200iSP that you have defined previously.

If you want to delete all CiR elements in a DP master system, you can easily do this using the "Deactivate CiR capability" function.

Note

The "Deactivate CiR capability" function is only possible for DP master systems on which a CiR object is defined.

Downloading the configuration

After defining new CiR elements or redefining existing CiR elements, you download the configuration with the CPU in STOP operating state.

A large number of modules can be used in the S7-410 automation system. To ensure that none of the modules you are using will prevent a future CiR action, you must adhere to the following procedure: Once you have downloaded the configuration in STOP operating state of the CPU, immediately download it again to the CPU, but this time with the CPU in RUN operating state. When this is done, STEP 7 and the CPU will check the CiR capability. With older modules or modules from third-party manufacturers, this is not yet possible offline.

11.8.1.2 Defining CiR Elements

Adding CiR elements automatically

Note

The automatic addition of CiR elements is only possible if a CiR object is not yet present on the selected DP master system.

The automatic addition of CiR elements is not available on DP master systems that are downstream of an IM 157.

If you want to automatically add CiR elements in an existing DP master system, proceed as follows:

1. Select the relevant DP master system in the upper part of the station window.
2. In the Edit menu, select the "Master System > Activate CiR capability" command.
   STEP 7 then adds the following CiR elements on the selected DP master system:
   – A CiR module on each CiR-capable modular slave (if slots are still available).
     This CiR module contains so many input and output bytes that a reasonable number is available for later use on the modular slave.
   – A CiR object on each lower-level CiR-capable PA master system.
     This CiR object contains 80 input bytes and 80 output bytes.
   – A CiR object on the selected DP master system.
     STEP 7 attempts to guarantee 15 slaves and to make available 1220 input bytes and 1220 output bytes for this CiR object. If the largest address up to now on this master system is greater than 110, correspondingly fewer slaves can be guaranteed. If fewer than 1220 input bytes and 1220 output bytes are available, the number is reduced accordingly.
3. The default settings of the CiR objects are the same for all CPUs. For this reason, after activation of CiR capability of a master system, you should check each associated CiR object to determine whether the CiR synchronization time of the master system specified in the properties window of the CiR object is compatible with the CiR synchronization time of the CPU.

Adding a CiR object on the DP or PA master system

If you want to add a CiR object in a DP or PA master system, proceed as follows:

1. Select the relevant master system in the upper part of the station window.
2. Open the "Hardware catalog" window.

3. Using drag-and-drop, move the associated CiR object from the hardware catalog onto the master system. The CiR object then appears in the upper part of the station window as a placeholder slave. The CiR object has the following default values:
   – Number of guaranteed additional slaves: 15 on DP master system, 6 on PA master system
   – Maximum number of additional slaves: 45 DP slaves, 36 PA slaves
   – Number of input bytes: 1220 for a DP master system, 80 for a PA master system
   – Number of output bytes: 1220 for a DP master system, 80 for a PA master system
4. The default settings of the CiR objects are the same for all CPUs. For this reason, after definition of a CiR object, you should check whether the CiR synchronization time of the associated master system specified in the properties window of the CiR object is compatible with the CiR synchronization time of the CPU.
5. If you want to change the number of additional slaves and/or the number of input/output bytes, proceed as follows:
   Open the properties window of the CiR object (double-click the CiR object or select CiR object, right-click and select "Object properties ..." or select CiR object and "Edit > Object properties ...").
   You can change the guaranteed number of additional slaves. The lower part of the station window displays the resulting bus parameters: Target Rotation Time, Typical Target Rotation Time and watchdog time.
   You can also change the number of input bytes and output bytes. To do so, select the "Advanced settings" check box.

Adding a CiR module in a modular slave of type ET 200M / ET 200iSP

For a modular slave, proceed as follows:

1. Select the relevant slave in the upper part of the station window.
2. Open the "Hardware catalog" window.

3. Using drag-and-drop, move the CiR module from the hardware catalog onto the slot directly after the last configured module of the DP slave in the lower part of the station window. (If you automatically add CiR elements, this rule is automatically taken into account.) The CiR module then appears in the lower part of the station window as a placeholder module. The number of input bytes and output bytes are displayed in the properties window of the CiR module.
4. For ET 200M stations, this is determined as follows:
   – Number of input bytes = Number of free slots * 16
     In an ET 200M station that contains only a CiR module, this value is thus 128 (if the CiR object on the DP master system still has a sufficient number of free input and output bytes).
   – Number of output bytes = Number of free slots * 16
     In an ET 200M station that contains only a CiR module, this value is thus 128 (if the CiR object on the DP master system still has a sufficient number of free input and output bytes).

Note

For ET 200iSP, a maximum of 244 input bytes and output bytes are available. You can find the input and output bytes of the individual electronic modules in the ET 200iSP manual.

Downloading the configuration

After defining the CiR elements you download them with the CPU in STOP operating state.

A large number of modules can be used in the S7-400 automation system. To ensure that none of the modules you are using will prevent a future CiR action, you must adhere to the following procedure: Once you have downloaded the configuration in STOP operating state of the CPU, immediately download it again to the CPU, but this time with the CPU in RUN operating state. When this is done, STEP 7 and the CPU will check the CiR capability. With older modules or modules from third-party manufacturers, this is not yet possible offline.

11.8.1.3 Deleting CiR Elements

Deleting all CiR Elements

Note

You can only delete all CiR elements if a CiR object exists in the selected DP master system.

Downstream of an IM157 it is not possible to delete all CiR elements on a DP master system.

Delete all CiR elements of an existing DP master system as follows:

1. Highlight the icon of the corresponding DP master system in the upper part of the station window.
2. Select the command "Master system > Disable CiR compatibility" in the Edit menu.

STEP 7 will then delete

- all CiR objects in sublevel PA master systems
- all CiR modules in modular slaves
- the CiR object at the selected DP master system.

Deleting a Single CiR Element

You can delete the CiR object from a PA master system or ET200M /ET200iSP modular DP slave as follows:

1. Highlight the CiR element you want to delete.
2. Select "Edit > Delete" or the context-sensitive menu command **Delete**.

If no more CiR elements exist at the DP master system, save for the CiR object, you can use the same procedure to delete this CiR object.

11.8.2 Basic Procedure in RUN Mode

11.8.2.1 Overview

Overview

The following basic operating steps are available in RUN:

- Add slaves or modules
- Rebuild hardware when adding a slave
- Change process image partition assignment
- Re-configure existing modules in ET 200M/ET 200iSP stations
- Undo previously made changes (Undo functionality)
- Replace slaves or modules

Note

All plant changes listed below require a CiR object in the DP master system. This also applies for adding and removing slave slots.

Back up your current configuration after each download of the station configuration from HW Config (regardless of the CPU mode). This is the only way to ensure that you can continue working with the backed up project in the event of an error (loss of data) without losing CiR capability.

11.8.2.2 add slaves or modules

Procedure

Adding slaves or modules in RUN mode involves the following steps:

1. Expand and download the configuration with HW Config.
2. Rebuild the hardware.
3. Expand, test and download the user program.

You must adhere to this order of steps.

Rules

You must comply with the following rules when adding components:

- Within a modular DP slave of the type ET 200M / ET 200iSP, you may only add a CiR module in the slot directly after the last configured module. (This rule is observed automatically if you add CiR elements automatically.)
- Within a master system, a slave added must be assigned a PROFIBUS address that is higher than the highest assigned so far.
- With the ET 200iSP, you can only ever add or remove one module per station and download.

11.8.2.3 Reconfigure the hardware when adding a slave

Procedure

1. Equip the PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS PA bus cables with active bus terminals on both ends, so that the cables are correctly terminated during reconfiguration.
2. Always make sure not to disconnect any of the bus lines when you add a slave to a master system.
   – One way to achieve this is to install and wire up additional connectors in the corresponding expansion slot of the master system. You can then use these bus connectors to connect a new slave.
   – Another method is to install repeaters or diagnostics repeaters. In this case, add a slave as follows:
   Switch off the repeater function.
   Connect the new slave to the free side of the repeater. Note the current installation guidelines (see *Installation Manual: Installing Automation Systems S7-400, M7-400)*.
   Switch on the repeater function again.

11.8.2.4 change process image partition assignment

Procedure

You can change the assignment of a process image partition of an existing module or compact slave as follows:

1. Open the properties window of the module or slave. Specify the new process image partition in the "Addresses" tab.
2. Download the new configuration with HW Config.

11.8.2.5 reconfigure existing modules in ET200M / ET200iSP stations

Procedure

The procedure for using previously free channels is described under Using a Previously Unused Channel.

The procedure for reconfiguring already used channels of ET200M / ET200iSP modules is described under Reconfiguring a Previously Used Channel or under Removing a Previously Used Channel.

See also

Delete an already used channel. (Page 186)

Reconfiguring an already used channel. (Page 185)

11.8.2.6 Undo previous changes (Undo function):

Procedure

Undoing changes in RUN involves the following steps:

1. Undo the changes previously made in the user program (if necessary) and then download the user program.
2. Remove added slaves and modules from the configuration and download this configuration in RUN.
3. Rebuild the hardware, if necessary.

Rules

You must comply with the following rules when undoing changes:

- Within a modular DP slave of the type ET 200M / ET 200iSP, you may only remove the modules from the bottom (i.e. starting with the highest slot number).
- Within a master system, you must start at the highest PROFIBUS address of the slaves you want to remove. You can then continue with the slaves with lower addresses if required.

Note

You can remove slaves or modules that you have added in the course of multiple downloads in just one download.

By removing a slave or a module from a configuration, you increase the available I/O volume. The guaranteed number and the maximum number of slaves that can be used in the future may increase.

11.8.2.7 Replacing Slaves or Modules

Principle

The following rule applies: You can either remove or add slaves by downloading a configuration.

Replacement of slaves / modules by means of a download operation is therefore not supported.

11.8.2.8 Using CiR Elements in RUN Mode

Introduction

This section describes how to expand and then load an existing configuration.

Note

If you run invalid operations when adding real slaves or modules for configuration, an error message is not output until you load the configuration.

You should check for CiR capability after each plant change ("Station > Check CiR Capability" or the shortcut CTRL+ALT+F).

Adding a DP or PA slave

Process as follows to add a DP or PA slave:

1. Open the "Hardware catalog" window.
2. Drag and drop the slave from the hardware catalog to the CiR object in the upper part of the station window.
   The slave added appears in the upper part of the station window. The name of the slave added is displayed on an orange background to indicate that it has been created from a CiR object.

Note

When a slave is added, STEP 7 updates the guaranteed and maximum number of slaves and the number of input and output bytes of the corresponding CiR object.

We recommend selecting the station number of the added DP slave as follows:

Station number of the DP slave added = highest station number of all DP slaves previously configured + 1

If you select a higher station number for the DP slave added, the guaranteed and maximum number of DP slaves that can still be added may in certain cases be reduced by more than 1.

If you add a CiR-capable modular DP slave of the type ET 200M / ET 200iSP, it will be assigned a CiR module from the outset.

Adding modules in a modular slave of the type ET 200M / ET 200iSP

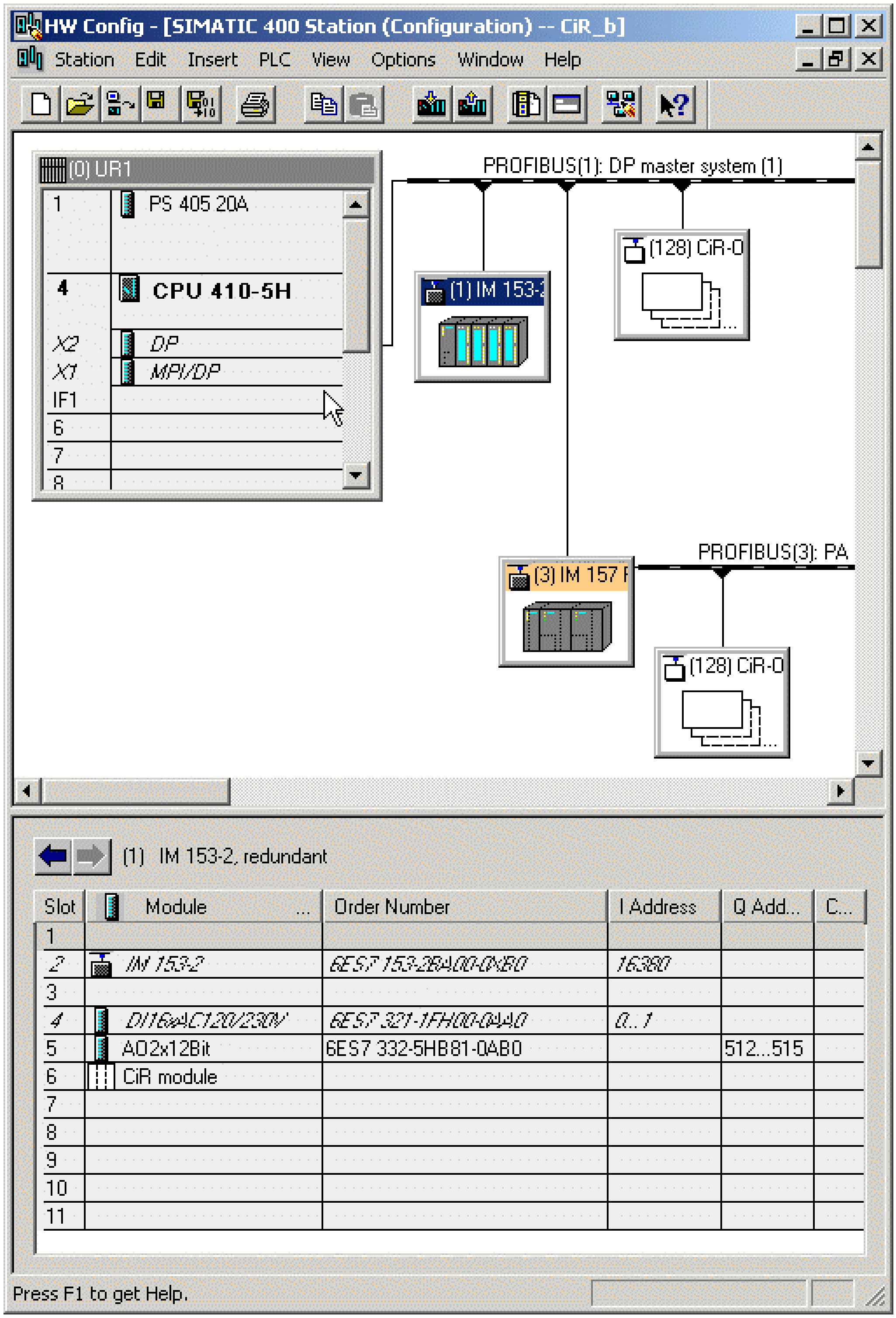
Proceed as follows to add components to an ET 200M / ET 200iSP modular slave:

1. Open the "Hardware catalog" window.
2. Drag and drop the module to be added to the CiR module in the bottom part of the station window.
   The module added then appears in the bottom part of the station window in the position that was occupied by the CiR module. The CiR module is moved down a slot.

Note

When you add a module to an ET 200M / ET 200iSP station, STEP 7 updates the number of input and output bytes of the corresponding CiR module.

The following figure shows the HW Config view after a module is moved to the CiR module:


HW Config - [SIMATIC 400 Station (Configuration) -- CiR_b]
Station Edit Insert PLC View Options Window Help
(0) UR1
1 PS 405 20A
4 CPU 410-5H
X2 DP
X1 MPI/DP
IF1
6
7
8
PROFIBUS(1): DP master system (1)
(1) IM 153-2
(128) CiR-O
(3) IM 157 P
PROFIBUS(3): PA
(128) CiR-O
(1) IM 153-2, redundant
Slot Module Order Number I Address Q Add... C...
2 IM 153-2 6ES7 153-2BA00-0XB0 16380
4 DI16xAC120/230V 6ES7 321-1FH00-0AA0 0...1
5 AO2x12Bit 6ES7 332-5HB81-0AB0 512...515
6 CiR module
Press F1 to get Help.

Loading the configuration in RUN

A modified configuration is loaded in RUN in the following two steps:

1. Check that the current configuration can be loaded ("Station > Check CiR Capability").
2. Download the configuration to the CPU ("PLC > Download to module ...").

Note

When the configuration is loaded to the CPU, the INTF LED goes and off again and the EXTF LED comes on permanently. You cannot start added the real stations or modules until the INTF LED has gone out. The EXTF LED then goes out again (see "Behavior of the CPU after download of the configuration in RUN").

Back up your current configuration after each download of the station configuration from HW Config (regardless of the CPU mode). This is the only way to ensure that you can continue working with the backed up project in the event of an error (loss of data) without losing CiR capability.

11.8.2.9 Undoing Previous Changes

Principle

You can undo any previous configuration changes that you downloaded to the CPU by removing the slaves or modules you added at that time.

The following rules apply:

- Remove slaves or modules from no more than 4 DP master systems.
- Within a DP or PA master system, you must start at the highest PROFIBUS address of the slaves you want to remove. You then continue with the slave with the next-highest PROFIBUS address.
- Within a modular DP slave of the type ET 200M / ET 200iSP, you must start with the highest slot number of the modules you want to remove. In the HW Config view, this is the module at the very bottom. STEP 7 offers the following support for this step: The module that you can remove next is entered in the bottom part of the station window in standard font; all other modules are shown in italics.
  You then continue with the module with the next-highest slot number.

Procedure

1. Select the object you want to remove.
2. Select the "Delete" command in the shortcut menu or in the "Edit" menu.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining objects you want to remove.
4. Download the modified configuration to your CPU.

Note

When you delete a slave, STEP 7 updates the guaranteed and the maximum number of slaves as well as the number of input and output bytes of the associated CiR object.

When you delete a module in a modular slave of the type ET 200M / ET 200iSP, STEP 7 updates the number of input and output bytes of the associated CiR module.

11.9 Reconfigure existing modules in ET200M / ET200iSP stations

11.9.1 Requirements for Reconfiguration

Note

You can use previously unused channels as well as re-configure previously used channels.

The addresses of existing modules may not be changed using CiR.

Requirement for configuration

Re-configuration requires an existing CiR object in the respective DP master system.

Hardware requirements

The modules (signal modules and function modules) of the ET 200M / ET 200iSP that can be re-configured in RUN mode of the CPU are listed in the info text in the "Hardware catalog" window.

The maximum number of modules that can be re-configured is 100.

11.9.2 Module Response During a Reconfiguration

Principle

During reconfiguration the input modules can respond in one of the three following ways:

- Channels not affected will continue to return the actual process value.
- Channels not affected will return the process value which was valid prior to the reconfiguration.
- All channels will return the value "0" (applies to digital modules and FMs) or W#16#7FFF (applies to analog modules).

Please refer to the technical data of the specific modules for information on their response.

Output modules respond as follows during reconfiguration:

The respective channels output the initial value which was valid before the parameter assignment.

11.9.3 CPU response during reconfiguration

Re-configuration sequence

Once you have made the parameter changes in HW Config and have downloaded them to the CPU in RUN mode, the CPU runs the tests described in "Behavior of the CPU after download of the configuration in RUN". The input and output values have the status "OK" after successful re-configuration.

You may only access those values in the process image that belong to the process image partition of the OB currently being processed.

The DP master marks the modules as available in the module status data if data record transfer was successful and as unavailable if data record transfer was not successful. In the latter case, access to the module triggers an I/O access error (in the event of input process image updates, transmission of the output process image to the module or direct access to the module. Depending on the type of access, OB 85 or OB 122 is started).

The input or output data of the modules behaves in the same way as after a remove module interrupt, which means it may not yet be correct (because the module may not yet have evaluated its data records). However, the restriction that data record SFCs for the modules can no longer be active no longer applies.

Note

If the re-configuration of a module involves disabling the diagnostic interrupt, for example, the module may still subsequently send an interrupt that it has already prepared.

Possible fault scenarios during re-configuration

The following error scenarios are possible:

- The module receives the parameter data records but cannot evaluate them.
- Serious errors (in particular protocol errors on the DP bus) may cause the DP master to completely suspend the corresponding DP slave, causing all modules of this station to fail.

Re-configuration dependency on CPU modes

Re-configuration takes place after SDB evaluation (see Behavior of the CPU after download of the configuration in RUN) in RUN mode. The INTF-LED is on during re-configuration.

The re-configuration process is interrupted during transition to HOLD. The process is continued when the CPU changes to STOP or RUN. In STOP, only the calls of OB83 are stopped.

Re-configuration is aborted if there is a power failure. Once power is restored, all existing DP stations are re-configured.

Coordination between master systems

The sequence

- OB 83 start (start event W#16#3367)
- Data record transmission
- OB 83 start (start event W#16#3267 or 3968)

may run in parallel in the master systems in question.

OB calls in re-configuration

Once the CPU has run the tests described in "Behavior of the CPU after download of the configuration in RUN", it starts OB 80 with the event W#16#350A. It then starts OB 83 with the start event W#16#3367. This means that as of now the input or output data of the I/O modules in question may no longer be correct. You may now no longer call any SFCs that trigger new jobs for sending data records to the modules involved (for example SFC 57 "PARM_MOD"), otherwise a conflict could occur between the data records sent by the system and those sent by the user.

Once the CPU has completed OB 83, it sends the parameter data records, with each module involved receiving the total number of data records (regardless of how many data records are affected by your change).

Another OB 83 start follows (start event W#16#3267 if sending was successful, W#16#3968 if it was not). No other priority class is interrupted by this processing of OB 83.

11.9.4 Reconfiguration Procedure

11.9.4.1 Using a Previously Unused Channel

Procedure

1. Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
2. Save your project.
3. Make the change to the wiring.
4. Change the user program and download it to the CPU.

11.9.4.2 Reconfiguring an already used channel.

Introduction

The procedure depends on whether or not changes to the user program and the associated hardware are necessary due to the re-parameterization. The individual cases are described below.

Procedure without change

The user program need not be changed as a result of re-parameterization. This is the case, for example, when you change an alarm limit or when you disable the diagnostic interrupt.

- Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.

Procedure for changing the user program

The user program need not be changed as a result of the re-parameterization. This is the case, for example, when you change the measuring range for a channel of an analog input module and when you compare the associated analog value with a constant in your program. The constant must be adapted in this case.

1. Set the values of the channel being re-configured to simulation (in the associated driver).
2. Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
3. Save your project.
4. If necessary, adapt the user program to the changed channel and download it to the CPU. Cancel the simulation for the re-configured channel (in the corresponding driver).

Procedure for changing the user program and the hardware

The user program and the hardware must be changed as a result of the re-parameterization. This is the case, for example, when you re-configure an input channel from "0 to 20 mA" to "0 to 10 V".

1. Set the values of the channel being re-configured to simulation (in the associated driver).
2. Change the associated hardware.
3. Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
4. Save your project.
5. If necessary, adapt the user program to the changed channel and download it to the CPU. Cancel the simulation for the re-configured channel (in the corresponding driver).

Procedure for changing the address area of the ET 200iSP electronic module

This is the case, for example, when you use IEEE values of a HART electronic module.

Follow these steps:

1. Set the values of the module being re-configured to simulation (in the associated driver).
2. Delete the module in the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
3. Insert the module once again and configure it for your configuration as needed.
4. Download the hardware configuration to the CPU.
5. Save your project.
6. If necessary, adapt the user program to the changed module and download it to the CPU.
7. Cancel the simulation for the re-configured module (at the associated driver).

11.9.4.3 Delete an already used channel.

Procedure

You do not need to change the hardware configuration if you no longer need a channel previously used.

1. Change the user program so that the channel to be removed is no longer evaluated, and download it to the CPU.
2. Change the hardware configuration and download it to the CPU.
3. Save your project.
4. Change the corresponding hardware (remove sensor or actuator, etc.).

11.10 Notes on Reconfiguration in RUN Mode Depending on the I/O

11.10.1 Modules in IO devices of the type ET 200SP HA

Principle

If you are planning plant changes in RUN using CiR, pay attention to the following information even during the planning phase of the ET 200SP HA stations:

- Select permitted CiR configurations for integration of the IO devices in the PROFINET subsystem.
- Insert a sufficient number of slot covers for additional I/O modules in the IO device.
- If the total user data of the inputs and outputs exceeds 1000 bytes, the ET 200SP HA loses the CiR capability.

Rules for plant changes during operation

- You may only add I/O modules directly behind the last existing I/O module or remove them starting at the end of the existing I/O modules. A gap is not permitted in either case.
- You need at least two downloads to the CPU to replace an I/O module with an I/O module of a different type for a configuration that already exists in the CPU:
  - 1st download: The CPU receives the configuration that no longer contains the I/O modules that are going to be removed.
  - 2nd download: The CPU receives the configuration with the newly added I/O modules.

11.10.2 DP and PA Slaves

Principle

When you are planning systems during operation via CiR, you must observe the following already at the planning stages:

- Provide a sufficient number of branch points for tap lines or disconnect points (tap lines are not permitted for operation at a transmission rate of 12 Mbps).
- ET 200M stations and DP/PA links must be designed with an active backplane bus. Always try to equip the station with the maximum number of bus modules, as you can not insert or remove a bus module during runtime.
- You must design the ET200iSP completely with terminal modules. Then equip all the terminal modules that are assigned to the reserve area with reserve modules.
- Terminate the PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS PA bus lines with active bus termination elements at both ends to ensure proper bus termination also during system reconfiguration.
- PROFIBUS PA bus systems should be equipped with components of the SpliTConnect product family to avoid having to disconnect cables.

Rules for CiR

The new DP slave must be assigned a higher station number than all previously configured DP Slaves.

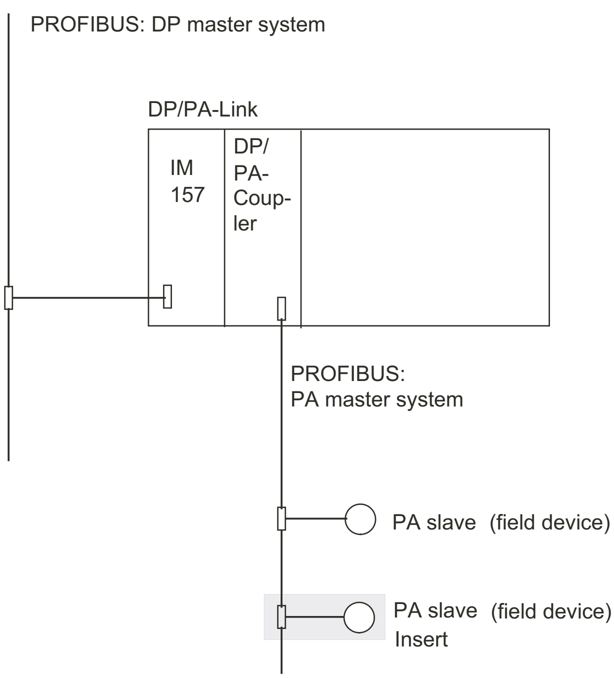
Since the total made up of the station number of the added DP slave and the number of slaves that can be added can be at most 125, we recommend that the station number for the added DP slave be selected as follows:

Station number of the added DP slave = the highest station number of all previously configured slaves + 1.

If you select a higher number for the added DP slave, then under unfavorable circumstances, the guaranteed/maximum number of slaves that can still be added will be decreased by more than 1. This is explained in the following example:

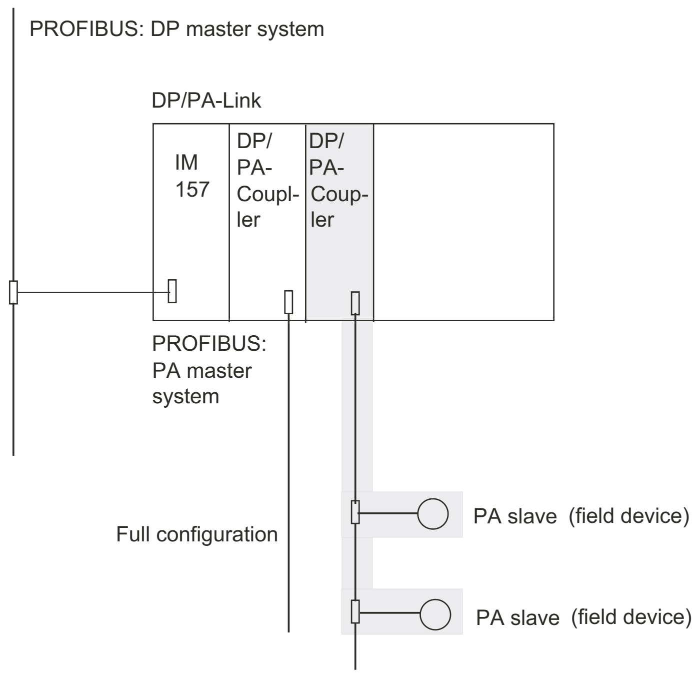
Let's assume that the highest station number of all previously configured slaves is 115 and that the number of slaves that can be added is at most 10. If you assign station number 118 to the added slave, the maximum number of slaves that can still be added will be 7.

Adding PA slaves (field device) to an existing PA master system



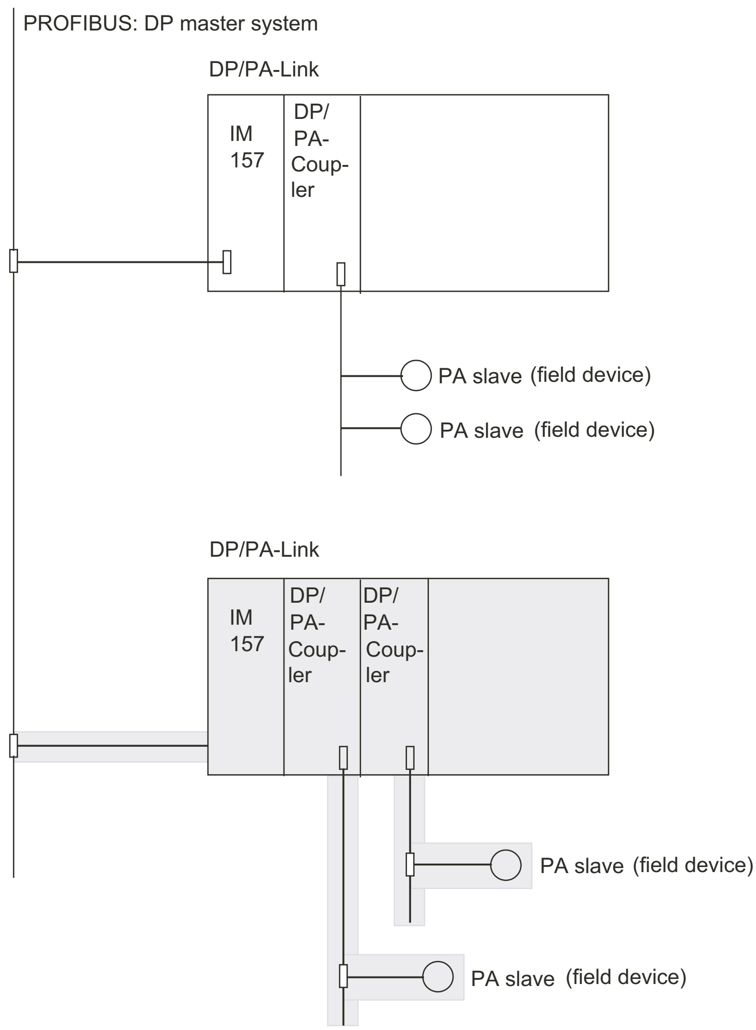
In your configuration, the addition of a PA slave downstream of an existing DP/PA link corresponds with the insertion of a module into a modular slave.

Adding a DP/PA Coupler with Corresponding PA Slaves to an Existing PA Master System



Adding a DP/PA coupler with corresponding PA slave system downstream of an existing DP/PA link corresponds with the insertion of multiple PA slaves (Field devices) in an existing PA master system.

Adding a DP/PA Link with PA Master System



Adding a DP/PA link and its corresponding PA master system corresponds with the insertion of a new DP slave in an existing DP master system.

11.10.3 Modules in ET 200M Modular Slaves

Principle

When you are planning systems during operation via CiR, you must observe the following already at the planning stages:

- Install the ET 200M station with an active backplane bus.
- Always try to equip the station with the maximum number of bus modules, as you can not insert or remove a bus module during runtime.

Rules for System Modification During Runtime

- You may only add or remove modules immediately after the last existing module. Always avoid gaps between modules.
- In order to replace a module with a module of a different type in an existing CPU configuration, you must perform at least two downloads to the CPU: First, download the CPU configuration that no longer contains the modules you are going to remove. Secondly, download the configuration that contains the new modules.

11.10.4 Modules in ET200iSP Modular Slaves

Principle

When you are planning systems during operation via CiR, you must observe the following already at the planning stages of the ET200iSP stations:

- Install the ET200iSP station completely with terminal modules and end module.
- Equip the ET200iSP from the interface module, starting with the necessary electronics modules. Equip the remaining slots right up to the end module with the reserve modules.

Rules for System Modification During Runtime

Replace the reserve modules with the intended electronics modules. Start with the first reserve module that is located on the lowest slot (right next to the last electronics module). In doing so a gap may appear in each case, i.e. always replace just one reserve module with the electronics module.

11.11 Effects on the process when re-configuring in RUN

11.11.1 Effects on Operating System Functions During the CiR Synchronization Time

Principle

Operating system function	Effects
Process image update	locked. The process images of the inputs and outputs are held at their last value.
User program processing	All priority classes are locked, which means no OBs are processed. However, all outputs are kept at their current value. Any existing interrupt requirements are retained. Currently occurring interrupts are only received by the CPU once the SDB evaluation is complete.

Operating system function	Effects
Time system	The timers continue running. The cycles for time-of-day interrupt, cyclic interrupt and time-delay interrupt continue running but the interrupts themselves are locked. They are only received after the SDB evaluation. This means, for example, that only one interrupt can be added for each cyclic interrupt.
Programming device operation	Only the STOP command can be operated from the programming device. This means data record jobs are not possible.
External SSL information	Information functions are processed with a time delay.

11.11.2 Behavior of the CPU after download of the configuration in RUN

11.11.2.1 Overview

Sequence after download of the configuration in RUN

Once a modified configuration has been downloaded, CPU first checks whether your changes are admissible. If they are, it evaluates the relevant system data.

This evaluation affects operating system functions such as process image updates and user program processing. The details of these effects are set out below.

The fixed time for interpretation of system data by the CPU is referred to below as CiR synchronization time.

The CPU enters the event W#16#4318 in the diagnostic buffer at the start and the event W#16#4319 in the diagnostic buffer at the end of system data evaluation.

Note

If a Power Off occurs or the CPU switches to STOP during system data evaluation, only a warm restart or cold restart is then possible.

The CPU then starts OB 80 with the event W#16#350A and enters the duration of evaluation in the OB start information. This allows you to use this time in the control algorithms in your cyclic interrupt OBs, for example.

Note

Always make sure that OB 80 has been loaded to your CPU. Otherwise, the CPU will switch to STOP when an OB 80 start event occurs.

11.11.2.2 Error displays

LED displays in re-configuration

At the start of the admissibility check until the end of the configuration data evaluation, the INTF LED lights up. It continues to light up if modules are re-configured.

After completion of the CiR procedure, a difference exists between the preset configuration and the actual configuration (preset configuration is changed after you have loaded a configuration change into the controller) and the EXTF LED lights up. If you have added slaves during the configuration modification, the BUS1F or BUS2F LED flashes in addition. If you have carried out the associated hardware changes, the EXTF, the BUS1F and the BUS2F LEDs are dark again.

Plant changes during redundant operation - H-CiR 12

12.1 The H-CiR wizard

The H-CiR wizard helps you with plant changes during redundant operation. It allows you to download a modified configuration without interrupting operation.

Note

Using the H-CiR wizard

Use the H-CiR wizard for H-CiR operations. This minimizes the risk of inconsistencies and avoids bumps during a plant change.

You access the H-CiR wizard in HW Config.

Proceed as follows:

1. Carry out the required changes/additions and update the configuration in HW Config accordingly.
2. Click "Download to module" in HW Config.
3. Select "Download station configuration in RUN mode".
4. Select one of the redundant CPUs.
5. Select "Automatically continue".
   This runs the first steps in the plant change process automatically.
6. Click "Continue".
   - The CPU is selected
   - The standby CPU may be switched to RUN by a warm restart.
   - The required system data blocks are generated.
   - The selected CPU is switched to RUN.
   - The new hardware configuration is downloaded to the CPU.
7. Click "Continue".
   - The system switches to the CPU with the modified configuration.
   - The current standby CPU is switched to RUN.
8. Close the dialog box.

Note

Keep changes to a manageable level and do not make changes to multiple interfaces at the same time.

12.2 Replacing central components

Which central components can be modified?

The following changes can be made to the hardware configuration during operation:

- Changing certain CPU parameters
- Re-configuring a module
- Assigning a module to another process image partition
- Upgrading the CPU version
- Upgrading to a higher product version or a current version of components used such as external DP interface modules.
- Adding or removing modules in the CPU or expansion units (for example one-sided I/O module).

Note

IM 460, IM 461 and CP 443-5 Extended

You can only add or remove the IM 460 and IM 461 interface modules, the external CP 443-5 Extended DP master interface module or the relevant connecting cables when the system is de-energized.

Note

Signal modules in the CPU with substitute value capability

For signal modules with substitute value capability in a CPU, the minimum I/O hold time is ineffective following a plant change. There is always a gap of 3 to 50 ms.

For all changes, please observe the rules for the assembly of an H station.

Changes to the hardware configuration

With a few exceptions, all elements of the configuration can be modified during operation. Configuration changes will usually also affect the user program.

The following must not be changed by means of system modifications during runtime:

- Certain CPU parameters (for details, please refer to the relevant sections)
- The transmission rate (baud rate) of redundant DP master systems
- S7 and S7 H connections

Note

For a switched I/O: complete all changes to one of the redundant DP master systems or IO controllers before you make changes to the second DP master system or IO controller.

12.3 Addition of interface modules

You can only add the IM 460 and IM 461 interface modules, the external CP 443-5 Extended DP master interface module or the relevant connecting cables when the system is de-energized.

De-energized means that the power supply for an entire subsystem must be switched off. This is only possible without affecting the process if the subsystem in question is in STOP.

Procedure

1. Carry out the required changes/additions and update the configuration in HW Config accordingly.
2. Click "Download to module" in HW Config.
3. Select "Download station configuration in RUN mode".
4. Select one of the redundant CPUs.
5. Select "Automatically continue".
   The initial processing steps of the plant change are performed automatically.
6. Click "Continue".
   – The CPU is selected
   – The standby CPU may be switched to RUN by a warm restart.
   – The required system data blocks are generated.
   – The selected CPU is switched to RUN.
   – The new hardware configuration is downloaded to the CPU.
7. End the H-CiR wizard.
   As you can only add the IM 460 and IM 461 interface modules, the external CP 443-5 Extended DP master interface module and the relevant connecting cables when the system is de-energized, you can no longer use the H-CiR wizard from this point.
8. Proceed as follows if you want to expand the subsystem of what has been the standby CPU:
   – Switch off the power supply to the standby subsystem.
   – Insert the new IM460 in the CPU and establish the link to a new expansion unit
     or
   – Add a new expansion unit to an existing line
     or
   – Plug in the new external DP master interface and establish a new DP master system.
   – Switch the power supply to the standby subsystem back on.

9. Switch to CPU with modified configuration.
   - In SIMATIC Manager, select a CPU of the fault-tolerant system, then select "PLC > Mode" from the menu.
   - In the "Mode" dialog box, click "Switch to..."
   - In the "Switch" dialog box, select "with modified configuration" and click on the "Switch" button.
   - Confirm the security prompt with "OK".
10. Proceed as follows if you want to expand the subsystem of the original master CPU (now in STOP):
    - Switch off the power supply to the standby subsystem.
    - Insert the new IM460 in the CPU and establish the link to a new expansion unit
      or
    - Add a new expansion unit to an existing line
      or
    - Plug in the new external DP master interface and establish a new DP master system.
    - Switch the power supply to the standby subsystem back on.
11. Transition to the redundant system state.
    - In SIMATIC Manager, select a CPU of the fault-tolerant system, then select "PLC > Mode" from the menu.
    - In the "Mode" dialog box, select the standby CPU and click "Warm restart".
12. Change and download the user program (see Modify and download the user program (Page 207))

12.4 Motivation for H-CiR on PROFINET IO

When it is possible to perform plant changes in process mode / RUN during redundant operation, this enables a high availability of the plant.

The H-CiR procedure relies on already defined and implemented procedures of fault-tolerant systems.

- From the perspective of the CPU, H-CiR adds the following functions to commissioning:
  - Change of user programs in RUN mode
  - Control of operating state transitions (startup, switchover, stop)
  - FW update with the logical update method
- From the perspective of STEP 7, H-CiR adds the following functions to commissioning:
  - Control of operating state transitions (switchover with "Start with...")

Plant changes during redundant operation - H-CiR for PNIO

The table below shows the options of the distributed I/O for plant changes during redundant operation:

H-CiR operation	Basic support	S1 configuration	S2 configuration Device not CIR-capable	S2 configuration Device CIR-capable	R1 configuration Device not CIR-capable	R1 configuration Device CIR-capable
Add IO controller	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
Remove IO controller	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
Replace IO controller	No	No	No	No	No	No
Add IO device	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Remove IO device	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Replace IO device	No	No	No	No	No	No
Add PDEV submodule	No	No	No	No	No	No
Remove PDEV submodule	No	No	No	No	No	No
Replace PDEV submodule	No	No	No	No	No	No
Add submodule	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Remove submodule	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Replace submodule	No	No	No	No	No	No
Re-configure PDEV submodule	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Re-configure submodule	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	Yes

Scope of validity

You can modify a plant during operation using H-CiR in plant units with distributed I/O. The configuration in the figure below is one example. For the sake of clarity, it only includes one PNIO subsystem. These limitations do not exist in reality.

H-CiR assumes the following configuration:

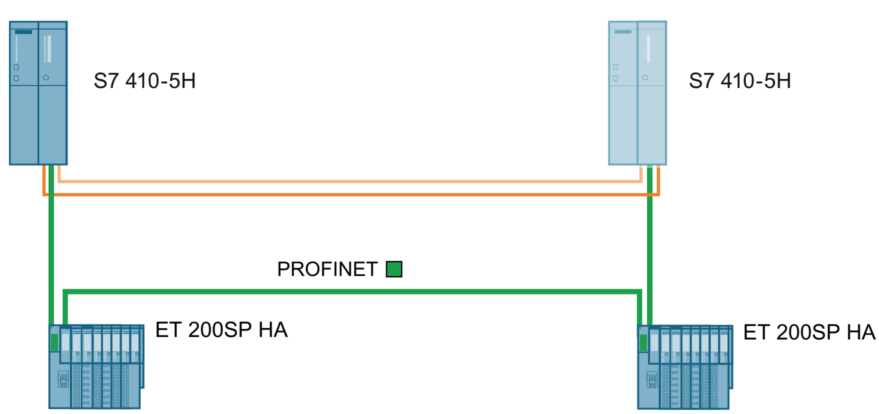


Figure 12-1 IO system with S2 devices

Requirements

- Fault-tolerant system as 1oo2 system
- Redundant PNIO subsystems
- Connection of two switched IO devices with CiR capability that operate simple I/O

The following boundary conditions apply:

- A CPU operates no PNIO subsystems, one PNIO subsystem or multiple PNIO subsystems over integrated interfaces to which no IO devices, one IO device or multiple IO devices are connected

Synchronization link

For all hardware changes, make sure that the redundant controller is linked correctly.

12.5 Permitted changes to PROFINET IO

Plant changes during redundant operation - H-CiR for PN/IO

The list below shows the options of the distributed I/O for plant changes during redundant operation:

Component	Adding	Removing	Re-configuring
IO device	X	X	
I/O module in an IO device with CiR capability	X	X	
Parameters of I/O modules in an IO device with CiR capability	-	-	Possible
Free channel in existing I/O module in an IO device with CiR capability	-	-	Possible
Port in an IO device with CiR capability	-	-	Possible

Permitted configuration changes for PROFINET IO

The process introduced here supports the following changes to your AS:

- Adding and removing one-sided devices (only user-data-free switches).
- Adding and removing IO systems.
- Adding or removing an IO device.
  The IO device does not need CiR capability for this step.
  The station address in the PROFINET IO subsystem of an IO device that is removed in a H-CiR operation must not be added back again in the same H-CiR operation.
  Station addresses must not be changed.

- Adding and removing I/O modules in the CiR-capable IO device.
  An I/O module that is removed with H-CiR must not be replaced with a different I/O module in the same H-CiR step.
  However, it is possible to remove I/O modules in a H-CiR operation and to add I/O modules at a different location.
- Changing parameters of I/O modules in the CiR-capable IO device.
- Changing parameters of the ports (PDEV submodules) or the interface, for example the update time.
  The device in question must have CiR capability for this step.

IO addresses that are removed in a H-CiR operation may not be added again in the same H-CiR operation.

Restriction

All changes that are not explicitly permitted above as part of plant changes in RUN, are not permitted during operation and are not explained in more detail here. These include, for example,

- Change of CPU-properties.
- Change of properties of existing PROFINET IO subsystems.
- Change of the diagnostic address.
- Change of the following parameters of an IO device:
  - Station address in the PROFINET IO subsystem
  - Assignment to the IO controller

12.6 Motivation for H-CiR on PROFIBUS DP

In addition to the options described in Replacement of failed components during redundant operation (Page 221) for replacing failed components in RUN, you can also make plant changes with CPU 410 in redundant mode without interrupting the program that is running.

The procedure and scope depend on the operating mode of the CPU.

The procedures described below for making changes during operation are each created in such a way that they start from the redundant system state (see Chapter The system states of the fault-tolerant system (Page 109)) and have as their objective a return to redundant system state.

Note

Keep strictly to the rules described in this section with regard to modifications of the system in runtime. If you contravene one or more rules, the response of the fault-tolerant system can result in its availability being restricted or even failure of the entire automation system.

Only perform a plant change in runtime if there is no redundancy error, i.e. if the REDF LED is not on. The automation system may otherwise fail.

The cause of a redundancy error is listed in the diagnostics buffer.

Safety-related components are not taken into account in this description.

Requirements

For switched I/O to be expanded during operation, the following points must be taken into account already at the system planning stage:

- In both cables of a redundant DP master system, sufficient numbers of branching points are to be provided for spur lines or isolating points (spur lines are not permitted for transmission rates of 12 Mbit/s). These branching points can be spaced or implemented at any points that can be accessed easily.
- Both cables must be uniquely identified so that the line which is currently active is not accidentally cut off. This identification should be visible not only at the end points of a line, but also at each possible new connection point. Different colored cables are especially suitable for this.
- Modular DP slave stations (ET 200M), DP/PA links and Y links must always be installed with an active backplane bus and fitted with all the bus modules required wherever possible, because the bus modules cannot be installed and removed during operation.
- The configuration of the terminal modules with the ET 200iSP should have sufficient reserves and be fitted with unconfigured standby modules.
- Always terminate both ends of PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS PA bus cables using active bus terminating elements in order to ensure proper termination of the cables while you are reconfiguring the system.
- PROFIBUS PA bus systems should be built up using components from the SpliTConnect product range (see interactive catalog CA01) so that separation of the lines is not required.

Modifications to the user program and the connection configuration

The modifications to the user program and connection configuration can be loaded into the target system in redundant system state.

12.7 Permissible changes to PROFIBUS DP

How is hardware modified?

If the hardware components concerned can be unplugged or plugging in live, the hardware modification can be carried out in the redundant system state. However, the fault-tolerant system must be temporarily switched to solo mode as downloading a modified hardware configuration in the redundant system state would cause the fault-tolerant system to stop. In solo operation, the process is then controlled by only one CPU while the desired configuration changes are made to the other CPU.

Note

You can either remove or add modules during a hardware change. If you want to alter your fault-tolerant system by removing some modules and adding others, you will need to make two hardware changes.

If the I/O or diagnostics address of a device/module is to be changed, first remove the device/module and then insert the device/module again with a new I/O or diagnostics address. This means that two consecutive hardware changes need to be performed.

Synchronization link

For all hardware changes, make sure that the redundant controller is linked correctly.

Which distributed components can be modified?

The following changes can be made to the hardware configuration during operation:

- Adding or removing components of the distributed I/O such as
  - DP slaves with redundant interface module (for example ET 200M, ET200iSP, DP/PA link and Y link)
  - One-sided DP slaves (in any DP master system)
  - Modules in modular DP slaves (ET 200M and ET 200iSP)
  - DP/PA couplers
  - PA devices
- Upgrading to a higher product version or a current version of components used such as DP-IMs.

Special features

When you use an IM 153-2, active bus modules can only be plugged in if the power supply is off.

Note

When using redundant I/O that you have implemented as one-sided I/O at the user level, you must take the following into consideration:

During the link-up and update process following a plant change, the I/O data of the previous master CPU may be temporarily deleted from the process image until all (changed) I/Os of the "new" master CPU have been written in full to the process image.

During the first update of the process image after a system modification, you may (incorrectly) have the impression that the redundant I/O has failed completely or that a redundant I/O exists. Correct evaluation of the redundancy status is therefore not possible until the process image has been fully updated.

This does not apply to modules that have been enabled for redundant operation.

Preparations

To minimize the time during which the fault-tolerant system has to run in solo mode, please note the following **before** starting a hardware change:

Modules which are plugged but not configured yet do not have any unwanted influence on the process.

See also

Rules for H station assembly (Page 31)

Other options for connecting redundant I/Os (Page 332)

Connection of two-channel I/O to the PROFIBUS DP interface (Page 81)

12.8 Adding components

12.8.1 Adding components

The same procedure applies for adding components, irrespective of whether the distributed I/O is connected over PROFIBUS DP or over PROFINET IO.

Initial situation

You have ensured that the CPU parameters (for example the monitoring times) are compatible with the planned new program. You may first need to modify the CPU parameters (see Editing CPU parameters (Page 216)).

The fault-tolerant system is operating in the redundant system state.

Procedure

If you are planning to add an IO device using an H-CiR operation and the device does not support PROFINET LLDP mode V2.3, make sure that "Force IEC V2.2 LLDP mode" is enabled from the outset for the IO controller. Otherwise, you cannot add the IO device using H-CiR.

You can check which PROFINET LLDP mode supports an IO device and which PROFINET LLDP mode is active for the IO controller in HW Config.

Follow the steps below to add hardware components to a fault-tolerant system in SIMATIC PCS 7. Details of each step are described in a subsection.

Step	Action	See section
1	Modify hardware	Modify hardware (Page 205)
2	Change hardware configuration offline	Change hardware configuration offline (Page 206)
3	Load configuration	Opening the H-CiR wizard (Page 206)

Exceptions

This overall sequence for system modification does not apply in the following cases:

- For use of free channels on an existing module
- For adding interface modules

12.8.2 Modify hardware

Initial situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating in the redundant system state.

Procedure

1. Add the new components to the system.
   – Insert new modules in existing modular DP stations
   – Add new DP stations to existing DP master systems.
   – Insert new I/O modules in existing IO devices.
   – Add new IO devices to existing IO controllers.
2. Connect the required sensors and actuators to the new components.

Result

Inserting modules and I/O modules that are not yet configured does not affect the application. The same applies if you add DP stations or IO devices.

The fault-tolerant system continues to operate in the redundant system state.

New components are not yet addressed.

12.8.3 Change hardware configuration offline

Starting situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating in redundant system mode.

Procedure

1. Perform all the modifications to the hardware configuration relating to the added hardware offline. Assign appropriate icons to the new channels to be used.
2. Compile the new hardware configuration, but do **not** load it into the target system just yet.

Result

The modified hardware configuration is in the PG/ES. The target system continues operation with the old configuration in redundant system mode.

Configuring connections

The interconnections with added CPs must be configured on both connection partners **after** you complete the HW modification.

12.8.4 Opening the H-CiR wizard

The next steps, except for changing and loading the user program, are performed by the H-CiR wizard.

Reaction of the I/O to the new master CPU

While the previous master CPU is still in STOP, the I/O reacts to the new master CPU as follows:

Type of I/O	Switched I/O
Added I/O modules	Configured and updated by the CPU.
I/O modules still available	Continues working without interruption.
Added DP stations	Like added I/O modules (see above)
[1] CPUs are also first reset. Output modules briefly have 0 (instead of the configured substitute or holding values).	

Reaction of the I/O to entering redundant mode

The fault-tolerant system is in redundant mode with the new configuration. The I/O reacts as follows:

Type of I/O	Switched I/O
Added I/O modules	Updated by the CPU.
I/O modules still available	Continue working without interruption.
1) CPUs are also first reset. Output modules briefly have 0 (instead of the configured substitute or holding values).	

Reaction to exceeding the monitoring times

When one of the monitored timers exceeds the configured maximum value, the update is aborted and no master switchover is performed. The H system remains in solo mode with the previous master CPU and attempts to later perform the master switchover under certain conditions. For details, refer to the section Time monitoring (Page 120).

12.8.5 Modify and download the user program

Starting situation

The H system is operating with the new hardware configuration in redundant system state.

Procedure

1. Adapt the program to the new hardware configuration. You can add the following components:
   - CFC and SFC charts
   - Blocks in existing charts
   - Connections and parameter settings
2. Configure the added channel drivers and connect them to the newly assigned symbols (see section Change hardware configuration offline (Page 206)).
3. In SIMATIC Manager, select the charts folder and choose the "Options > Charts > Generate Module Drivers" menu command.
4. Compile only the modifications in the charts and download them to the target system.
5. Configure the interconnections for the new CPs on both communication partners and download them to the target system.

Result

The H system operates all plant hardware with the new user program in redundant system state.

12.8.6 Use of free channels on an existing module

The use of previously free channels of an I/O module depends mainly on the fact if the module can be configured or not.

Non-configurable modules

Free channels can be switched and used in the user program at any time in case of non-configurable modules.

Configurable modules

The hardware configuration first has to be matched to the used sensors or actuators for configurable modules. This step usually requires a new configuration of the entire module in most cases.

This means an uninterrupted operation of the respective modules is no longer possible:

- One-sided output modules briefly output 0 during this time (instead of the configured substitute or hold values).
- Modules in switched DP stations are not reconfigured when you switch over to the CPU with the modified configuration.

Proceed as follows to change the channel use:

- First, the affected module is completely removed from the hardware configuration and the user program. But it can remain inserted in the DP station. The module drivers must not be removed.
- After this, the module with the modified use is added again to the hardware configuration and the user program.

Note

Between these two switchover actions, affected modules are not accessed; affected output modules have a value of 0. The signals of the previously used channels of the modules retain their values.

If this behavior is unacceptable for the process to be controlled, there is no other way to use previously free channels. In this case you must install additional modules to expand the system.

12.9 Removal of components

12.9.1 Removal of components

Initial situation

You have ensured that the CPU parameters (for example, the monitoring times) are compatible with the planned new program. You may first need to modify the CPU parameters (see Editing CPU parameters (Page 216)).

The modules to be removed and their connected sensors and actuators are no longer of any significance to the process being controlled. The fault-tolerant system is operating in the redundant system state.

Procedure

Follow the steps below to remove hardware components from a fault-tolerant system in SIMATIC PCS 7. Details of each step are described in a subsection.

Step	Action	See section
1	Change hardware configuration offline	Change hardware configuration offline (Page 209)
2	Modify and download the user program	Modify and download the user program (Page 211)
3	Open the H-CiR wizard	Opening the H-CiR wizard (Page 211)
4	Modify hardware	Modify hardware (Page 213)

Exceptions

This procedure for plant changes does not apply for removing interface modules.

12.9.2 Change hardware configuration offline

Starting situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating in the redundant system state.

Procedure

1. Perform offline only the configuration modifications relating to the hardware being removed. As you do, delete the icons to the channels that are no longer used.
2. Compile the new hardware configuration but do **not yet** download it to the PLC.

Result

The modified hardware configuration is available in the PG/ES. The target system continues operation with the old configuration in redundant system mode.

12.9.3 Modify and download the user program

Starting situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating in redundant system mode.

CAUTION

The following program modifications are not possible in redundant system mode and result in the system mode Stop (both CPUs in STOP mode):

- Structural modifications to an FB interface or the FB instance data.
- Structural modifications to global DBs.
- Compression of the CFC user program.

Before the entire program is recompiled and reloaded due to such modifications the parameter values must be read back into the CFC, otherwise the modifications to the block parameters could be lost. You will find more detailed information on this topic in the *CFC for S7, Continuous Function Chart* manual.

Procedure

1. Edit only the program elements related to the hardware removal. You can delete the following components:
   - CFCs and SFCs
   - Blocks in existing charts
   - Channel drivers, interconnections and parameter settings
2. In SIMATIC Manager, select the charts folder and choose the "Options > Charts > Generate Module Drivers" menu command.
   This removes the driver blocks that are no longer required.
3. Compile only the modifications in the charts and download them to the target system.

Note

Until an FC is called the first time, the value of its output is undefined. This must be taken into account in the interconnection of the FC outputs.

Result

The fault-tolerant system continues to operate in redundant system mode. The modified user program will no longer attempt to access the hardware being removed.

12.9.4 Opening the H-CiR wizard

The next steps, except for the conversion of the hardware, are performed by the H-CiR wizard.

Reaction of the I/O to the new master CPU

While the previous master CPU is still in STOP, the I/O reacts to the new master CPU as follows:

Type of I/O	One-sided I/O of the previous master CPU	One-sided I/O of the new master CPU	Switched I/O
The I/O modules to be removed[1)]	No longer accessed by the CPU. Driver blocks are no longer available.		
I/O modules still available	No longer accessed by the CPU. Output modules have the configured substitute or holding values.	Newly configured[2)] and updated by the CPU.	Continue working without interruption.
The DP stations to be removed	like I/O modules to be removed (see above)		
1) No longer included in the hardware configuration, but still plugged 2) CPUs are also first reset. Output modules briefly have 0 (instead of the configured substitute or holding values).			

Reaction of the I/O to entering redundant mode

The fault-tolerant system is in redundant mode with the new configuration. The I/O reacts as follows:

Type of I/O	One-sided I/O of the reserve CPU	One-sided I/O of the master CPU	Switched I/O
The I/O modules to be removed[1)]	No longer accessed by the CPU. Driver blocks are no longer available.		
I/O modules still available	Newly configured[2)] and updated by the CPU.	Continue working without interruption.	
The DP stations to be removed	like I/O modules to be removed (see above)		
1) No longer included in the hardware configuration, but still plugged 2) CPUs are also first reset. Output modules briefly have 0 (instead of the configured substitute or holding values).			

Reaction to exceeding the monitoring times

When one of the monitored timers exceeds the configured maximum value, the update is aborted and no master switchover is performed. The H system remains in solo mode with the previous master CPU and attempts to later perform the master switchover under certain conditions. For details, refer to the section Time monitoring (Page 120).

12.9.5 Modify hardware

Initial situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating with the new hardware configuration in the redundant system state.

Procedure

1. Disconnect all the sensors and actuators from the components you want to remove.
2. Unplug modules of the one-sided I/Os that are no longer required from the racks.
3. Unplug components that are no longer required from the modular DP stations or IO devices.
4. Remove DP stations that are no longer required from the DP master systems, or IO devices that are not required from the IO systems.

Note

With switched I/O: Complete all changes to **one** line of the redundant DP master system or IO controller before you make changes to the second line.

Result

Unplugging modules and I/O modules that have been removed from the configuration does not affect the application. The same applies if you remove DP stations or IO devices.

The fault-tolerant system continues to operate in the redundant system state.

12.9.6 Modify hardware

Starting situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating with the new hardware configuration in the redundant system state.

Procedure

1. Disconnect all the sensors and actuators from the components you want to remove.
2. Unplug modules of the one-sided I/Os that are no longer required from the racks.

3. Unplug components that are no longer required from the modular DP stations or IO devices.
4. Remove DP stations that are no longer required from the DP master systems, or IO devices that are not required from the IO systems.

Note

With switched I/O: Complete all changes to **one** line of the redundant DP master system or IO controller before you make changes to the second line.

Result

Unplugging modules and I/O modules that have been removed from the configuration does not affect the user program. The same applies if you remove DP stations or IO devices.

The fault-tolerant system continues to operate in the redundant system state.

12.9.7 Removal of interface modules

Always switch off the power before you remove the IM460 and IM461 interface modules, external CP 443-5 Extended DP master interface module, and their connecting cables.

Always switch off power to an entire subsystem. To ensure that this does not influence the process, always set the subsystem to STOP before you do so.

Procedure

1. Carry out the required changes/additions and update the configuration in HW Config accordingly.
2. Click "Download to module" in HW Config.
3. Select "Download station configuration in RUN mode".
4. Select one of the redundant CPUs.
5. Select "Automatically continue".
   The initial processing steps of the plant change are performed automatically.
6. Click "Continue".
   - The CPU is selected
   - The standby CPU may be switched to RUN by a warm restart.
   - The required system data blocks are generated.
   - The selected CPU is switched to RUN.
   - The new hardware configuration is downloaded to the CPU.
7. End the H-CiR wizard.
   As you can only add the IM 460 and IM 461 interface modules, the external CP 443-5 Extended DP master interface module and the relevant connecting cables when the system is de-energized, you can no longer use the H-CiR wizard from this point.
8. Follow the steps below to remove an interface module from the subsystem of the standby CPU:
   - Switch off the power supply of the standby subsystem.
   - Remove an IM460 from the central unit.
     or
   - Remove an expansion unit from an existing line.
     or
   - Remove an external DP master interface module.
   - Switch on the power supply of the standby subsystem again.

9. Switch to CPU with modified configuration.
   - In SIMATIC Manager, select a CPU of the fault-tolerant system, then select "PLC > Mode" from the menu.
   - In the "Mode" dialog box, click "Switch to..."
   - In the "Switch" dialog box, select "with modified configuration" and click on the "Switch" button.
   - Confirm the security prompt with "OK".
10. Proceed as follows to remove an interface module from the subsystem of the original master CPU (currently in STOP mode):
    - Switch off the power supply of the standby subsystem.
    - Remove an IM460 from the central unit.
      or
    - Remove an expansion unit from an existing line.
      or
    - Remove an external DP master interface module.
    - Switch on the power supply of the standby subsystem again.
11. Transition to the redundant system state.
    - In SIMATIC Manager, select a CPU of the fault-tolerant system, then select "PLC > Mode" from the menu.
    - In the "Mode" dialog box, select the standby CPU and click "Warm restart".
12. Change and download the user program (see Modify and download the user program (Page 211))

12.10 Editing CPU parameters

12.10.1 Editing CPU parameters

Only certain CPU parameters (object properties) can be edited in operation. These are highlighted in the screen forms by blue text (if you have set blue as the color for dialog box text on the Windows Control Panel, the editable parameters are indicated in black characters).

Note

If you edit any protected parameters, the system will reject any attempt to changeover to the CPU containing those modified parameters. The event W#16#5966 is written to the diagnostic buffer. and you will then have to restore the wrongly changed parameters in the parameter configuration to their last valid values.

Table 12-1 Modifiable CPU parameters

Tab	Editable parameter
Startup	Monitoring time for signaling readiness by modules
	Monitoring time for transferring parameters to modules
Cycle/clock memory	Cycle load due to communication
Memory	Local data for the individual priority classes
Time-of-day interrupts (for each time-of-day interrupt OB)	"Active" check box
	"Execution" list box
	Starting date
	Time
Cyclic interrupt (for each cyclic interrupt OB)	Execution
	Phase offset
Diagnostics/clock	Correction factor
Security	Security level and password
H parameter	Test cycle time
	Maximum cycle time extension
	Maximum communication delay
	Maximum inhibit time for priority classes > 15
	Minimum I/O retention time

The selected new values should match both the currently loaded and the planned new user program.

Initial situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating in redundant system mode.

Procedure

To edit the CPU parameters of a fault-tolerant system, follow the steps outlined below. Details of each step are described in a subsection.

Step	Action	See section
1	Editing CPU parameters offline	Changing CPU parameters offline (Page 217)
2	Open the H-CiR wizard	Opening the H-CiR wizard (Page 218)

12.10.2 Changing CPU parameters offline

Initial situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating in redundant system mode.

Procedure

1. Edit the relevant CPU properties offline in HW Config.
2. Compile the new hardware configuration but do **not yet** download it.

Result

The changed hardware configuration is on the programming device / ES. The target system continues operation with the old configuration in redundant system mode.

12.10.3 Opening the H-CiR wizard

Reaction of the I/O to the new master CPU

While the previous master CPU is still in STOP, the I/O reacts to the new master CPU as follows:

Type of I/O	One-sided I/O of the previous master CPU	One-sided I/O of the new master CPU	Switched I/O
I/O modules	No longer accessed by the CPU. Output modules have the configured substitute or holding values.	Newly configured[1)] and updated by the CPU.	Continue working without interruption.
1) CPUs are also first reset. Output modules briefly have 0 (instead of the configured substitute or holding values).			

Reaction of the I/O to entering redundant mode

The fault-tolerant system is in redundant mode with the new configuration. The I/O reacts as follows:

Type of I/O	One-sided I/O of the reserve CPU	One-sided I/O of the master CPU	Switched I/O
I/O modules	Newly configured[1)] and updated by the CPU.	Continue working without interruption.	
1) CPUs are also first reset. Output modules briefly have 0 (instead of the configured substitute or holding values).			

Reaction to exceeding the monitoring times

When one of the monitored timers exceeds the configured maximum value, the update is aborted and no master switchover is performed. The H system remains in solo mode with the previous master CPU and attempts to later perform the master switchover under certain conditions. For details, refer to the section Time monitoring (Page 120).

12.11 Re-parameterization of a module

12.11.1 Re-configuring a module/PDEV submodule

Refer to the information text in the "Hardware Catalog" window to determine which modules (signal modules and function modules) can be reconfigured during ongoing operation. The IO device must have CiR capability. The specific reactions of individual modules are described in the respective technical documentation.

PDEV submodules are interface and ports. Neighborhood relations, for example, can be reconfigured on the ports. The IO device must have CiR capability for this.

Note

If you edit any protected parameters, the system will reject any attempt to changeover to the CPU containing those modified parameters. In this case, the event W#16#5966 is entered in the diagnostic buffer for PROFIBUS DP and the events W#16#3x5A and W#16#3x5AB for PROFINET IO. and you will then have to restore the wrongly changed parameters in the parameter configuration to their last valid values.

The selected new values must match the current and the planned user program.

Initial situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating in the redundant system state.

Procedure

Follow the steps below to change the parameters of modules or PDEV submodules in a fault-tolerant system. Details of each step are described in a subsection.

Step	Action	See section
1	Editing parameters offline	Editing parameters offline (Page 219)
2	Open the H-CiR wizard	Opening the H-CiR wizard (Page 220)

12.11.2 Editing parameters offline

Starting situation

The fault-tolerant system is operating in redundant system mode.

Procedure

1. Edit the module parameters offline in HW Config.
2. Compile the new hardware configuration, but do **not** load it into the target system just yet.

Result

The modified hardware configuration is in the PG/ES. The target system continues operation with the old configuration in redundant system mode.

12.11.3 Opening the H-CiR wizard

The H-CiR wizard takes over the next step.

Reaction of the I/O to the new master CPU

While the previous master CPU is still in STOP, the I/O reacts to the new master CPU as follows:

Type of I/O	One-sided I/O of the previous master CPU	One-sided I/O of the new master CPU	Switched I/O
I/O modules	No longer accessed by the CPU. Output modules have the configured substitute or holding values.	Newly configured[1)] and updated by the CPU.	Continue working without interruption.
1) CPUs are also first reset. Output modules briefly have 0 (instead of the configured substitute or holding values).			

Reaction of the I/O to entering redundant mode

The fault-tolerant system is in redundant mode with the new configuration. The I/O reacts as follows:

Type of I/O	One-sided I/O of the reserve CPU	One-sided I/O of the master CPU	Switched I/O
I/O modules	Newly configured[1)] and updated by the CPU.	Continue working without interruption.	
1) CPUs are also first reset. Output modules briefly have 0 (instead of the configured substitute or holding values).			

Reaction to exceeding the monitoring times

When one of the monitored timers exceeds the configured maximum value, the update is aborted and no master switchover is performed. The H system remains in solo mode with the previous master CPU and attempts to later perform the master switchover under certain conditions. For details, refer to the section Time monitoring (Page 120).

Replacement of failed components during redundant operation 13

Note

Components in redundant mode

Only components with the same product version, the same article number and the same version can be operated redundantly.
If a component is no longer available as spare part, you must replace both components so that this condition is met once again.

13.1 Replacement of central components

13.1.1 Replacement of a CPU during redundant operation

Starting situation for replacement of the CPU

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in redundant system mode and a **CPU** fails.	• The partner CPU switches to single mode. • The partner CPU reports the event in the diagnostic buffer and in OB 72.

Requirements for replacement

The module replacement described below is possible only if the "new" CPU

- has the same operating system version as the failed CPU and
- if it is equipped with the same system expansion card as the failed CPU.

Note

New CPUs are always shipped with the latest operating system version. If this differs from the version of the operating system of the remaining CPU, you will have to equip the new CPU with the same version of the operating system. Download the required operating system via HW Config with "PLC -> Update Firmware", see chapter Updating firmware in stand-alone operation (Page 146).

⚠ CAUTION

Caution when replacing a CPU

If you reuse a CPU that has previously been used at a different location, ensure that the contents backed up in the load memory cannot pose a hazard at the new point of use. Reset the CPU to factory settings if its previous use is unknown.

See Resetting the CPU 410 to delivery condition (reset to factory setting) (Page 142)

Procedure

Note

Replacing an SEC

You can replace an SEC by following the same procedure as described above. Here you do not replace the CPU in step 2, but replace the SEC with an SEC of the same size and then reinstall the CPU.

Follow the steps below to **replace a CPU**:

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Turn off the power supply module.	• The entire subsystem is switched off (system operates in single mode).
2	Replace the CPU. Make sure the rack number is set correctly on the CPU.	–
3	Insert the synchronization modules.	–
4	Plug in the fiber-optic cable connections of the synchronization modules.	–
5	Switch the power supply module on again.	• CPU runs the self-tests and changes to STOP.
6	Perform a CPU memory reset on the replaced CPU.	–
7	Start the replaced CPU (for example, STOP-RUN or Start using the PG).	• The CPU performs an automatic LINK-UP and UPDATE. • The CPU changes to RUN and operates as the standby CPU.

CAUTION

Wiring synchronization modules crosswise

If you wire synchronization modules crosswise, i.e. the IF1 interface of the first CPU with the IF2 interface of the second CPU and vice versa, the two CPUs take over the master role and the system will now function properly. The LEDs IFM 1 and IFM 2 are lit on both CPUs.

Make sure that you connect the IF1 interface of the first CPU with the IF1 interface of the second CPU and the IF2 interface of the first CPU with the IF2 interface of the second CPU when you replace the CPU. Mark the fiber-optic cables before the replacement, if necessary.

13.1.2 Replacement of a power supply module

Starting situation

Both CPUs are in RUN.

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in redundant system mode and a power supply module fails.	• The partner CPU switches to single mode. • The partner CPU reports the event in the diagnostic buffer and in OB 72.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to replace a power supply module in the central rack:

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Turn off the power supply (24 V DC for PS 405 or 120/230 V AC for PS 407).	• The entire subsystem is switched off (system operates in single mode).
2	Replace the module.	–
3	Switch the power supply module on again.	• The CPU executes the self-tests. • The CPU performs an automatic LINK-UP and UPDATE. • The CPU changes to RUN (redundant system mode) and operates as reserve CPU.

Note

Redundant power supply

If you use a redundant power supply with two PS 407 10A R or PS 405 10A R, two power supply modules are assigned to one fault-tolerant CPU. The associated CPU continues to run if one of the redundant power supply modules fails. The defective part can be replaced during operation.

Other power supply modules

If the failure concerns a power supply module outside the central rack (e.g. in the expansion rack or in the I/O device), the failure is reported as a rack failure (central) or station failure (remote). In this case, simply switch off the power supply to the power supply module concerned.

13.1.3 Replacement of an input/output module or function module

Starting situation

Failure	How does the system react?
The CPU 410-5H is in redundant system mode and an input/output or function module fails.	• Both CPUs report the event in the diagnostic buffer and via appropriate OBs.

Procedure

CAUTION

Note the different procedures.

Minor injury or damage to equipment is possible.

The procedure for replacing and input/output or function module differs for modules of the S7-300 and S7-400.

Use the correct procedure when replacing a module. The correct procedure is described below for the S7-300 in Chapter Replacement of components of the distributed I/O on PROFIBUS DP (Page 230).

To replace signal and function modules of an S7-400, perform the following steps:

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Disconnect the module from its peripheral power supply, if necessary.	
2	Disconnect the front connector and wiring.	• If the affected module can generate diagnostic interrupts and if diagnostic interrupts are enabled as per configuration, a diagnostic interrupt is generated. • Call OB 122 if you are accessing the module by direct access • Call OB 85 if you are accessing the module using the process image
3	Remove the failed module (in RUN mode).	• Both CPUs generate a remove/insert interrupt and enter the event in the diagnostic buffer and the system status list.

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
4	Insert the new module.	• Both CPUs generate a remove/insert interrupt and enter the event in the diagnostic buffer and the system status list. • Parameters are assigned automatically to the module by the CPU concerned and the module is addressed again.
5	Plug the front connector into the new module.	• If the affected module can generate diagnostic interrupts and if diagnostic interrupts are enabled as per configuration, a diagnostic interrupt is generated.

13.1.4 Replacement of a communication module

This section describes the failure and replacement of communication modules for PROFIBUS and Industrial Ethernet.

The failure and replacement of communication modules for PROFIBUS DP is detailed in Replacement of a PROFIBUS DP master (Page 231).

Starting situation

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in redundant system mode and a communication module fails.	• Both CPUs report the event in the diagnostic buffer and via appropriate OBs. • In communication via standard connections: Connection failed • In communication via redundant connections: Communication is maintained without interruption over an alternate channel.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to replace a communication module for PROFIBUS or Industrial Ethernet:

Step	What has to be done?	How does the system react?
1	Remove the module.	• Both CPUs process the swapping interrupt OB 83 synchronized with each other.
2	Insert the new module.	• Both CPUs process the swapping interrupt OB 83 synchronized with each other. • The module is automatically configured by the appropriate CPU.
3	Turn the module back on.	• The module resumes communication (system establishes communication connection automatically).

13.1.5 Replacement of synchronization module or fiber-optic cable

In this section, you will see three different error scenarios:

- Failure of a synchronization module or fiber-optic cable
- Successive failure of both synchronization modules or fiber-optic cables
- Simultaneous failure of both fiber-optic cables

The CPU indicates by means of LEDs and diagnostics whether the lower or upper redundant link has failed. After the defective parts (fiber-optic cable or synchronization module) have been replaced, LEDs IFM1F and IFM2F must go out.

If one of the IFM LEDs continues to be lit even after you have replaced the relevant synchronization modules, the synchronization cables and even the standby CPU, there is an error in the master CPU. In this case, you can, however, switch to the standby CPU by selecting the "via only one intact redundancy link" option in the "Switch" STEP 7 dialog box.

Initial situation

Failure	How does the system react?
Failure of a fiber-optic cable or synchronization module: The S7-400H is in the redundant system state and a fiber-optic cable or synchronization module fails.	• Master CPU reports the event in the diagnostic buffer and through OB 72 or OB 82. • The standby CPU switches to ERROR-SEARCH operating state for a few minutes. If the error is eliminated during this time, the standby CPU switches to redundant system mode, otherwise it switches to STOP. • One of the two LEDs Link1 OK or Link2 OK is lit One of the two LEDs IFM1F or IFM2F is lit

Procedure

Follow the steps below to replace a fiber-optic cable:

Step	Action	How does the system react?
1	Look for the cause of the error along the path for which the IFMxF LEDs are lit on both CPUs: IFM1F: Upper sync modules in CPU rack 0 or rack 1 or corresponding synchronization cable. IFM2F: Lower sync modules in CPU rack 0 or rack 1 or corresponding synchronization cable. First, check the fiber-optic cable.	-
2	If the fiber-optic cable is defective, replace it.	The IFMxF LEDs on both CPUs go out.

Follow the steps below to replace a synchronization module:

Step	Action	How does the system react?
1	Replace the synchronization module on the CPU on which the LED Linkx-OK is still lit.	-
2	Plug in the fiber-optic cable connections of the synchronization modules.	• The LEDs IFMxF go out. If the LED should not go out, you must replace the synchronization module on the other CPU. • Both CPUs report the event in the diagnostic buffer
3	Start the standby CPU	The system status now changes to Redundant mode.

Initial situation

Failure	How does the system react?
Simultaneous failure of both fiber-optic cables The S7-400H is in the redundant system state and **both** fiber-optic cables fail.	• Both CPUs report the event in the diagnostic buffer and via OB 72. • Both CPUs become master CPU and remain in RUN. • The LEDs IFM1F and IFM2F are lit on both CPUs.

Procedure

The described double fault results in loss of redundancy and partial or complete failure of switched DP or PN I/O. In this event proceed as follows:

Step	Action	How does the system react?
1	Switch off one subsystem.	-
2	Replace the faulty components.	-
3	Turn the subsystem back on.	• LEDs IFM1F and IFMF2F go off. The LED MSTR of the switched on subsystem goes out.
4	Start the CPU.	• The CPU performs an automatic LINK-UP and UPDATE. • The CPU switches to RUN (redundant system state) and operates as standby CPU.

13.1.6 Replacement of an IM 460 and IM 461 interface module

Starting situation

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in redundant system mode and an interface module fails.	• The connected expansion unit is turned off. • Both CPUs report the event in the diagnostic buffer and via OB 86.

Procedure

Follow the steps below to replace an interface module:

Step	What has to be done?	How does the system react?
1	Turn off the power supply of the central rack.	• The partner CPU switches to single mode.
2	Turn off the power supply of the expansion unit in which you want to replace the interface module.	–
3	Remove the interface module.	–
4	Insert the new interface module and turn the power supply of the expansion unit back on.	–
5	Switch the power supply of the central unit back on and start the CPU.	• The CPU performs an automatic LINK-UP and UPDATE. • The CPU changes to RUN and operates as the reserve CPU.

13.2 Replacement of components of the distributed I/O on PROFINET IO

13.2.1 Replacement of a PROFINET IO device

Starting situation

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in the redundant system state and an IO device fails.	Both CPUs signal the event in the diagnostics buffer and via a corresponding OB.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to change an IO device:

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Switch off the power supply to the IO device.	OB 86 and OB85 are called, the LED REDF lights up, the corresponding LED BUSxF flashes.
2	Unplug the connected RJ45 connector.	-
3	Change the IO device.	-
4	Plug the RJ45 connector back in and switch the power supply back on.	• The CPUs process the rack failure OB 86 synchronously (outgoing event) • The IO device can be addressed by the corresponding IO system.

13.2.2 Replacement of PROFINET IO cables

Starting situation

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in the redundant system state and there is a fault in the PROFINET IO cable.	• With one-sided I/O: The rack failure OB (OB 86) is launched (incoming event). The IO controller can no longer address connected IO devices (station failure). The LED BUS5F lF or BUS8F IF is flashing • With switched I/O: The I/O redundancy error OB (OB 70) is launched (incoming event). The LED BUS5F lF or BUS8F IF and the LED REDF are flashing.

Replacement procedure

Proceed as follows to change PROFINET IO cables:

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Check the wiring and identify the faulty PROFINET IO cable.	-
2	Replace the defective cable.	CPUs process error OBs synchronously • With one-sided I/O: Rack failure OB 86 (outgoing event) IO devices can be addressed through the IO controller. • With switched I/O: I/O redundancy error OB 70 (outgoing event). IO devices can be addressed through both IO controllers.

13.3 Replacement of components of the distributed I/O on PROFIBUS DP

Which components can be replaced?

The following components of the distributed I/Os can be replaced during operation:

- PROFIBUS DP master
- PROFIBUS DP interface module (IM 153-2 or IM 157)
- PROFIBUS DP slave
- PROFIBUS DP cable
- Input/output or function modules in a distributed station

Replacement of signal and function modules

> **⚠ CAUTION**
>
> **Note the different procedures.**
>
> Minor injury or damage to equipment is possible.
>
> The procedure for replacing and input/output or function module differs for modules of the S7-300 and S7-400.
>
> Use the correct procedure when replacing a module. The correct procedure is described below for the S7-400 in Chapter Replacement of an input/output module or function module (Page 224).

To replace signal and function modules of an S7-300, perform the following steps:

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Disconnect the module from its load current supply.	
2	Remove the failed module (in RUN mode).	• Both CPUs generate a remove/insert interrupt and enter the event in the diagnostic buffer and the system status list.
3	Disconnect the front connector and wiring.	-
4	Plug the front connector into the new module.	-
5	Insert the new module.	• Both CPUs generate a remove/insert interrupt and enter the event in the diagnostic buffer and the system status list. • Parameters are assigned automatically to the module by the CPU concerned and the module is addressed again.

13.3.1 Replacement of a PROFIBUS DP master

Starting situation

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in the redundant system state and a DP master module fails.	• With single-channel one-sided I/O: The DP master can no longer process connected DP slaves. • With switched I/O: DP slaves are addressed over the DP master of the partner.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to change a PROFIBUS DP master:

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Turn off the power supply of the central rack.	The fault-tolerant system switches to solo mode.
2	Unplug the PROFIBUS DP cable for the DP master module in question.	-
3	Replace the module.	-
4	Plug the PROFIBUS DP cable back in.	-
5	Turn on the power supply of the central rack.	• The CPU performs an automatic LINK-UP and UPDATE. • The CPU switches to RUN and operates as standby CPU.

Exchanging a CP 443-5 in case of spare part requirement

If a CP 443-5 is replaced by a successor module with a new article number, both modules must always be replaced in the case of redundantly used components.

Redundantly used modules must be identical, which means they must have the same article number, product version and firmware version.

Procedure

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Stop the standby CPU	The fault-tolerant system switches to solo mode.
2	Turn off the power supply of the central rack.	-
3	Unplug the PROFIBUS DP cable for the DP master module in question.	-
4	Replace the module.	-
5	Plug the PROFIBUS DP cable back in.	-
6	Turn on the power supply of the central rack.	_
7	Switch to the CPU with the modified configuration.	The standby CPU links up, is updated and becomes the master. The CPU that was master switches to STOP and the fault-tolerance system operates with the new hardware in solo mode.
8	Turn off the power supply of the second central rack.	-
9	Unplug the PROFIBUS DP cable for the second DP master module.	-
10	Replace the module.	-
11	Plug the PROFIBUS DP cable back in.	-
12	Turn on the power supply of the second central rack again.	-
13	Perform a "Warm restart".	The CPU executes a LINK-UP and UPDATE and operates as standby CPU.

13.3.2 Replacement of a redundant PROFIBUS DP interface module

Starting situation

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in redundant system mode and a PROFIBUS DP interface module (IM 153–2, IM 157) fails.	Both CPUs report the event in the diagnostic buffer and via OB 70.

Replacement procedure

Proceed as follows to replace the PROFIBUS DP interface module:

Step	What has to be done?	How does the system react?
1	Turn off the supply for the affected DP interface module.	–
2	Remove the bus connector.	–
3	Insert the new PROFIBUS DP interface module and turn the power supply back on.	–
4	Plug the bus connector back in.	• The CPUs process the I/O redundancy error OB 70 (outgoing event) synchronized with each other. • Redundant access to the station by the system is now possible again.

13.3.3 Replacement of a PROFIBUS DP slave

Starting situation

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in redundant system state and a DP slave fails.	Both CPUs signal the event in the diagnostics buffer and via a corresponding OB 86.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to replace a DP slave:

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Turn off the supply for the DP slave.	With one-sided I/O: OB 86 and OB85 are called for access errors during the PA update. With switched I/O: OB70 is called (incoming event), the LED REDF lights up.
2	Remove the bus connector.	–
3	Replace the DP slave.	–
4	Plug the bus connector back in and turn the power supply back on.	• The CPUs process the rack failure OB 86 synchronously (outgoing event). • With switched I/O: OB70 is called (outgoing event), the LED REDF goes out. • The associated DP master can address the DP slave.

13.3.4 Replacement of PROFIBUS DP cables

Starting situation

Failure	How does the system react?
The S7-400H is in redundant system mode and the PROFIBUS DP cable is defective.	• With single-channel one-sided I/O: Rack failure OB (OB 86) is started (incoming event). The DP master can no longer process connected DP slaves (station failure). The LED BUS1F flashes. • With switched I/O: I/O redundancy error OB (OB 70) is started (incoming event). DP slaves are addressed via the DP master of the partner. The LED BUS1F and the LED REDF are flashing.

Replacement procedure

Proceed as follows to replace PROFIBUS DP cables:

Step	What to do?	How does the system react?
1	Check the cabling and localize the interrupted PROFIBUS DP cable.	–
2	Replace the defective cable.	The CPUs process the error OBs synchronized with each other • With one-sided I/O: Rack failure OB 86 (outgoing event) The LED BUS1F goes out. The DP slaves can be addressed via the DP master system. • With switched I/O: I/O redundancy error OB 70 (outgoing event). The DP slaves can be addressed via both DP master systems. The LED BUS1F and the LED REDF go out.

Synchronization modules 14

14.1 Synchronization modules

You can obtain information on the synchronization provided in the Service und Support Portal in the manual Synchronization modules for S7-400H (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/).

System expansion card 15

15.1 Variants of the system expansion card

Use of the system expansion card

The system expansion card (SEC) is inserted in a slot at the back of the CPU.

The SEC is used to scale the CPU 410 to correspond the maximum loadable process objects. More detailed information about the scaling concept can be found in the section Scaling and licensing (scaling concept) (Page 33).

Operation of the CPU is not possible without an SEC. If no valid SEC is detected, the corresponding CPU does not start up.

If an error occurs in redundant mode during access to the SEC of a CPU, this triggers a loss of synchronization and a startup block prevents another automatic link-up. You cannot operate two CPUs 410 redundantly with two different SECs.

System Expansion Card for CPU 410-5H

SECs with the following number of PO are available for the CPU 410-5H:

- 0
  You must store the required number of POs on this SEC before the first use.
- 100
- 500
- 1000
- 1600
- 2k+ (unlimited)

System Expansion Card for CPU 410E

An SEC with the following number of PO is available for the CPU 410E:

- 200

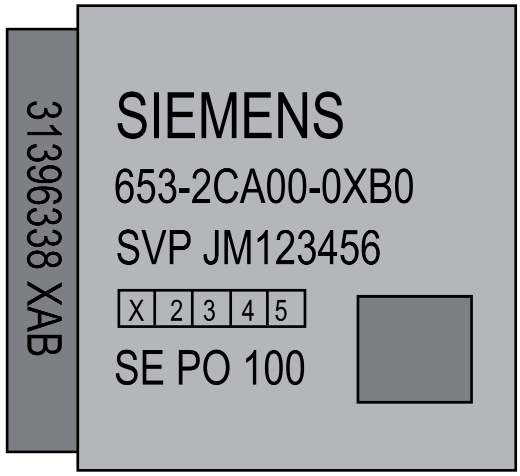


Figure 15-1 SEC

Increasing number of PO/enabling R1 redundancy

You can increase the number of POs in a CPU 410-5H without changing the SEC.
You can find information on how to increase the number of POs in *PCS 7 process control system, service support and diagnostics* (V8.1 or higher)
The procedure for increasing the number of PO also applies for transferring the license key for R1 redundancy of a distributed I/O.

Technical data 16

16.1 Technical specifications of CPU 410-5H; (6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0)

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
General information	
Product type designation	CPU 410-5H
HW functional status	2
Firmware version	V8.2
Design of PLC basic unit	With Conformal Coating (ISA-S71.04 severity level G1; G2; G3) and operating temperature to 70 °C
Product function	
• SysLog	Yes; via TCP; up to 4 receivers can be parameterized; buffer capacity max. 3 200 entries
• Field interface security	Yes
Engineering with	
• Programming package	SIMATIC PCS 7 V9.0 or higher
CiR - Configuration in RUN	
CiR synchronization time, basic load	60 ms
CiR synchronization time, time per I/O byte	0 μs
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, typ.	2 A
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	2.4 A
from backplane bus 24 V DC, max.	150 mA; DP interface
from interface 5 V DC, max.	90 mA; At the DP interface
Power loss	
Power loss, typ.	10 W
Processor	
CPU speed	450 MHz; Multi-processor system
Memory	
PCS 7 process objects	100 ... approx. 2 600, adjustable with System Expansion Card
Work memory	
• integrated	32 Mbyte; max., dependent on the System Expansion Card used
• integrated (for program)	Dependent on the System Expansion Card used
• integrated (for data)	Dependent on the System Expansion Card used
• expandable	Dependent on the System Expansion Card used
Load memory	
• integrated RAM, max.	48 Mbyte
• expandable RAM	No
Backup	

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
• with battery	Yes; all data
• without battery	Yes; Program and data of the load memory
Battery	
Backup battery	
• Backup current, typ.	370 µA; Valid up to 40°C
• Backup current, max.	2.1 mA
• Backup time, max.	Dealt with in the module data manual with the secondary conditions and the factors of influence
• Feeding of external backup voltage to CPU	No
CPU processing times	
for bit operations, typ.	7.5 ns
for word operations, typ.	7.5 ns
for fixed point arithmetic, typ.	7.5 ns
for floating point arithmetic, typ.	15 ns
average processing time of PCS 7 typicals	110 µs; with APL Typicals
Process tasks, max.	9; Individually adjustable from 10 ms to 5 s
CPU-blocks	
DB	
• Number, max.	16 000; Number range: 1 to 16 000 (= Instances)
• Size, max.	64 kbyte; Dependent on the System Expansion Card used
FB	
• Number, max.	8 000; Number range: 0 to 7999
• Size, max.	64 kbyte
FC	
• Number, max.	8 000; Number range: 0 to 7999
• Size, max.	64 kbyte
OB	
• Number, max.	see instruction list
• Size, max.	64 kbyte
• Number of free cycle OBs	1; OB 1
• Number of time alarm OBs	8; OB 10-17
• Number of delay alarm OBs	4; OB 20-23
• Number of cyclic interrupt OBs	9; OB 30-38 (= Process Tasks)
• Number of process alarm OBs	8; OB 40-47
• Number of DPV1 alarm OBs	3; OB 55-57
• Number of startup OBs	2; OB 100, 102
• Number of asynchronous error OBs	9; OB 80-88
• Number of synchronous error OBs	2; OB 121, 122
Nesting depth	
• per priority class	24
• additional within an error OB	2
IEC counter	

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
• present	Yes
• Type	SFB
• Number	Unlimited (limited only by RAM capacity)
IEC timer	
• present	Yes
• Type	SFB
• Number	Unlimited (limited only by RAM capacity)
Data areas and their retentivity	
Retentive data area (incl. timers, counters, flags), max.	Total working and load memory (with backup battery)
Flag	
• Size, max.	16 384 byte
• Retentivity available	Yes
• Number of clock memories	8; in 1 memory byte
Local data	
• adjustable, max.	64 kbyte
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	16 kbyte; max., dependent on the System Expansion Card used
• Outputs	16 kbyte; max., dependent on the System Expansion Card used
Process image	
• Inputs, default	16 kbyte; not changeable
• Outputs, default	16 kbyte; not changeable
• consistent data, max.	244 byte
• Access to consistent data in process image	Yes
Subprocess images	
• Number of subprocess images, max.	15
Hardware configuration	
Number of expansion units, max.	21; S7-400 expansion devices
Multicomputing	No
Interface modules	
• Number of connectable IMs (total), max.	6
• Number of connectable IM 460s, max.	6
• Number of connectable IM 463s, max.	4; Single mode only
Number of DP masters	
• integrated	1
• via CP	10; CP 443-5 Extended
Number of IO Controllers	
• integrated	2
• via CP	0

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
Number of operable FMs and CPs (recommended)	
• PROFIBUS and Ethernet CPs	11; Of which max. 10 CP as DP master
Slots	
• required slots	2
Time of day	
Clock	
• Hardware clock (real-time)	Yes
• retentive and synchronizable	Yes
• Resolution	1 ms
• Deviation per day (buffered), max.	1.7 s; Power off
• Deviation per day (unbuffered), max.	8.6 s; Power on
Operating hours counter	
• Number	16
• Number/Number range	0 to 15
• Range of values	SFCs 2, 3 and 4: 0 to 32767 hours SFC 101: 0 to 2^31 - 1 hours
• Granularity	1 h
• retentive	Yes
Clock synchronization	
• supported	Yes
• to DP, master	Yes
• to DP, slave	Yes
• in AS, master	Yes
• in AS, slave	Yes
• on Ethernet via NTP	Possible as client and master/slave via SIMATIC process
Interfaces	
Number of PROFINET interfaces	2
Number of RS 485 interfaces	1; PROFIBUS DP
Number of other interfaces	2; 2x synchronization
1. Interface	
Interface type	RS 485 / PROFIBUS
Isolated	Yes
Number of connection resources	16
Interface types	
• Output current of the interface, max.	150 mA
Protocols	
• PROFIBUS DP master	Yes
• PROFIBUS DP slave	No
PROFIBUS DP master	
• Number of connections, max.	16
• Transmission rate, max.	12 Mbit/s

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
• Number of DP slaves, max.	96
• Number of slots per interface, max.	1 632
Services	
– PG/OP communication	Yes
– Routing	Yes; S7 routing
– Global data communication	No
– S7 basic communication	No
– S7 communication	Yes
– S7 communication, as client	Yes
– S7 communication, as server	Yes
– Equidistance	No
– Isochronous mode	No
– SYNC/FREEZE	No
– Activation/deactivation of DP slaves	Yes; Approved for stand-alone operation only, not in conjunction with CiR (Configuration in Run)
– Direct data exchange (slave-to-slave communication)	No
– DPV1	Yes
Address area	
– Inputs, max.	6 kbyte
– Outputs, max.	6 kbyte
User data per DP slave	
– User data per DP slave, max.	244 byte
– Inputs, max.	244 byte
– Outputs, max.	244 byte
– Slots, max.	244
– per slot, max.	128 byte
2. Interface	
Interface type	PROFINET
Isolated	Yes
automatic detection of transmission rate	Yes; Autosensing
Autonegotiation	Yes
Autocrossing	Yes
System redundancy	Yes
Redundant subnetworks	Yes
Change of IP address at runtime, supported	No
Interface types	
• Number of ports	2
• integrated switch	Yes
Protocols	
• PROFINET IO Controller	Yes
• PROFINET IO Device	No
• PROFINET CBA	No

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
• Open IE communication	Yes
• Web server	No
• Media redundancy	Yes
PROFINET IO Controller	
• Transmission rate, max.	100 Mbit/s
Services	
– PG/OP communication	Yes
– S7 communication	Yes
– Shared device	No; however, usable as part of S7
– Prioritized startup	No
– Number of connectable IO Devices, max.	250
– Number of connectable IO Devices for RT, max.	250
– of which in line, max.	250
– Activation/deactivation of IO Devices	Yes; Approved for stand-alone operation only, not in conjunction with CiR (Configuration in Run)
– IO Devices changing during operation (partner ports), supported	No
– Device replacement without swap medium	Yes
– Send cycles	250 μs, 500 μs, 1 ms, 2 ms, 4 ms
– Updating time	250 μs to 512 ms, minimum value depends on the number of configured user data and the configured single or redundant mode
Address area	
– Inputs, max.	8 kbyte
– Outputs, max.	8 kbyte
– User data consistency, max.	1 024 byte
Open IE communication	
• Number of connections, max.	118
• Local port numbers used at the system end	0, 20, 21, 25, 102, 135, 161, 34962, 34963, 34964, 65532, 65533, 65534, 65535
• Keep-alive function, supported	Yes
3. Interface	
Interface type	PROFINET
Isolated	Yes
automatic detection of transmission rate	Yes; Autosensing
Autonegotiation	Yes
Autocrossing	Yes
System redundancy	Yes
Redundant subnetworks	Yes
Number of connection resources	120
Interface types	
• Number of ports	2

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
• integrated switch	Yes
Protocols	
• PROFINET IO Controller	Yes
• PROFINET IO Device	No
• PROFINET CBA	No
• Open IE communication	Yes
• Web server	No
• Media redundancy	Yes
PROFINET IO Controller	
• Transmission rate, max.	100 Mbit/s
Services	
– PG/OP communication	Yes
– S7 communication	Yes
– Shared device	No; however, usable as part of S7
– Prioritized startup	No
– Number of connectable IO Devices, max.	250
– Number of connectable IO Devices for RT, max.	250
– of which in line, max.	250
– Activation/deactivation of IO Devices	Yes; Approved for stand-alone operation only, not in conjunction with CiR (Configuration in Run)
– IO Devices changing during operation (partner ports), supported	No
– Device replacement without swap medium	Yes
– Send cycles	250 µs, 500 µs, 1 ms, 2 ms, 4 ms
– Updating time	250 µs to 512 ms, minimum value depends on the number of configured user data and the configured single or redundant mode
Address area	
– Inputs, max.	8 kbyte
– Outputs, max.	8 kbyte
– User data consistency, max.	1 024 byte
Open IE communication	
• Number of connections, max.	118
• Local port numbers used at the system end	0, 20, 21, 25, 102, 135, 161, 34962, 34963, 34964, 65532, 65533, 65534, 65535
• Keep-alive function, supported	Yes
4. Interface	
Interface type	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)
Plug-in interface modules	Synchronization module 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0, 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AA08-0XA0
5. Interface	
Interface type	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
Plug-in interface modules	Synchronization module 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0, 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AA08-0XA0
Protocols	
Supports protocol for PROFINET IO	Yes
PROFINET CBA	No
PROFIsafe	Yes
PROFIBUS	Yes
AS-Interface	Yes; Via add-on
Redundancy mode	
Media redundancy	
– Switchover time on line break, typ.	< 200 ms
– Number of stations in the ring, max.	50
SIMATIC communication	
• S7 routing	Yes
Open IE communication	
• TCP/IP	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
– Number of connections, max.	118
– Data length, max.	32 kbyte
– several passive connections per port, supported	Yes
• ISO-on-TCP (RFC1006)	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 and loadable FBs
– Number of connections, max.	118
– Data length, max.	32 kbyte; 1 452 bytes via CP 443-1 Adv.
• UDP	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
– Number of connections, max.	118
– Data length, max.	1 472 byte
Further protocols	
• Foundation Fieldbus	Yes; via DP/FF Link
• MODBUS	Yes; Via add-on
Communication functions	
PG/OP communication	Yes
• Number of connectable OPs without message processing	119
• Number of connectable OPs with message processing	119; When using Alarm_S/SQ and Alarm_D/DQ
Data record routing	Yes
S7 communication	
• supported	Yes
• as server	Yes
• as client	Yes
• User data per job, max.	64 kbyte

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
• User data per job (of which consistent), max.	462 byte; 1 variable
S5 compatible communication	
• supported	Yes; via CP and FC AG_SEND and FC AG_RECV
• User data per job, max.	8 kbyte
• User data per job (of which consistent), max.	240 byte
• Number of simultaneous AG-SEND/AG-RECV orders per CPU, max.	64/64
Standard communication (FMS)	
• supported	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB
Number of connections	
• overall	120
• usable for PG communication	
– reserved for PG communication	1
• usable for OP communication	
– reserved for OP communication	1
S7 message functions	
Number of login stations for message functions, max.	119; max. 119 with Alarm_S/SQ and Alarm_D/DQ (OPs); max. 16 with Alarm_8, Alarm_8P, Notify and Notify_8 (e.g. WinCC)
Program alarms	Yes
Process diagnostic messages	Yes
simultaneously active Alarm-S blocks, max.	1 000; Simultaneously active alarm_S/SQ blocks or alarm_D/DQ blocks
Alarm 8-blocks	Yes
• Number of instances for alarm 8 and S7 communication blocks, max.	10 000
Process control messages	Yes
Number of archives that can log on simultaneously (SFB 37 AR_SEND)	64
Test commissioning functions	
Status block	Yes
Single step	Yes
Number of breakpoints	4
Status/control	
• Status/control variable	Yes
• Variables	Inputs/outputs, memory bits, DBs, distributed I/Os, timers, counters
• Number of variables, max.	70
Diagnostic buffer	
• present	Yes
• Number of entries, max.	3 200
Service data	
• can be read out	Yes
Standards, approvals, certificates	

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
CE mark	Yes
UKCA mark	Yes
CSA approval	Yes
UL approval	Yes
cULus	Yes
FM approval	Yes
RCM (formerly C-TICK)	Yes
KC approval	Yes
EAC (formerly Gost-R)	Yes
CCC	Yes
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3G Ex ec IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	70 °C
Programming	
• Command set	see instruction list
• Nesting levels	7
• Access to consistent data in process image	Yes
• System functions (SFC)	see instruction list
• System function blocks (SFB)	see instruction list
Programming language	
– SCL	Yes
– CFC	Yes
Number of simultaneously active SFCs	
– RD_REC	8; SFC 59; per interface
– WR_REC	8; SFC 58; per interface
– WR_PARM	8; SFC 55; per interface
– PARM_MOD	1; SFC 57; per interface
– WR_DPARM	2; SFC 56; per interface
– DPNRM_DG	8; SFC 13; per interface
– RDSYSST	8; SFC 51
– DP_TOPOL	1; SFC 103; per interface
Number of simultaneously active SFBs	
– RDREC	8; SFB 52; per interface, but not more than 32 across all external interfaces
– WRREC	8; SFB 53; per interface, but not more than 32 across all external interfaces
Know-how protection	
• User program protection/password protection	Yes
• Block encryption	Yes; With S7 block Privacy

Article number	6ES7410-5HX08-0AB0
Dimensions	
Width	50 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	219 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	1.1 kg

16.2 Technical specifications of CPU 410E (6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0)

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
General information	
Product type designation	CPU 410E
HW functional status	1
Firmware version	V8.2
Design of PLC basic unit	With Conformal Coating (ISA-S71.04 severity level G1; G2; G3) and operating temperature to 70 °C
Product function	
• SysLog	Yes; via TCP; up to 4 receivers can be parameterized; buffer capacity max. 3 200 entries
• Field interface security	Yes
Engineering with	
• Programming package	SIMATIC PCS 7 V9.0 or higher
CiR - Configuration in RUN	
CiR synchronization time, basic load	60 ms
CiR synchronization time, time per I/O byte	0 µs
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, typ.	2 A
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	2.4 A
from backplane bus 24 V DC, max.	150 mA; DP interface
from interface 5 V DC, max.	90 mA; At the DP interface
Power loss	
Power loss, typ.	10 W
Processor	
CPU speed	450 MHz; Multi-processor system
Memory	
PCS 7 process objects	200; max.
Work memory	
• integrated	4 Mbyte
• integrated (for program)	4 Mbyte; max.
• integrated (for data)	4 Mbyte; max.
• expandable	No
Load memory	
• integrated RAM, max.	48 Mbyte
• expandable RAM	No
Backup	
• with battery	Yes; all data
• without battery	Yes; Program and data of the load memory
Battery	
Backup battery	
• Backup current, typ.	370 µA; Valid up to 40°C
• Backup current, max.	2.1 mA

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
• Backup time, max.	Dealt with in the module data manual with the secondary conditions and the factors of influence
• Feeding of external backup voltage to CPU	No
CPU processing times	
average processing time of PCS 7 typicals	110 µs; with APL Typicals
Process tasks, max.	9; Individually adjustable from 10 ms to 5 s
CPU-blocks	
DB	
• Number, max.	16 000; Number range: 1 to 16 000 (= Instances)
• Size, max.	64 kbyte; the total size of all data blocks generated with the SFC 22 (CREATE_DB) is limited to 256 KB
FB	
• Number, max.	8 000; Number range: 0 to 7999
• Size, max.	64 kbyte
FC	
• Number, max.	8 000; Number range: 0 to 7999
• Size, max.	64 kbyte
OB	
• Number, max.	see instruction list
• Size, max.	64 kbyte
• Number of free cycle OBs	1; OB 1
• Number of time alarm OBs	8; OB 10-17
• Number of delay alarm OBs	4; OB 20-23
• Number of cyclic interrupt OBs	9; OB 30-38 (= Process Tasks)
• Number of process alarm OBs	8; OB 40-47
• Number of DPV1 alarm OBs	3; OB 55-57
• Number of startup OBs	2; OB 100, 102
• Number of asynchronous error OBs	9; OB 80-88
• Number of synchronous error OBs	2; OB 121, 122
Nesting depth	
• per priority class	24
• additional within an error OB	2
IEC counter	
• present	Yes
• Type	SFB
• Number	Unlimited (limited only by RAM capacity)
IEC timer	
• present	Yes
• Type	SFB
• Number	Unlimited (limited only by RAM capacity)
Data areas and their retentivity	
Retentive data area (incl. timers, counters, flags), max.	Total working and load memory (with backup battery)

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
Flag	
• Size, max.	16 384 byte
• Retentivity available	Yes
• Number of clock memories	8; in 1 memory byte
Local data	
• adjustable, max.	64 kbyte
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	2 048 byte; max. 1 536 bytes for inputs or outputs per interface
• Outputs	2 048 byte; max. 1 536 bytes for inputs or outputs per interface
Process image	
• Inputs, default	2 048 byte; not changeable
• Outputs, default	2 048 byte; not changeable
• consistent data, max.	244 byte
• Access to consistent data in process image	Yes
Subprocess images	
• Number of subprocess images, max.	15
Hardware configuration	
connectable OPs	119
Multicomputing	No
Number of DP masters	
• integrated	1
• via CP	4; CP 443-5 Extended
Number of IO Controllers	
• integrated	2
• via CP	0
Number of operable FMs and CPs (recommended)	
• CP, LAN	4
• PROFIBUS and Ethernet CPs	4
Slots	
• required slots	2
Time of day	
Clock	
• Hardware clock (real-time)	Yes
• retentive and synchronizable	Yes
• Resolution	1 ms
• Deviation per day (buffered), max.	1.7 s; Power off
• Deviation per day (unbuffered), max.	8.6 s; Power on
Operating hours counter	
• Number	16

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
• Number/Number range	0 to 15
• Range of values	SFCs 2, 3 and 4: 0 to 32767 hours SFC 101: 0 to 2^31 - 1 hours
• Granularity	1 h
• retentive	Yes
Clock synchronization	
• supported	Yes
• to DP, master	Yes
• to DP, slave	Yes
• in AS, master	Yes
• in AS, slave	Yes
• on Ethernet via NTP	Possible as client and master/slave via SIMATIC process
Interfaces	
Number of PROFINET interfaces	2
Number of RS 485 interfaces	1; PROFIBUS DP
Number of other interfaces	2; 2x synchronization
1. Interface	
Interface type	RS 485 / PROFIBUS
Isolated	Yes
Number of connection resources	16
Interface types	
• Output current of the interface, max.	150 mA
Protocols	
• PROFIBUS DP master	Yes
• PROFIBUS DP slave	No
PROFIBUS DP master	
• Number of connections, max.	16
• Transmission rate, max.	12 Mbit/s
• Number of DP slaves, max.	96
• Number of slots per interface, max.	1 632
Services	
– PG/OP communication	Yes
– Routing	Yes; S7 routing
– Global data communication	No
– S7 basic communication	No
– S7 communication	Yes
– S7 communication, as client	Yes
– S7 communication, as server	Yes
– Equidistance	No
– Isochronous mode	No
– SYNC/FREEZE	No

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
– Activation/deactivation of DP slaves	Yes; Approved for stand-alone operation only, not in conjunction with CiR (Configuration in Run)
– Direct data exchange (slave-to-slave communication)	No
– DPV1	Yes
Address area	
– Inputs, max.	1 536 byte
– Outputs, max.	1 536 byte
User data per DP slave	
– User data per DP slave, max.	244 byte
– Inputs, max.	244 byte
– Outputs, max.	244 byte
– Slots, max.	244
– per slot, max.	128 byte
2. Interface	
Interface type	PROFINET
Isolated	Yes
automatic detection of transmission rate	Yes; Autosensing
Autonegotiation	Yes
Autocrossing	Yes
System redundancy	Yes
Redundant subnetworks	Yes
Change of IP address at runtime, supported	No
Number of connection resources	120
Interface types	
• Number of ports	2
• integrated switch	Yes
Protocols	
• PROFINET IO Controller	Yes
• PROFINET IO Device	No
• PROFINET CBA	No
• Open IE communication	Yes
• Web server	No
• Media redundancy	Yes
PROFINET IO Controller	
• Transmission rate, max.	100 Mbit/s
Services	
– PG/OP communication	Yes
– S7 communication	Yes
– Shared device	No; however, usable as part of S7
– Prioritized startup	No
– Number of connectable IO Devices, max.	250

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
– Number of connectable IO Devices for RT, max.	250
– of which in line, max.	250
– Activation/deactivation of IO Devices	Yes; Approved for stand-alone operation only, not in conjunction with CiR (Configuration in Run)
– IO Devices changing during operation (partner ports), supported	No
– Device replacement without swap medium	Yes
– Send cycles	250 µs, 500 µs, 1 ms, 2 ms, 4 ms
– Updating time	250 µs to 512 ms, minimum value depends on the number of configured user data and the configured single or redundant mode
Address area	
– Inputs, max.	1 536 byte
– Outputs, max.	1 536 byte
– User data consistency, max.	1 024 byte
Open IE communication	
• Number of connections, max.	118
• Local port numbers used at the system end	0, 20, 21, 25, 102, 135, 161, 34962, 34963, 34964, 65532, 65533, 65534, 65535
• Keep-alive function, supported	Yes
3. Interface	
Interface type	PROFINET
Isolated	Yes
automatic detection of transmission rate	Yes; Autosensing
Autonegotiation	Yes
Autocrossing	Yes
System redundancy	Yes
Redundant subnetworks	Yes
Number of connection resources	120
Interface types	
• Number of ports	2
• integrated switch	Yes
Protocols	
• PROFINET IO Controller	Yes
• PROFINET IO Device	No
• PROFINET CBA	No
• Open IE communication	Yes
• Web server	No
• Media redundancy	Yes
PROFINET IO Controller	
• Transmission rate, max.	100 Mbit/s
Services	

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
– PG/OP communication	Yes
– S7 communication	Yes
– Shared device	No; however, usable as part of S7
– Prioritized startup	No
– Number of connectable IO Devices, max.	250
– Number of connectable IO Devices for RT, max.	250
– of which in line, max.	250
– Activation/deactivation of IO Devices	Yes; Approved for stand-alone operation only, not in conjunction with CiR (Configuration in Run)
– IO Devices changing during operation (partner ports), supported	No
– Device replacement without swap medium	Yes
– Send cycles	250 µs, 500 µs, 1 ms, 2 ms, 4 ms
– Updating time	250 µs to 512 ms, minimum value depends on the number of configured user data and the configured single or redundant mode
Address area	
– Inputs, max.	1 536 byte
– Outputs, max.	1 536 byte
– User data consistency, max.	1 024 byte
Open IE communication	
• Number of connections, max.	118
• Local port numbers used at the system end	0, 20, 21, 25, 102, 135, 161, 34962, 34963, 34964, 65532, 65533, 65534, 65535
• Keep-alive function, supported	Yes
4. Interface	
Interface type	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)
Plug-in interface modules	Synchronization module 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0, 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AA08-0XA0
5. Interface	
Interface type	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)
Plug-in interface modules	Synchronization module 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0, 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AA08-0XA0
Protocols	
Supports protocol for PROFINET IO	Yes
PROFINET CBA	No
PROFIsafe	Yes
PROFIBUS	Yes
AS-Interface	Yes; Via add-on
Redundancy mode	
Media redundancy	
– Switchover time on line break, typ.	< 200 ms

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
– Number of stations in the ring, max.	50
SIMATIC communication	
• S7 routing	Yes
Open IE communication	
• TCP/IP	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
– Number of connections, max.	118
– Data length, max.	32 kbyte
– several passive connections per port, supported	Yes
• ISO-on-TCP (RFC1006)	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 and loadable FBs
– Number of connections, max.	118
– Data length, max.	32 kbyte; 1 452 bytes via CP 443-1 Adv.
• UDP	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
– Number of connections, max.	118
– Data length, max.	1 472 byte
Further protocols	
• Foundation Fieldbus	Yes; via DP/FF Link
• MODBUS	Yes; Via add-on
Communication functions	
PG/OP communication	Yes
• Number of connectable OPs without message processing	119
• Number of connectable OPs with message processing	119; When using Alarm_S/SQ and Alarm_D/DQ
Data record routing	Yes
S7 communication	
• supported	Yes
• as server	Yes
• as client	Yes
• User data per job, max.	64 kbyte
• User data per job (of which consistent), max.	462 byte; 1 variable
S5 compatible communication	
• supported	Yes; via CP and FC AG_SEND and FC AG_RECV
• User data per job, max.	8 kbyte
• User data per job (of which consistent), max.	240 byte
• Number of simultaneous AG-SEND/AG-RECV orders per CPU, max.	64/64
Standard communication (FMS)	
• supported	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB
Number of connections	

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
• overall	120
• usable for PG communication	
– reserved for PG communication	1
• usable for OP communication	
– reserved for OP communication	1
S7 message functions	
Number of login stations for message functions, max.	119; max. 119 with Alarm_S/SQ and Alarm_D/DQ (OPs); max. 16 with Alarm_8, Alarm_8P, Notify and Notify_8 (e.g. WinCC)
Program alarms	Yes
Process diagnostic messages	Yes
simultaneously active Alarm-S blocks, max.	1 000; Simultaneously active alarm_S/SQ blocks or alarm_D/DQ blocks
Alarm 8-blocks	Yes
• Number of instances for alarm 8 and S7 communication blocks, max.	10 000
Process control messages	Yes
Number of archives that can log on simultaneously (SFB 37 AR_SEND)	64
Test commissioning functions	
Status block	Yes
Single step	Yes
Number of breakpoints	4
Status/control	
• Status/control variable	Yes
• Variables	Inputs/outputs, memory bits, DBs, distributed I/Os, timers, counters
• Number of variables, max.	70
Diagnostic buffer	
• present	Yes
• Number of entries, max.	3 200
Service data	
• can be read out	Yes
Standards, approvals, certificates	
CE mark	Yes
UKCA mark	Yes
CSA approval	Yes
UL approval	Yes
cULus	Yes
FM approval	Yes
RCM (formerly C-TICK)	Yes
KC approval	Yes
EAC (formerly Gost-R)	Yes
CCC	Yes

Article number	6ES7410-5HM08-0AB0
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3G Ex ec IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	70 °C
Programming	
• Command set	see instruction list
• Nesting levels	7
• Access to consistent data in process image	Yes
• System functions (SFC)	see instruction list
• System function blocks (SFB)	see instruction list
Programming language	
– SCL	Yes
– CFC	Yes
Number of simultaneously active SFCs	
– RD_REC	8; SFC 59; per interface
– WR_REC	8; SFC 58; per interface
– WR_PARM	8; SFC 55; per interface
– PARM_MOD	1; SFC 57; per interface
– WR_DPARM	2; SFC 56; per interface
– DPNRM_DG	8; SFC 13; per interface
– RDSYSST	8; SFC 51
– DP_TOPOL	1; SFC 103; per interface
Number of simultaneously active SFBs	
– RDREC	8; SFB 52; per interface, but not more than 32 across all external interfaces
– WRREC	8; SFB 53; per interface, but not more than 32 across all external interfaces
Know-how protection	
• User program protection/password protection	Yes
• Block encryption	Yes; With S7 block Privacy
Dimensions	
Width	50 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	219 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	1.1 kg

16.3 Technical specifications of the system expansion card

PCS7 System Expansion Card PO 0

Article number	6ES7653-2CH00-0XB0
General information	
Product type designation	PCS 7 System Expansion Card PO 0
HW functional status	3
Firmware version	V2.0
Design of PLC basic unit	With Conformal Coating (ISA-S71.04 severity level G1; G2; G3) and operating temperature to 70 °C
Memory	
PCS 7 process objects	0; PO for CPU 410-5H; expandable by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
Work memory	
• integrated	CPU cannot be used without expansion
• expandable	Yes, by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
CPU-blocks	
DB	
• Size, max.	64 kbyte; The total size of all data blocks generated with the SFC 22 (CREATE_DB) is limited to 256 KB
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
• Outputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
Standards, approvals, certificates	
CE mark	Yes
UKCA mark	Yes
CSA approval	Yes
UL approval	Yes
cULus	Yes
FM approval	Yes
RCM (formerly C-TICK)	Yes
KC approval	Yes
EAC (formerly Gost-R)	Yes
CCC	Yes
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3G Ex ec IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	70 °C
Dimensions	
Width	8 mm
Height	16 mm

Article number	6ES7653-2CH00-0XB0
Depth	25 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	20 g

PCS7 System Expansion Card PO 100

Article number	6ES7653-2CA00-0XB0
General information	
Product type designation	PCS 7 System Expansion Card PO 100
HW functional status	3
Firmware version	V2.0
Design of PLC basic unit	With Conformal Coating (ISA-S71.04 severity level G1; G2; G3) and operating temperature to 70 °C
Memory	
PCS 7 process objects	100; PO for CPU 410-5H; expandable by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
Work memory	
• integrated	Use of max. 2.2 MB work memory in the CPU 410-5H
• expandable	Yes, by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
CPU-blocks	
DB	
• Size, max.	64 kbyte; The total size of all data blocks generated with the SFC 22 (CREATE_DB) is limited to 256 KB
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
• Outputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
Standards, approvals, certificates	
CE mark	Yes
UKCA mark	Yes
CSA approval	Yes
UL approval	Yes
cULus	Yes
FM approval	Yes
RCM (formerly C-TICK)	Yes
KC approval	Yes
EAC (formerly Gost-R)	Yes
CCC	Yes
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3G Ex ec IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	70 °C
Dimensions	
Width	8 mm
Height	16 mm
Depth	25 mm

Article number	6ES7653-2CA00-0XB0
Weights	
Weight, approx.	20 g

PCS7 System Expansion Card PO 500

Article number	6ES7653-2CC00-0XB0
General information	
Product type designation	PCS 7 System Expansion Card PO 500
HW functional status	3
Firmware version	V2.0
Design of PLC basic unit	With Conformal Coating (ISA-S71.04 severity level G1; G2; G3) and operating temperature to 70 °C
Memory	
PCS 7 process objects	500; PO for CPU 410-5H; expandable by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
Work memory	
• integrated	Use of max. 10 MB work memory in the CPU 410-5H
• expandable	Yes, by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
CPU-blocks	
DB	
• Size, max.	64 kbyte; The total size of all data blocks generated with the SFC 22 (CREATE_DB) is limited to 256 KB
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
• Outputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
Standards, approvals, certificates	
CE mark	Yes
UKCA mark	Yes
CSA approval	Yes
UL approval	Yes
cULus	Yes
FM approval	Yes
RCM (formerly C-TICK)	Yes
KC approval	Yes
EAC (formerly Gost-R)	Yes
CCC	Yes
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3G Ex ec IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	70 °C
Dimensions	
Width	8 mm
Height	16 mm
Depth	25 mm

Article number	6ES7653-2CC00-0XB0
Weights	
Weight, approx.	20 g

PCS7 System Expansion Card PO 1000

Article number	6ES7653-2CE00-0XB0
General information	
Product type designation	PCS 7 System Expansion Card PO 1000
HW functional status	3
Firmware version	V2.0
Design of PLC basic unit	With Conformal Coating (ISA-S71.04 severity level G1; G2; G3) and operating temperature to 70 °C
Memory	
PCS 7 process objects	1 000; PO for CPU 410-5H; expandable by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
Work memory	
• integrated	Use of max. 19.8 MB work memory in the CPU 410-5H
• expandable	Yes, by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
CPU-blocks	
DB	
• Size, max.	64 kbyte; The total size of all data blocks generated with the SFC 22 (CREATE_DB) is limited to 256 KB
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
• Outputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
Standards, approvals, certificates	
CE mark	Yes
UKCA mark	Yes
CSA approval	Yes
UL approval	Yes
cULus	Yes
FM approval	Yes
RCM (formerly C-TICK)	Yes
KC approval	Yes
EAC (formerly Gost-R)	Yes
CCC	Yes
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3G Ex ec IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	70 °C
Dimensions	
Width	8 mm
Height	16 mm
Depth	25 mm

Article number	6ES7653-2CE00-0XB0
Weights	
Weight, approx.	20 g

PCS7 System Expansion Card PO 1600

Article number	6ES7653-2CF00-0XB0
General information	
Product type designation	PCS 7 System Expansion Card PO 1600
HW functional status	3
Firmware version	V2.0
Design of PLC basic unit	With Conformal Coating (ISA-S71.04 severity level G1; G2; G3) and operating temperature to 70 °C
Memory	
PCS 7 process objects	1 600; PO for CPU 410-5H; expandable by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
Work memory	
• integrated	Use of max. 31.5 MB work memory in the CPU 410-5H
• expandable	Yes, by means of CPU 410 Expansion Pack PO 100 or PO 500
CPU-blocks	
DB	
• Size, max.	64 kbyte; The total size of all data blocks generated with the SFC 22 (CREATE_DB) is limited to 256 KB
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
• Outputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
Standards, approvals, certificates	
CE mark	Yes
UKCA mark	Yes
CSA approval	Yes
UL approval	Yes
cULus	Yes
FM approval	Yes
RCM (formerly C-TICK)	Yes
KC approval	Yes
EAC (formerly Gost-R)	Yes
CCC	Yes
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3G Ex ec IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	70 °C
Dimensions	
Width	8 mm
Height	16 mm
Depth	25 mm

Article number	6ES7653-2CF00-0XB0
Weights	
Weight, approx.	20 g

PCS7 System Expansion Card PO 2k+

Article number	6ES7653-2CG00-0XB0
General information	
Product type designation	PCS 7 System Expansion Card PO 2k+
HW functional status	3
Firmware version	V2.0
Design of PLC basic unit	With Conformal Coating (ISA-S71.04 severity level G1; G2; G3) and operating temperature to 70 °C
Memory	
PCS 7 process objects	approx. 2 600 POs for CPU 410-5H
Work memory	
• integrated	Use of max. 32 MB work memory in the CPU 410-5H
• expandable	No
CPU-blocks	
DB	
• Size, max.	64 kbyte; The total size of all data blocks generated with the SFC 22 (CREATE_DB) is limited to 256 KB
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
• Outputs	Use of 16 KB in the CPU 410-5H
Standards, approvals, certificates	
CE mark	Yes
UKCA mark	Yes
CSA approval	Yes
UL approval	Yes
cULus	Yes
FM approval	Yes
RCM (formerly C-TICK)	Yes
KC approval	Yes
EAC (formerly Gost-R)	Yes
CCC	Yes
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3G Ex ec IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	70 °C
Dimensions	
Width	8 mm
Height	16 mm
Depth	25 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	20 g

PCS7 System Expansion Card PO 200M

Article number	6ES7653-2CB00-0XB0
General information	
Product type designation	PCS 7 System Expansion Card PO 200M
HW functional status	3
Firmware version	V2.0
Design of PLC basic unit	With Conformal Coating (ISA-S71.04 severity level G1; G2; G3) and operating temperature to 70 °C
Memory	
PCS 7 process objects	200; PO for CPU 410E
Work memory	
• integrated	Use of max. 4.2 MB work memory in the CPU 410E
• expandable	No
CPU-blocks	
DB	
• Size, max.	64 kbyte; The total size of all data blocks generated with the SFC 22 (CREATE_DB) is limited to 256 KB
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	Use of 2 048 bytes in the CPU 410E
• Outputs	Use of 2 048 bytes in the CPU 410E
Standards, approvals, certificates	
CE mark	Yes
UKCA mark	Yes
CSA approval	Yes
UL approval	Yes
cULus	Yes
FM approval	Yes
RCM (formerly C-TICK)	Yes
KC approval	Yes
EAC (formerly Gost-R)	Yes
CCC	Yes
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3G Ex ec IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	70 °C
Dimensions	
Width	8 mm
Height	16 mm
Depth	25 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	20 g

17 Supplementary information

17.1 Supplementary information on PROFIBUS DP

Monitor/Modify, programming via PROFIBUS

You can use the PROFIBUS DP interface to program the CPU or execute the programming device functions Monitor and Modify.

Note

The "Programming" or "Monitor/Modify" applications prolong the DP cycle if executed via the PROFIBUS DP interface.

Determining the bus topology in a DP master system using SFC 103 "DP_TOPOL"

The diagnostic repeater is available to improve the ability to locate faulty modules or an interruption on the DP cable when failures occur in ongoing operation. This module is a slave that recognizes the topology of a DP segment and detects any problems caused by it.

You use SFC 103 "DP_TOPOL" to trigger the identification of the bus topology of a DP master system by the diagnostic repeater. For information on SFC 103, refer to the related online help and to Manual *System and Standard Functions*. The diagnostic repeater is described in the *Diagnostic Repeater for PROFIBUS DP* manual, article number 6ES7972-0AB00-8BA0.

Adding modules with ET 200M at a later time

If you want to add modules with the ET 200M while using IM 153-2, MLFB 6ES7 153-2BA00-0XB0 or higher, or an IM 153-2FO, MLFB 6ES7 153-2BB00-0XB0 or higher, note the following: The ET 200M must be equipped with an active backplane bus with sufficient free space for the planned expansion. Include the ET 200M so that it complies with IEC 61158.

Adding modules with ET 200iSP at a later time

If you want to add modules with the ET200iSP, the expansion of the terminal modules should have sufficient reserves from the start and be fitted with unconfigured reserve modules.

17.2 Supplementary information on diagnostics of the CPU 410 as PROFIBUS DP master

Reading the diagnostics data with STEP 7

Table 17-1 Reading the diagnostics data with STEP 7

DP master	Block or tab in STEP 7	Application	See ...
CPU 41x	"DP Slave Diagnostics" tab	Show slave diagnostics in plain text on the *STEP 7* user interface	See "Hardware diagnostics" in the *STEP 7* online help and in Manual *Configuring Hardware and Communication Connections with STEP 7*
	SFC 13 "DPNRM_DG"	Read slave diagnostics data, i.e., save them to the data area of the user program It is possible that the busy bit will not be set to "0" if an error occurs while SFC 13 is being processed. You should therefore check the RET_VAL parameter after every execution of SFC 13.	see *System and Standard Functions* reference manual. For the structure of other slaves, refer to their descriptions.
	SFC 59 "RD_REC"	Read data records of S7 diagnostics (store in the data area of the user program)	See *System and Standard Functions* reference manual
	SFC 51 "RDSYSST"	Read SSL partial lists. Call SFC 51 in the diagnostic interrupt with SSL ID W#16#00B3 and read the SSL of the slave CPU.	
	SFB 52 "RDREC"	For DPV1 slaves Read the data records of S7 diagnostics, i.e., store in the data area of the user program	
	SFB 54 "RALRM"	For DPV1 slaves: Read interrupt information within the associated interrupt OB	

Evaluating diagnostics data in the user program

The figure below shows how to evaluate the diagnostics data in the user program.

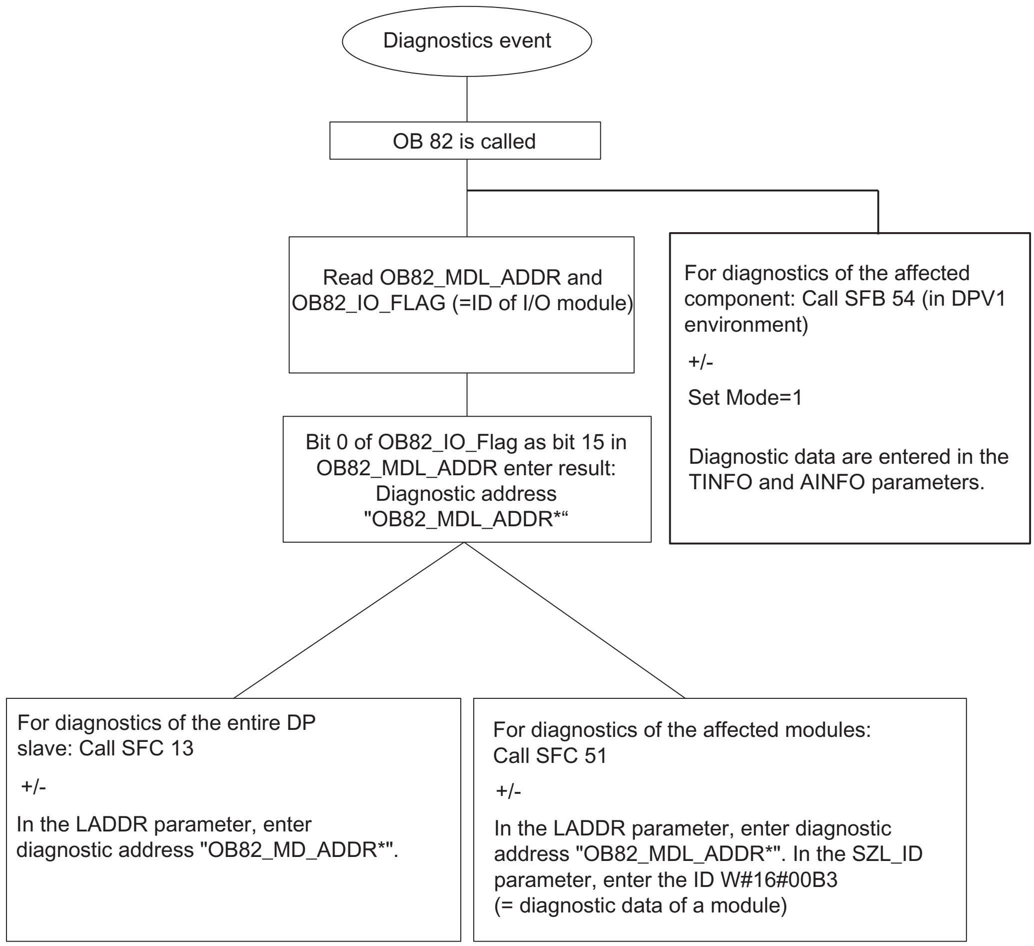


Figure 17-1 Diagnostics with CPU 410

Event detection

The following table shows how the CPU 41xH in DP master mode detects operating state changes on a DP slave or interruptions of the data transfer.

Table 17-2 Event detection of the CPU 41xH as a DP master

Event	What happens in the DP master?
Bus interruption due to short-circuit or disconnection of the connector	• OB 86 is called with the message **Station failure** as an incoming event; diagnostics address of the DP slave assigned to the DP master • With I/O access: Call of OB 122, I/O area access error
DP slave: RUN → STOP	• OB 82 is called with the message **Module error** as incoming event; diagnostic address of the DP slave assigned to the DP master; variable OB82_MDL_STOP=1
DP slave: STOP → RUN	• OB 82 is called with the message **Module OK** as incoming event; diagnostic address of the DP slave assigned to the DP master; variable OB82_MDL_STOP=0

Evaluation in the user program

The table below shows you how to evaluate RUN-STOP changes of the DP slave on the DP master. Also refer to the previous table.

On the DP master	On the DP slave (CPU 41x)
• Example of diagnostic addresses: Master diagnostics address=1023 Slave diagnostics address in master system=1022	• Example of diagnostic addresses: Slave diagnostics address=422 Master diagnostics address=irrelevant
The CPU calls OB 82 with the following information, for example: • OB 82_MDL_ADDR:=1022 • OB82_EV_CLASS:=B#16#39 As incoming event • OB82_MDL_DEFECT:=module error The CPU diagnostic buffer also contains this information. Your user program should also be set up to read the diagnostic data of the DP slave using SFC 13 "DPNRM_DG". Use SFB 54 in the DPV1 environment. It outputs the full interrupt information.	CPU: RUN → STOP CPU generates a DP slave diagnostics frame.

17.3 System status lists for PROFINET IO

Introduction

The CPU makes certain information available and stores this information in the "System status list".

The system status list describes the current status of the automation system. It provides an overview of the configuration, the current parameter assignment, the current statuses and sequences in the CPU, and the assigned modules.

The system status list data can only be read, but not be changed. The system status list is a virtual list that is compiled only on request.

From a system status list you receive the following information about the PROFINET IO system:

- System data
- Module status information in the CPU
- Diagnostic data from a module
- Diagnostics buffer

Compatibility of system status lists

System status lists are available for PROFINET IO that support PROFINET IO configuration sizes and can also be used for PROFIBUS.

You can use a previously known PROFIBUS system status list that is also supported by PROFINET IO as usual. If you use a system status list in PROFINET IO that PROFINET IO does not support, an error code is returned in RET_VAL (8083: Index wrong or not permitted).

Comparison of the system status lists of PROFINET IO and PROFIBUS DP

Table 17-3 Comparison of the system status lists of PROFINET IO and PROFIBUS DP

SSL-ID	PROFINET IO	PROFIBUS DP	Applicability
W#16#0C75	Yes, parameter adr1 changed	Yes	Communication status between the fault-tolerant system and a switched DP slave/PN device
W#16#0C91	Yes, internal interface Parameter adr1/adr2 and set/actual type identifier changed No, external interface	Yes, internal interface No, external interface	Module status information of a module in a central configuration or at an integrated DP or PROFIBUS interface, or at an integrated DP interface using the logical address of the module.
W#16#4C91	No	No, internal interface Yes, external interface	Module status information of a module attached to an external DP or PROFIBUS interface using the start address.
W#16#0D91	Yes Parameter adr1 changed No, external interface	Yes	Module status information of all modules in the specified rack/station
W#16#xy92	No Replacement: SSL-ID W#16#0x94	Yes	Rack/station status information Replace this system status list with the system status list with ID W#16#xy94 in PROFIBUS DP, as well.
W#16#0x94	Yes, internal interface No, external interface	Yes, internal interface No, external interface	Rack/station status information
W#16#0C96	Yes, internal interface No, external interface	Yes, internal interface No, external interface	Module status information of a submodule using the logical address of this submodule

SSL-ID	PROFINET IO	PROFIBUS DP	Applicability
W#16#0591	Yes Parameter adr1 changed	Yes	Module status information for the interfaces of a module
W#16#0696	Yes, internal interface No, external interface	No	Module status information of all submodules on an internal interface of a module using the logical address of the module, not possible for submodule 0 (= module)

Detailed information

For detailed descriptions of the individual system status lists, refer to Manual *System Software for S7-300/400 System and Standard Functions*.

17.4 Configuring with STEP 7

17.4.1 Rules for arranging fault-tolerant station components

The are additional rules for a fault-tolerant station, in addition to the rules that generally apply to the arrangement of modules in the S7-400:

- Insert the CPUs into the same slots.
- Redundantly used external DP master interfaces or communication modules must be inserted in the same slots in each case.
- Insert an external DP master interface for redundant DP master systems only in the central controllers and not in the expansion units.
- Redundantly used CPUs must be identical, which means they must have the same article number, product version and firmware version. It is not the marking on the front side that is decisive for the product version, but the revision of the "Hardware" component ("Module status" dialog mask) to be read using STEP 7.
- Redundantly used other modules must be identical, which means they must have the same article number, product version and - if available - firmware version.

Layout rules

- If there are not enough slots in the central controllers, you can increase the configuration of an H system with expansion units.
- A fault-tolerant station may contain up to 20 expansion units.
- Assign racks with even numbers only to central controller 0, and racks with odd numbers only to central controller 1.
- FMs and CPs can be operated only in racks 0 through 6.

- Pay attention to the rack numbers for operation of CPs for fault-tolerant communication in expansion units:
  The numbers must be directly sequential and begin with the even number, e.g., rack numbers 2 and 3, but not rack numbers 3 and 4.
- A rack number is also assigned for DP master no. 9 onwards if the central controller contains DP master modules. The number of possible expansion units is reduced as a result.

Compliance with the rules is monitored automatically by STEP 7 and considered accordingly during configuration.

Additional I/O expansion

For use of distributed I/O, you can connect a DP master system in each of the two subsystems. Connect a DP master system to the integrated interface of the CPU and others via external DP master systems.

Note

PROFIBUS DP and PROFINET together

You can use both PROFINET IO devices and PROFIBUS DP stations on a CPU 410.

Note

Fail-safe signal modules

If you want to operate fail-safe modules redundantly on the PNIO interface, you need the S7 F Systems optional package V6.1 SP1 or higher.

17.4.2 Configuring hardware

You can use the SIMATIC PCS 7 wizard to create AS bundle configurations.

Another way of achieving a redundant hardware configuration is to initially assemble **one** rack with all components to be implemented redundantly and to assign parameters to them. The entire rack must then be copied and inserted. You adjust the network parameters appropriately in the subsequent dialogs.

Specific aspects of the hardware configuration display

The redundant DP master system and PN/IO system are displayed by two lines close together to make them easy to identify.

17.4.3 Assigning parameters to modules in a fault-tolerant station

Procedure

Assign all parameters of the redundant components identically, with the exception of communication addresses.

The special case of CPUs

You can only set the CPU0 parameters (CPU on rack 0). Any values that you specify are automatically allocated to CPU1 (CPU on rack 1). You can set the following values for CPU1:

- Parameters of the DP interface (X1)
- Addresses of sync modules
- Parameters of the PROFINET IO interfaces

17.4.4 Recommendations for setting CPU parameters, fixed settings

Monitoring time for transferring parameters to modules

You specify this monitoring time on the "Startup" tab. It depends on the configuration of the fault-tolerant station. If the monitoring time is too short, the CPU enters the W#16#6547 event in the diagnostics buffer.

For some slaves (e.g., IM 153-2) these parameters are packed in system data blocks. The transmission time of the parameters depends on the following factors:

- Baud rate of the bus system (high baud rate => short transmission time)
- Size of the parameters and the system data blocks (long parameter => long transmission time)
- Load on the bus system (many slaves => slow transmission rate);
  Note: The bus load is at its peak during restart of the DP master, for example, following Power OFF/ON

Recommended setting (default setting of the CPU 410): 600 corresponds to 60 s.

Note

The fault-tolerant-specific CPU parameters, and thus also the monitoring times, are calculated automatically. The work memory allocation of all data blocks is based on a CPU-specific default value. If your fault-tolerant system does not link up, check the data memory allocation (HW Config > CPU Properties > H Parameters > Work memory used for all data blocks).

See also

Service and Support (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/)

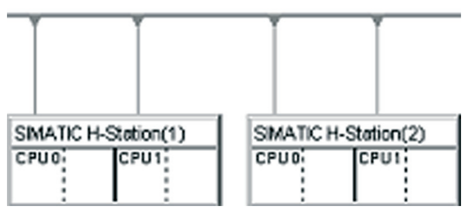
17.4.5 Networking configuration

The fault-tolerant S7 connection is a separate connection type of the "Configure Networks" application. It permits that the following communication peers can communicate with each other:

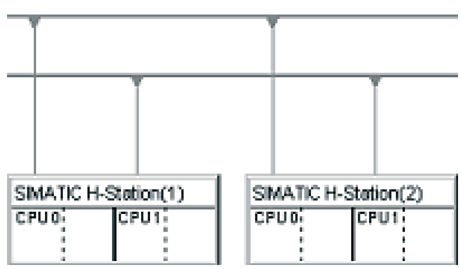
- S7–400 fault-tolerant station (with 2 fault-tolerant CPUs)->S7–400 fault-tolerant station (with 2 fault-tolerant CPUs)
- S7–400 station (with 1 fault-tolerant CPU)->S7–400 fault-tolerant station (with 2 fault-tolerant CPUs)
- S7–400 station (with 1 fault-tolerant CPU)->S7–400 station (with 1 fault-tolerant CPU)
- SIMATIC PC stations > S7–400 fault-tolerant station (with 2 fault-tolerant CPUs)

When this connection type is configured, the application automatically determines the number of possible subconnections:

- If two independent but identical subnets are available and they are suitable for a fault-tolerant S7 connection, two subconnections are used. In practice, they are usually electrical networks, one network connection in each subnet:



- If only one subnet is available, four subconnectors are used for a connection between two fault-tolerant stations. All network connections are located in this subnet:



Only the integrated PROFINET IO interfaces or only the CPs are used for subconnections within a fault-tolerant S7 connection. But multiple fault-tolerant stations in one subnet may have different interfaces; they only have to be identical within the station.

Downloading the network configuration into a fault-tolerant station

The complete network configuration can be downloaded into the fault-tolerant station in one operation. The same requirements that apply for downloads into standard stations must be met.

17.5 The STEP 7 user program

17.5.1 The user program

The rules of developing and programming the user program for the standard S7-400 system also apply to the S7-400H.

In terms of user program execution, the S7-400H behaves in exactly the same manner as a standard system. The integral synchronization functions of the operating system are executed automatically in the background. You do not need to consider these functions in your user program.

In redundant operation, the user programs are stored identically on both CPUs and are executed in event-synchronous mode.

However, we offer you several specific blocks for optimizing your user program, e.g. in order to improve its response to the extension of cycle times due to updates.

Specific blocks for S7–400H

In addition to the blocks supported both in the S7-400 and S7-400H systems, the S7-400H software provides further blocks which you can use to influence the redundancy functions.

You can react to redundancy errors of the S7-400H using the following organization blocks:

- OB 70, I/O redundancy errors
- OB 72, CPU redundancy errors

SFC 90 "H_CTRL" can be used to influence fault-tolerant systems as follows:

- You can disable interfacing in the master CPU.
- You can disable updating in the master CPU.
- You can remove, resume or immediately start a test component of the cyclic self-test.

Note

Required OBs

Always download these error OBs to the S7-400H CPU: OB 70, OB 72, OB 80, OB 82, OB 83, OB 85, OB 86, OB 87, OB 88, OB 121 and OB 122. If you do not download these OBs, the fault-tolerant system goes into STOP when an error occurs.

Additional information

For detailed information on programming the blocks listed above, refer to the *Programming with STEP 7* manual, and to the *System Software for S7-300/400; System and Standard Functions* Reference Manual.

17.6 Programming device functions in STEP 7

Display in SIMATIC Manager

In order to do justice to the special features of a fault-tolerant station, the way in which the system is visualized and edited in SIMATIC Manager differs from that of a S7-400 standard station as follows:

- In the offline view, the S7 program appears only under CPU0 of the fault-tolerant station. No S7 program is visible under CPU1.
- In the online view, the S7 program appears under both CPUs and can be selected in both locations.

Communication functions

For programming device (PG) functions that establish online connections (e.g., downloading charts), one of the two CPUs has to be selected even if the function affects the entire system over the redundant link.

- Data which is modified in one of the central processing units in redundant operation affect the other CPUs over the redundant link.
- Data which is modified when there is no redundant link (i.e. in single mode) initially affects only the processed CPU. The blocks are applied by the master CPU to the reserve CPU during the next link-up and update. Exception: No new blocks are applied after changing the configuration. Loading the blocks is then the responsibility of the user.

17.7 Communication services

17.7.1 Overview of communication services

Overview

Table 17-4 Communication services of the CPUs

Communication service	Functionality	Allocation of S7 connection resources	Via DP	Via PN/IE
PG communication	Commissioning, testing, diagnostics	Yes	Yes	Yes
OP communication	Operator control and monitoring	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 communication	Data exchange via configured connections	Yes	Yes	Yes
Routing of PG functions	For example, testing, diagnostics beyond network boundaries	Yes	Yes	Yes
PROFIBUS DP	Data exchange between master and slave	No	Yes	No

Communication service	Functionality	Allocation of S7 connection resources	Via DP	Via PN/IE
PROFINET IO	Data exchange between I/O controllers and I/O devices	No	No	Yes
SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)	Standard protocol for network diagnostics and parameter assignment	No	No	Yes
Open communication over TCP/IP	Data exchange over Industrial Ethernet with TCP/IP protocol (with loadable FBs)	Yes	No	Yes
Open communication over ISO on TCP	Data exchange over Industrial Ethernet with ISO on TCP protocol (with loadable FBs)	Yes	No	Yes
Open communication over UDP	Data exchange over Industrial Ethernet with UDP protocol (with loadable FBs)	Yes	No	Yes
Data record routing	For example, parameter assignment and diagnostics of field devices on PROFIBUS DP with PDM.	Yes	Yes	Yes

Note

Communication via an PNIO interface

If you want to use an PNIO interface of the module for communication in system operation, you must also network this in Step 7 / HW Config / NetPro.

Availability of connection resources

Table 17-5 Availability of connection resources

CPU	Total number of connection resources	Can be used for S7-H connections	Reserved from the total number for	
			PG communication	OP communication
CPU 410-5H	120	62	1	1

Free S7 connections can be used for any of the above communication services.

Note

Communication service via the PROFIBUS DP interface

A fixed default timeout of 40 s is specified for communication services using S7 connection resources. If you operate those communication services via a PROFIBUS DP interface at a low baud rate, operation in configurations with a Ttr (Target Rotation Time) < 20 s is ensured.

17.7.2 PG communication

Properties

Programming device communication is used to exchange data between engineering stations (PG, PC, for example) and SIMATIC modules which are capable of communication. This service is available via PROFIBUS and Industrial Ethernet subnets. Routing between subnets is also supported.

You can use the programming device communication for the following actions:

- Loading programs and configuration data
- Performing tests
- Evaluating diagnostic information

These functions are integrated in the operating system of SIMATIC S7 modules.

A CPU can maintain several simultaneous online connections to one or multiple programming devices.

17.7.3 OP communication

Properties

OP communication is used to exchange data between HMI stations, such as WinCC, OP, TP and SIMATIC modules which are capable of communication. This service is available via PROFIBUS and Industrial Ethernet subnets.

You can use the OP communication for operator control, monitoring and alarms. These functions are integrated in the operating system of SIMATIC S7 modules. A CPU can maintain several simultaneous connections to one or several OPs.

17.7.4 S7 communication

Properties

A CPU can always act as a server or client in S7 Communication. A connection is configured permanently. The following connections are possible:

- One-sided configured connections (for PUT/GET only)
- Two-side configured connections (for USEND, URCV, BSEND, BRCV, PUT, GET)

You can use the S7 communication via integrated PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET IO interfaces. If required, S7 communication can be used via additional communication processors: CP 443-1 for Industrial Ethernet or CP 443-5 for PROFIBUS.

The S7-400 features integrated S7 communication services that allow the user program in the controller to initiate reading and writing of data. The S7 communication functions are called in the user program using SFBs. These functions are independent of specific networks, allowing you to program S7 communication via PROFINET, Industrial Ethernet, or PROFIBUS.

S7 communication services provide the following options:

- During system configuration, you configure the connections used by the S7 communication. These connections remain configured until you download a new configuration.
- You can establish several connections to the same partner. The number of communication partners accessible at any time is restricted to the number of connection resources available.
- You can configure fault-tolerant S7 connections using the integrated PROFINET IO interface.

Note

Downloading the connection configuration during operation

When you load a modified connection configuration during operation, connections which have been set up which are not affected by changes in the connection configuration may also be aborted.

S7 communication allows you to transfer a block of up to 64 Kbytes per call to the SFB. An S7-400 transfers a maximum of 4 tags per block call.

SFBs for S7 Communication

The following SFBs are integrated in the operating system of the S7-400 CPUs:

Table 17-6 SFBs for S7 Communication

Block	Block name	Brief description
SFB 8 SFB 9	USEND URCV	Send data to a remote partner SFB of type "URCV" Receive asynchronous data from a remote partner SFB of type "USEND"
SFB 12 SFB 13	BSEND BRCV	Send data to a remote partner SFB of type "BRCV" Receive data from a remote partner SFB of type "BSEND" With this data transfer, a larger amount of data can be transported between the communication partners than is possible with all other communications SFBs for the configured S7 connections.
SFB 14	GET	Read data from a remote CPU
SFB 15	PUT	Write data to a remote CPU
SFB 16	PRINT	Send data via a CP 441 to a printer
SFB 19	START	Carry out a reboot (warm restart) or cold restart in a remote station
SFB 20	STOP	Set a remote station to STOP operating state
SFB 22	STATUS	Query the device status of a remote partner
SFB 23	USTATUS	Uncoordinated receiving of a remote device status

Integration into STEP 7

S7 communication offers communication functions through configured S7 connections. You use STEP 7 to configure the connections.

S7 connections with an S7-400 are established when the connection data is downloaded.

17.7.5 S7 routing

Properties

You can access your S7 stations beyond subnet boundaries using the programming device / PC. You can use them for the following actions:

- Downloading user programs
- Downloading a hardware configurations
- Performing test and diagnostic functions

Requirements

- The network configuration does not exceed project limits.
- The modules have loaded the configuration data containing the latest "knowledge" of the entire network configuration of the project.
  Reason: All modules connected to the network gateway must receive routing information which defines the paths to other subnets.
- In your network configuration, the PG/PC you want to use to set up a connection via gateway must be assigned to the network to which it is physically connected.
- The CPU must be configured as the master.

S7 routing gateways: PN - DP

Gateways between subnets are routed in a SIMATIC station that is equipped with interfaces to the respective subnets. The following figure shows CPU 1 (DP master) acting as router for subnets 1 and 2.

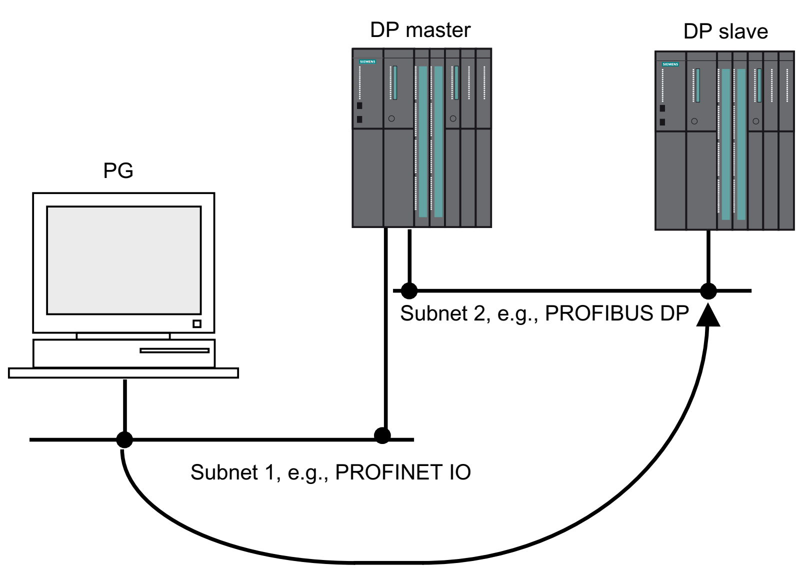


Figure 17-2 S7 routing

S7 routing gateways: PROFINET IO - DP - PROFINET IO

The following figure shows the access from PROFINET IO to PROFIBUS to PROFINET IO. CPU 1 is the router between subnet 1 and subnet 2; CPU 2 is the router between subnet 2 and subnet 3.

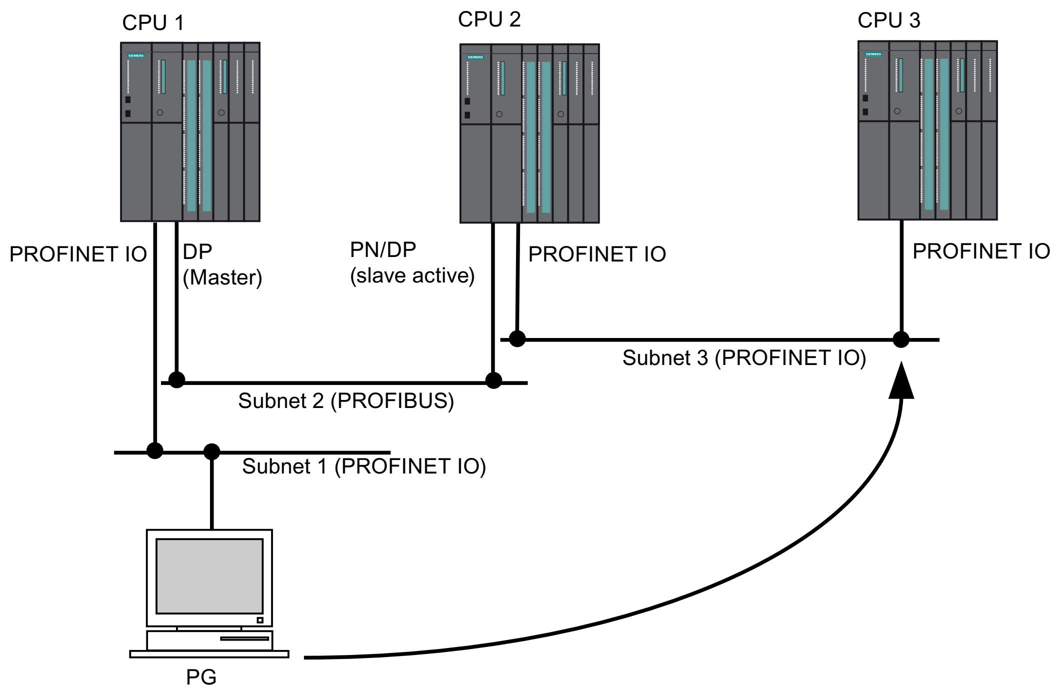


Figure 17-3 S7 routing gateways: PROFINET IO - DP - PROFINET IO

S7 routing: TeleService application example

The following figure shows an application example of the remote maintenance of an S7 station using a PG. The connection to other subnets is set up via modem.

The bottom of the figure shows how this can be configured in STEP 7.

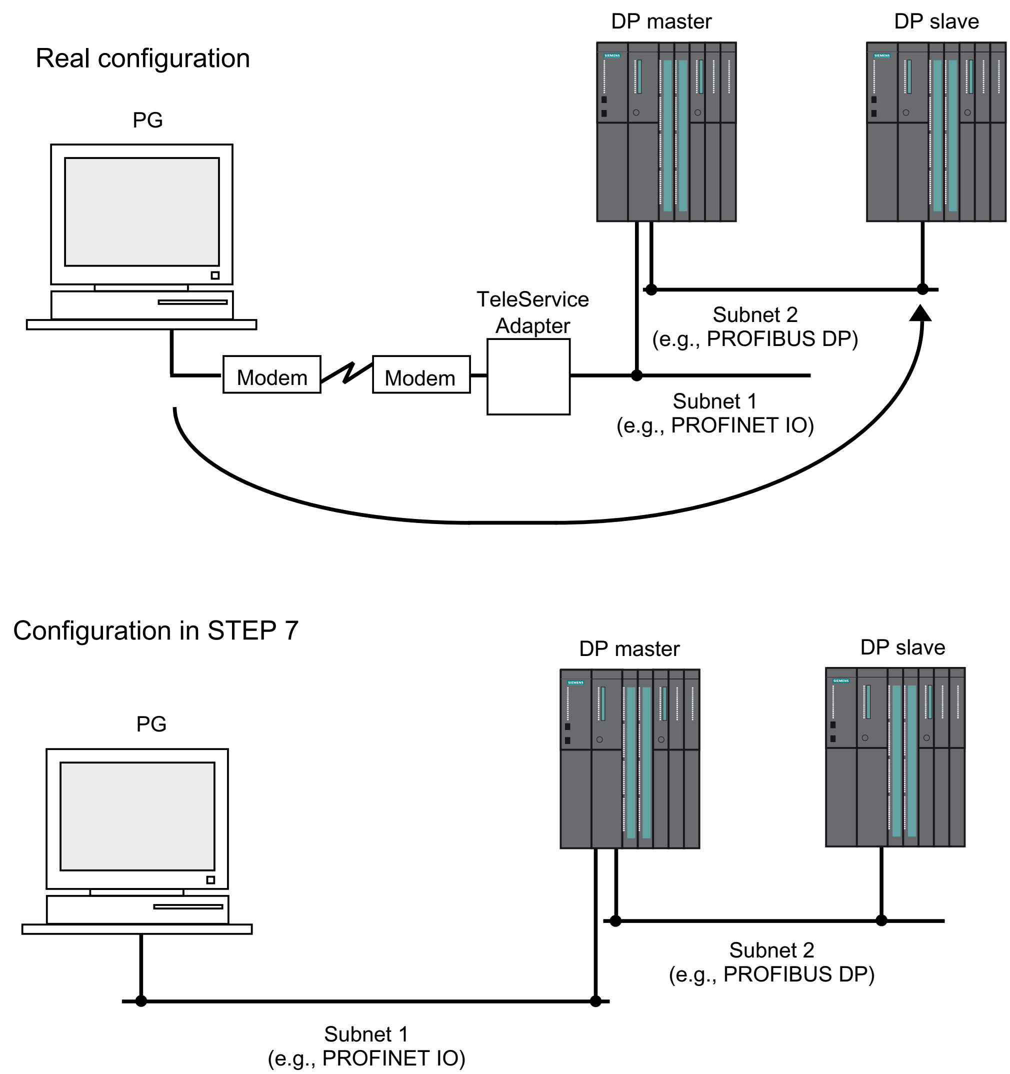


Figure 17-4 S7 routing: TeleService application example

Reference

- Further information on configuration with STEP 7 can be found in Manual Configuring hardware and communication connections with STEP 7 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/us/en/view/109751824).
- More basic information is available in Manual Communication with SIMATIC (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/1254686).
- For more information about the TeleService adapter, refer to Manual TS Adapter (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/20983182)

See also

Instructions List (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/44395684)

System and standard functions (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/44240604)

17.7.6 Data set routing

Routing and data set routing

Routing is the transfer of data beyond network boundaries. You can send information from a transmitter to a receiver across several networks.
Data set routing is an expansion of S7 routing and is used, for example, in SIMATIC PDM. The data sent through data record routing include the parameter assignments of the participating communication devices and device-specific information (for example, setpoint values, limit values, etc.). The structure of the destination address for data set routing depends on the data content, in other words, it is determined by the device for which the data is intended.
The field device itself does not have to support data set routing, since these devices do not forward the received information.

Data set routing

The following figure shows the engineering station accessing a variety of field devices. The engineering station is connected to the CPU via Industrial Ethernet in this scenario. The CPU communicates with the field devices via the PROFIBUS.

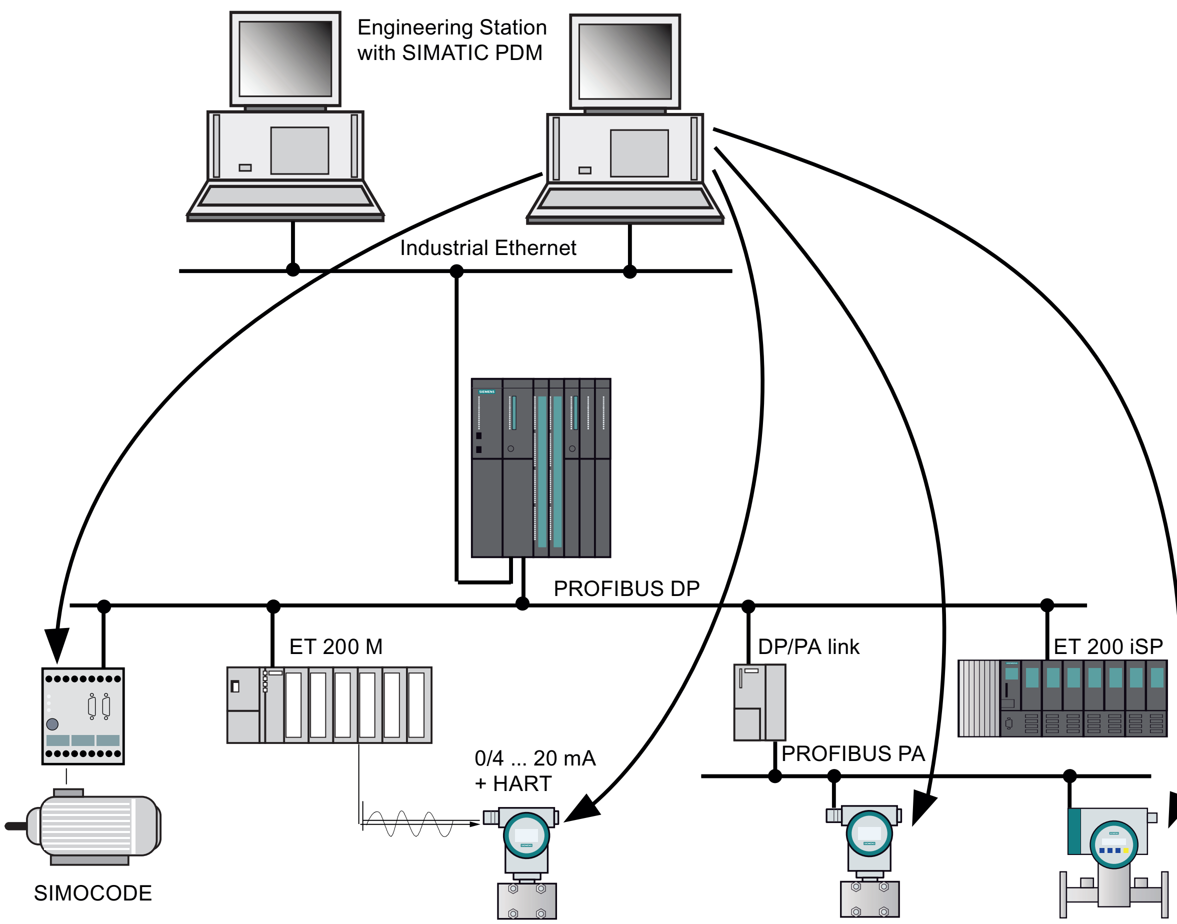


Figure 17-5 Data set routing

See also

For more information on SIMATIC PDM, refer to Manual *The Process Device Manager*.

17.7.7 SNMP network protocol

Properties

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is the standardized protocol for diagnostics of the Ethernet network infrastructure. In the office setting and in automation engineering, devices from many different manufacturers support SNMP on the Ethernet. SNMP-based applications can be operated on the same network in parallel to applications with PROFINET IO.

Configuration of the SNMP OPC server is integrated in the STEP 7 Hardware Configuration application. Already configured S7 modules from the STEP 7 project can be transferred directly. As an alternative to STEP 7, you can also perform the configuration with the NCM PC (included on the SIMATIC NET CD). All Ethernet devices can be detected by means of their IP address and/or the SNMP protocol (SNMP V1) and transferred to the configuration.

Use the profile MIB_II_V10.

SNMP-based applications can be operated on the same network parallel to applications with PROFINET IO.

Note

MAC addresses

During SNMP diagnostics, the following MAC addresses are shown for the ifPhysAddress parameter:

Interface 1 (PN interface) = MAC address (specified on the front panel of the CPU)

Interface 2 (port 1) = MAC address + 1

Interface 3 (port 2) = MAC address + 2

Diagnostics with SNMP OPC Server in SIMATIC NET

The SNMP OPC server software enables diagnostics and parameter assignment of any SNMP devices. The OPC server uses the SNMP protocol to perform data exchange with SNMP devices.

All information can be integrated in OPC-compatible systems, such as the WinCC HMI system. This enables process and network diagnostics to be combined in the HMI system.

Reference

For further information on the SNMP communication service and diagnostics with SNMP, refer to the *PROFINET System Description*.

17.7.8 Open Communication Via Industrial Ethernet

Functionality

The following services are available for open IE communication:

- Connection-oriented protocols:
  Prior to data transmission connection-oriented protocols establish a logical connection to the communication partner and close this again, if necessary, after transmission is complete. Connection-oriented protocols are used when security is especially important in data transmission. A physical cable can generally accommodate several logical connections. The maximum job length is 32 KB.
  The following connection-oriented protocols are supported for the FBs for open IE communication:
  - TCP to RFC 793
  - ISO on TCP according to RFC 1006

    Note

    ISOonTCP

    For data communication with third-party systems via RFC1006, the connection partner must adhere to the maximum TPDU size (TPDU = Transfer Protocol Data Unit) negotiated in the ISOonTCP connection establishment.

- Connectionless protocols:
  Connectionless protocols operate without a logical connection. There is also no establishing or terminating a connection to remote partner. Connectionless protocols transfer the data unacknowledged and thus unsecured to the remote partner. The maximum message frame length is 1472 bytes.
  The following connectionless protocols are supported for the FBs for open communication via Industrial Ethernet:
  - UDP according to RFC 768
    The single-cast method is supported.

How to use open IE communication

You can exchange data with other communication partners via the user program. The following FBs and UDTs are available for this in the "Standard Library" of STEP 7 under "Communication Blocks".

- Connection-oriented protocols: TCP, ISO on TCP
  - FB 63 "TSEND" for sending data
  - FB 64 "TRCV" for receiving data
  - FB 65 "TCON", for connection setup
  - FB 66 "TDISCON", for disconnecting
  - UDT 65 "TCON_PAR" with the data structure for the configuration of the connection
- Connectionless protocol: UDP
  - FB 67 "TUSEND" for sending data
  - FB 68 "TURCV" for receiving data
  - FB 65 "TCON" for setting up the local communication access point
  - FB 66 "TDISCON" for resolving the local communication access point
  - UDT 65 "TCON_PAR" with the data structure for configuring the local communication access point
  - UDT 66 "TCON_ADR" with the data structure of the addressing parameters of the remote partner

Data blocks for parameter assignment

- Data blocks for parameter assignment of communication connections for TCP and ISO on TCP
  In order to assign parameters for the communication connections for TCP and ISO on TCP, you must create a DB that contains the data structure from UDT 65 "TCON_PAR". This data structure contains all parameters you need to set up the connection. For each connection you need this type of data structure, which you can also group within a global data range.
  Connection parameter CONNECT of FB 65 "TCON" reports the address of the corresponding connection description to the user program (for example, P#DB100.DBX0.0 byte 64).
- Data blocks for the configuration the local UDP communication access point
  To assign parameters to the local communication access point, create a DB containing the data structure from the UDT 65 "TCON_PAR". This data structure contains the necessary parameters you need to set up the connection between the user program and the communication layer of the operating system. You also need UDT 66 "TCON_ADDR" for UDP. You can also store this UDT in the DB .
  The CONNECT parameter of the FB 65 "TCON" contains a reference to the address of the corresponding connection description (for example, P#DB100.DBX0.0 Byte 64).

Job lengths and parameters for the different types of connection

Table 17-7 Job lengths and "local_device_id" parameter

Protocol type	CPU 410-5H	CPU 410-5H with CP 443-1
TCP	32 KB	-
ISO on TCP	32 KB	1452 bytes
UDP	1472 bytes	-
"local_device_id" parameter for the connection description		
Dev. ID	16#5 for CPU 0, interface x5 16#15 for CPU1, interface x5 16#8 for CPU 0, interface x8 16#18 for CPU1, interface x8	16#0 for CPU 0 16#10 for CPU1

Establishing a communication connection

- Use with TCP and ISO on TCP
  Both communication partners call FB 65 "TCON" to establish the connection. In the configuration, you specify which communication partner activates the connection, and which one responds to the request with a passive connection. To determine the number of possible connections, refer to your CPU's technical specifications.
  The CPU automatically monitors and holds the active connection.
  If the connection is broken, for example by line interruption or by the remote communication partner, the active partner tries to reestablish the connection.
  If a subsystem of a fault-tolerance system is switched to STOP, the system retains the connections through the CPU switched to STOP and establishes them again after link-up. You do not have to call FB 65 "TCON" again.
  When FB 66 "TDISCON" is called or the CPU is in STOP operating state, an existing connection will be terminated. To reestablish the connection you must call FB65 "TCON" again.
- Use with UDP
  Both communication partners call FB 65 "TCON" to set up their local communication access point. This establishes a connection between the user program and operating system's communication layer. No connection is established to the remote partner.
  The local access point is used to send and receive UDP message frames.

Terminating a communication connection

- Use with TCP and ISO on TCP
  FB 66 "TDISCON" disconnects the communication connection between the CPU and a communication partner.
- Use with UDP
  FB 66 "TDISCON" disconnects the local communication access point. This means that the connection between the user program and communication layer of the operating system is terminated.

Options for terminating the communication connection

The following events are available for terminating communication connections:

- You program the termination of the communication connection with FB 66 "TDISCON".
- The CPU state changes from RUN to STOP.
- At POWER OFF / POWER ON

Response in the fault-tolerance system

All connections are terminated when the entire fault-tolerance system switches to STOP. If one CPU in the system is stopped, that CPU's connections are canceled but retained by the fault-tolerant system. Connection establishment with FB 66 "TDISCON" for connections available in the system runs asynchronously to program processing (status 7001,7002..7002, 0).

Connection diagnostics

In Step 7, you can read detailed information on the configured connections by selecting "Module state -> Communication -> Open communication over Industrial Ethernet".

Reference

For detailed information on the blocks described above, refer to the *STEP 7 Online Help*.

17.8 Basics and terminology of fault-tolerant communication

Overview

When more stringent requirements for overall plant availability exist, it is necessary to increase the reliability of the communication, i.e., by configuring the communication redundantly as well.

Below you will find an overview of the fundamentals and basic concepts which you ought to know with regard to using fault-tolerant communications.

Redundant communication system

The availability of the communication system can be increased by duplicating subcomponents, duplicating all bus components, or using a fiber-optic ring.

Monitoring and synchronization mechanisms ensure that standby components take over communication if one components fails.

A redundant communication system is required for the user of fault-tolerant S7 connections.

Fault-tolerant communication

Fault-tolerant communication is the use of S7 communication SFBs over fault-tolerance S7 connections.

A fault-tolerant S7 connection consists of at least two and a maximum of four partial connections depending on networking. Two partial connections are established for fault-tolerant communication; the two others are configuration standbys.

Fault-tolerant S7 connections require a redundant communication system.

Redundancy nodes

Redundancy nodes represent extreme reliability of communication between two fault-tolerant systems. A system with multi-channel components is represented by redundancy nodes. Redundancy nodes are independent when the failure of a component within the node does not result in any reliability impairment in other nodes.

Even with fault-tolerant communication, only single errors/faults can be tolerated. If more than one error occurs between two communication end points, communication can no longer be guaranteed.

Connection (S7 connection)

A connection represents the logical assignment of two communication peers for executing a communication service. Every connection has two end points containing the information required for addressing the communication peer as well as other attributes for establishing the connection.

An S7 connection is the communication connection between two standard CPUs or between a standard CPU and a CPU of a fault-tolerant system.

Unlike a fault-tolerant S7 connection, which contains at least two partial connections, an S7 connection does only consist of one connection. If that connection fails, communication is terminated.

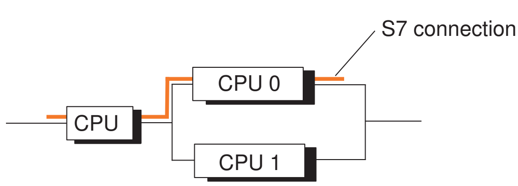


Figure 17-6 Example of an S7 connection

Note

"Connection" in this manual refers in general to a "configured S7 connection". For other types of connection, refer to Manuals *SIMATIC NET NCM S7 for PROFIBUS* and *SIMATIC NET NCM S7 for Industrial Ethernet*.

Fault-tolerant S7 connections

The requirement for higher availability with communication components (for example CPs and buses) means that redundant communication connections are necessary between the systems involved.

Unlike an S7 connection, a fault-tolerant S7 connection consists of at least two subordinate partial connections. For the user program, configuration and connection diagnostics, a fault-tolerant S7 connection and its subordinate partial connections are represented by precisely one ID (like an S7 connection). Depending on the configuration, it can consist of a maximum of four subconnections. To maintain communication in the event of an error, two of the four subconnections are always connected (active) at any given time. The number of subconnections depends on the possible alternative paths (see figure below) and is determined automatically. Within an S7-H connection, only subconnections over CP or over the integrated CPU interface are used in the configuration.

The following examples and the possible configurations in STEP 7 are based on a maximum of two subnets and a maximum of 4 CPs in the redundant fault-tolerant system. Configurations with a higher number of CPs or networks are not supported in STEP 7.

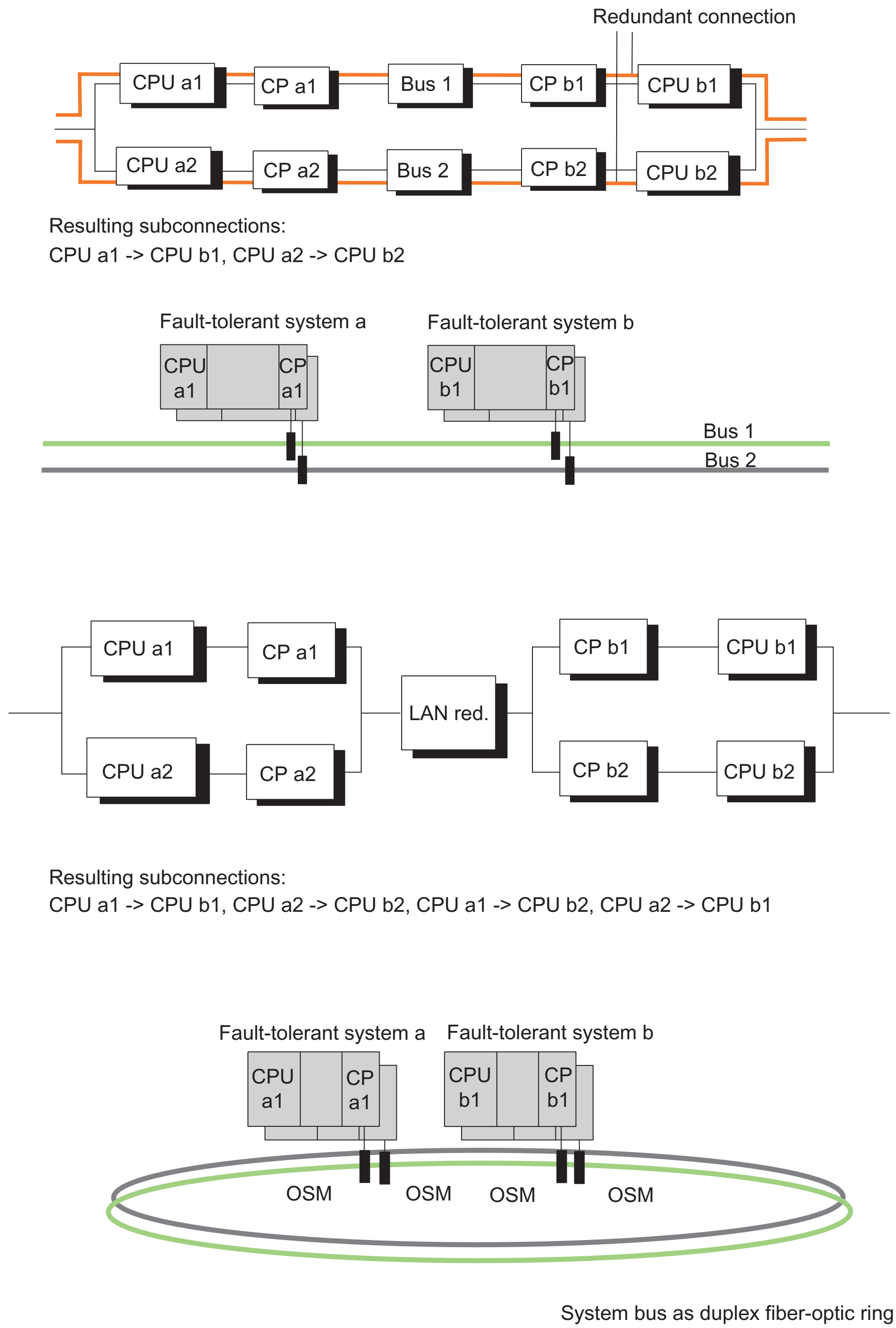


Figure 17-7 Example that shows that the number of resulting partial connections depends on the configuration

If the active subconnection fails, the already established second subconnection automatically takes over communication.

Resource requirements for fault-tolerant S7 connections

The H-CPU enables the operation of 62 (see Technical specifications) fault-tolerant S7 connections. Each connection needs a connection resource on the CPU; subconnections do not need any additional connection resources. On the CP, on the other hand, each subconnection needs a connection resource.

Note

If you have configured multiple fault-tolerant S7 connections for an H station, it may take a considerable time for them to be established. If the configured maximum communication delay was set too short, link-up and updating is canceled and the redundant system state is no longer achieved (see Chapter Time monitoring (Page 120)).

17.9 Usable networks

Your choice of the physical transmission medium depends on the required expansion, targeted fault tolerance, and transfer rate. The following bus systems are used for communication with fault-tolerant systems:

- Industrial Ethernet
- PROFIBUS

Additional information on the networks that can be used is available in the relevant SIMATIC NET documentation on PROFIBUS and Ethernet.

17.10 Communication via S7 connections

Communication with standard systems

There is no fault-tolerant communication between a fault-tolerant system and a standard CPU. The following examples illustrate the actual availability of the communicating systems.

Configuration

S7 connections are configured in STEP 7.

Programming

If S7 communication is used on a fault-tolerant system, all communication functions can be used for this.

The communication SFBs are used in STEP 7 to program communication.

Note

The START and STOP communication functions act on exactly one CPU or on all CPUs of the fault-tolerant system. More detailed information is available in Reference Manual *System Software for S7-300/400 System and Standard Functions*.

Note

Downloading the connection configuration during operation

If you download a connection configuration during operation, established connections may be terminated.

17.10.1 Communication via S7 connections - one-sided mode

Availability

Availability for communication between a fault-tolerant system and a standard system is also increased by using a redundant plant bus instead of a single bus (see figure below).

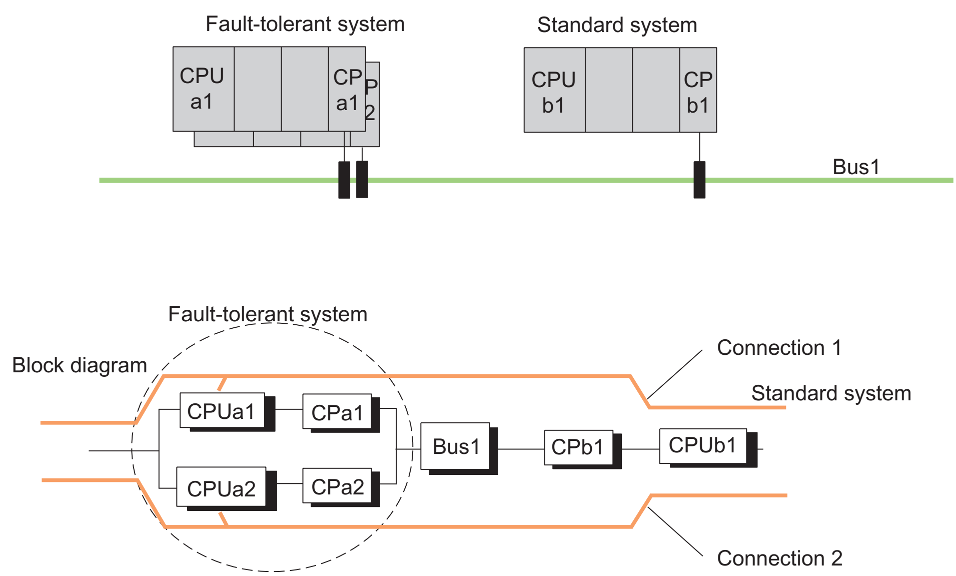


Figure 17-8 Example of linking standard and fault-tolerant systems in a simple bus system

With this configuration and redundant operation, the fault-tolerant system is connected to the standard system via bus1. This applies no matter which CPU is the master CPU.

For linked fault-tolerant and standard systems, the availability of communication cannot be improved by means of a dual electrical bus system. To be able to use the second bus system as redundancy, a second S7 connection must be used and managed accordingly in the user program (see next figure).

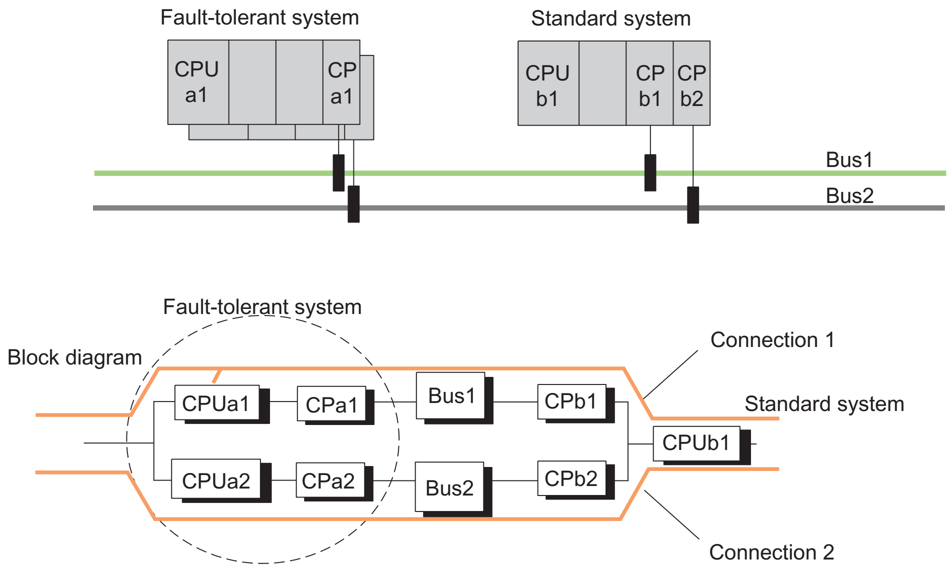


Figure 17-9 Example of linking standard and fault-tolerant systems in a redundant bus system

If the plant bus is configured as a duplex fiber-optic ring, the communication of the systems involved is maintained if a break of the two-fiber fiber-optic cable occurs. The systems then communicate as if they were connected to a bus system (linear structure); see following figure.

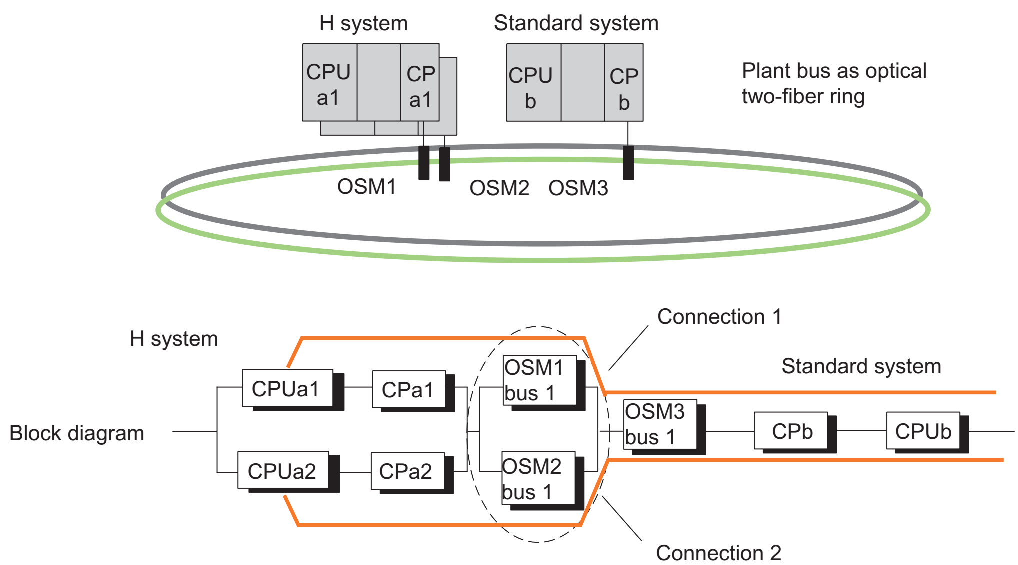


Figure 17-10 Example of linking of standard and fault-tolerant systems in a redundant ring

Response to failure

Duplex fiber-optic ring and bus system

S7 connections are used here in which the connection ends on the CPU of the subsystem, here CPUa1. For this reason, an error in the fault-tolerant system, e.g., CPUa1 or CPa1, as well as an error in system b, e.g., CP b, will result in a total failure of the communication between the two systems involved. This can be seen in the preceding figures.

There are no bus system-specific differences in the response to failure.

Linking standard and fault-tolerant systems

Driver block "S7H4_BSR": You can link a fault-tolerant system to an S7-400 / S7-300 using the "S7H4_BSR" driver block. For more information, contact Siemens by e–mail: function.blocks.industry @siemens.com

Alternative: SFB 15 "PUT" and SFB 14 "GET" in the fault-tolerant system: As an alternative, use two SFB 15 "PUT" blocks over two standard connections. First call the first block. If there was no error message when the block executed, the transmission is considered to have been successful. If there was an error message, the data transmission is repeated via the second block. If a connection cancelation is detected later, the data is also transferred again to exclude possible information losses. You can use the same method with an SFB 14 "GET".

If possible, use the mechanisms of S7 communication for communication.

17.10.2 Communication via redundant S7 connections

Availability

Availability compared to using a single bus (see figure below) can be enhanced by using a redundant system bus and two separate CPs in a standard system.

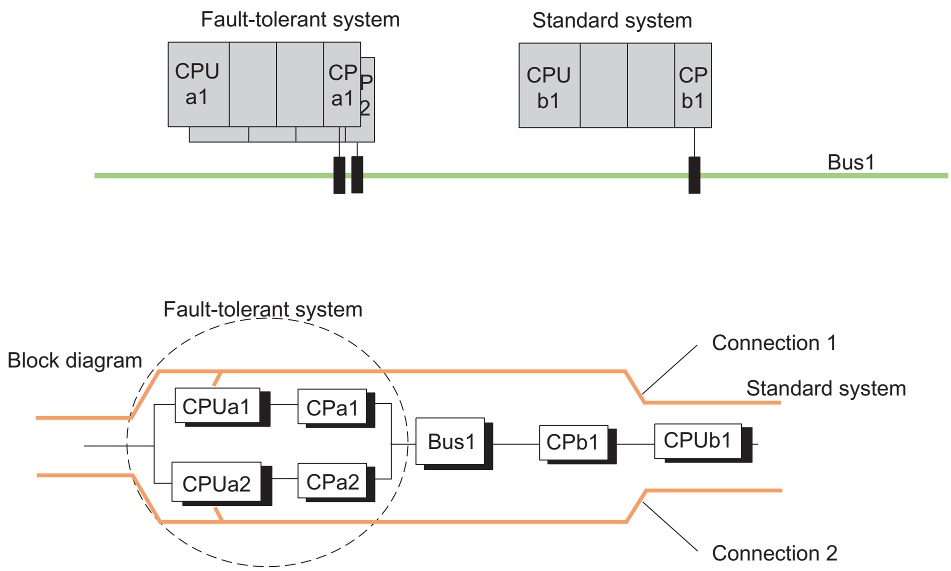


Figure 17-11 Example of linking standard and fault-tolerant systems in a single bus system

Redundant communication can also be operated with standard connections. For this two separate S7 connections must be configured in the program in order to implement connection redundancy. In the user program, both connections require the implementation of monitoring functions in order to allow the detection of failures and to change over to the standby connection.

The following figure shows such a configuration.

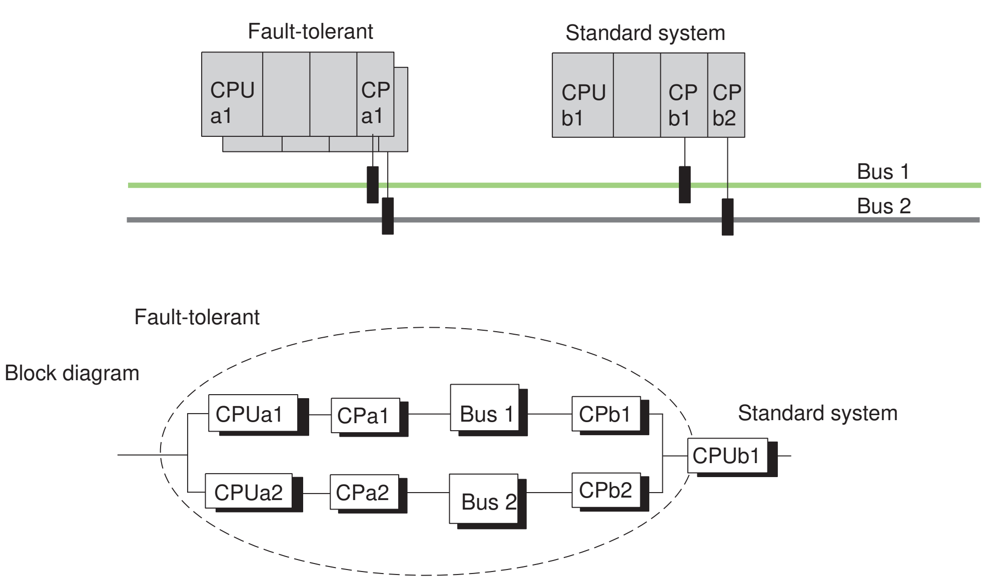


Figure 17-12 Example of redundancy with fault-tolerant systems and a redundant bus system with redundant standard connections

Response to failure

Double errors in the fault-tolerant system (i.e., CPUa1 and CPa 2) or in the standard system (CPb1 and CPb2), and single errors in the standard system (CPUb1) lead to a total failure of communication between the systems involved (see previous figure).

17.10.3 Communication via point-to-point CP on the ET 200M

Connection via ET 200M

Links from fault-tolerant systems to single-channel systems are often possible only by way of point-to-point connections, as many systems offer no other connection options.

In order to make the data of a single-channel system available to CPUs of the fault-tolerant system as well, the point-to-point CP, i.e., CP 341, must be installed in a distributed rack along with two IM 153-2 modules.

Configuring connections

Redundant connections between the point-to-point CP and the fault-tolerant system are not necessary.

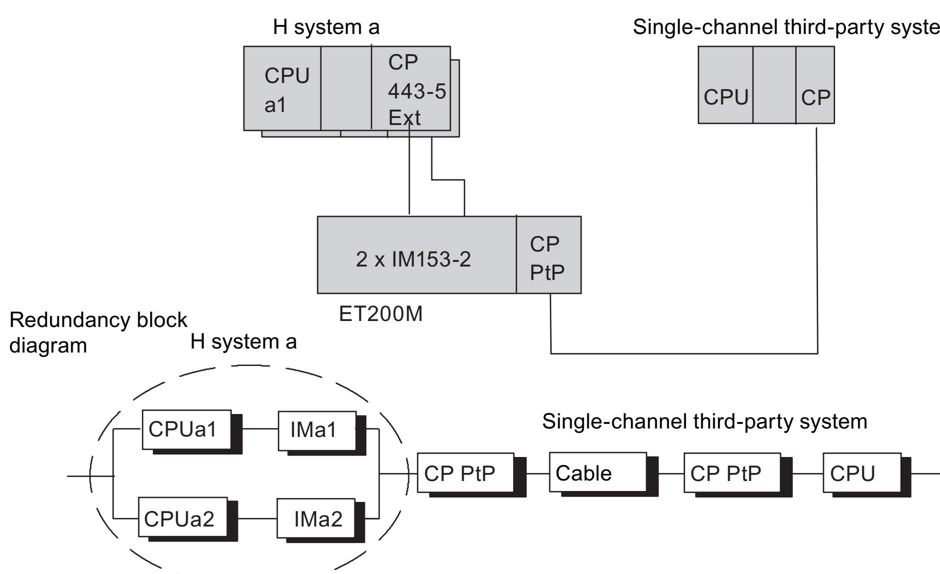


Figure 17-13 Example of connecting a fault-tolerant system to a single-channel third-party system via switched PROFIBUS DP

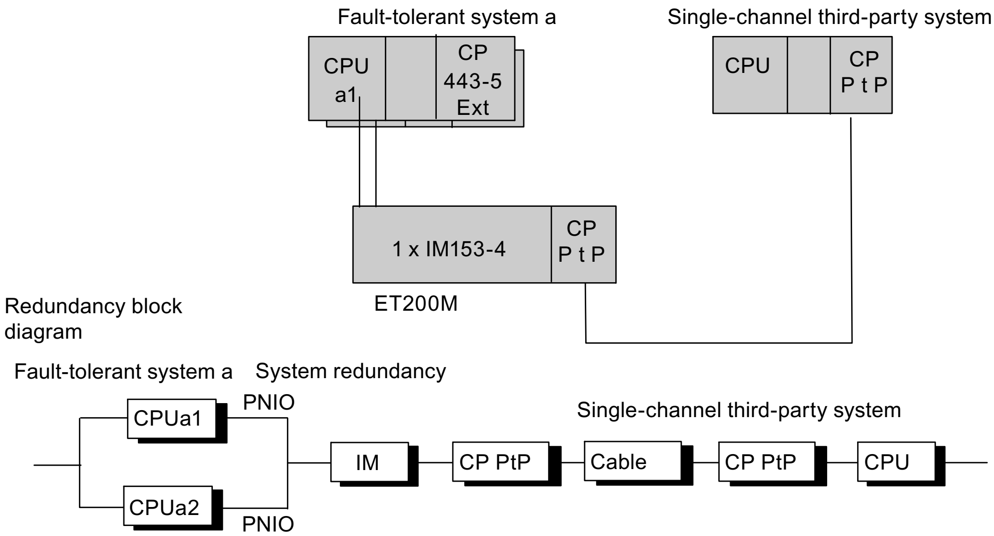


Figure 17-14 Example of connecting a fault-tolerant system to a single-channel third-party system via PROFINET IO with system redundancy

Response to failure

Double errors in the fault-tolerant system (i.e., CPUa1 and IM 153) and a single fault in the third-party system lead to a total failure of communication between the systems involved. This can be seen in the previous figure.

The point-to-point CP can also be inserted centrally in "Fault-tolerant system a". However, in this configuration even the failure of the CPU, for example, will cause a total failure of communication.

17.10.4 Custom connection to single-channel systems

Connection via PC as gateway

Fault-tolerant systems and single-channel systems can also be via a gateway (no connection redundancy). The gateway is connected to the system bus by one or two CPs, depending on availability requirements. Fault-tolerant connections can be configured between the gateway and the fault-tolerant systems. The gateway allows you to link any type of single-channel system (e.g., TCP/IP with a manufacturer-specific protocol).

A user-programmed software instance in the gateway implements the single-channel transition to the fault-tolerant systems, and so allows any single-channel systems to be linked to a fault-tolerant system.

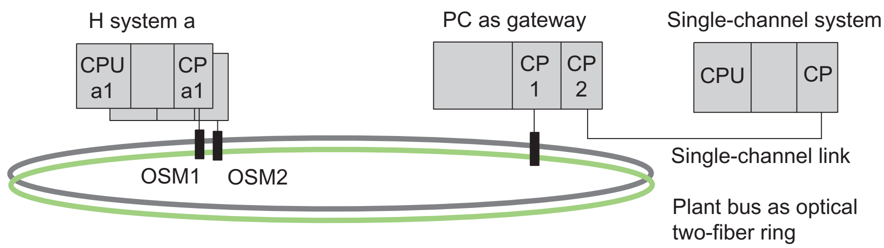
Configuring connections

Redundant connections between the gateway CP and the single-channel system are not required.

The gateway CP is located on a PC system which has fault-tolerant connections to the fault-tolerant system.

To configure fault-tolerant S7 connections between fault-tolerant system A and the gateway, you first need to install S7-REDCONNECT on the gateway. The functions for preparing data for their transfer via the single-channel link must be implemented in the user program.

For additional information, refer to the "*Industrial Communications IK10*" Catalog.



Redundancy block diagram

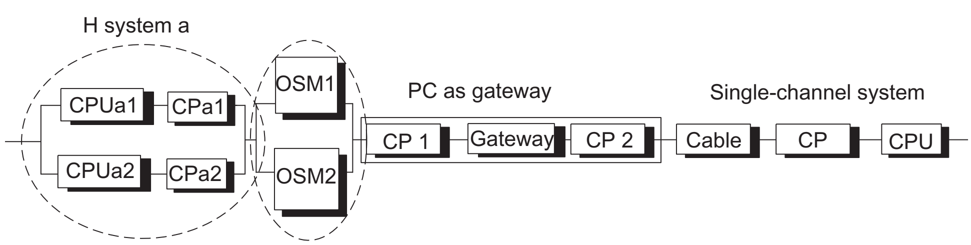


Figure 17-15 Example of linking a fault-tolerant system to a single-channel third-party system

17.11 Communication via fault-tolerant S7 connections

Availability of communicating systems

Fault-tolerant communication expands the overall SIMATIC system by additional, redundant communication components such as CPs and bus cables. To illustrate the actual availability of communicating systems when using an optical or electrical network, a description is given below of the possibilities for communication redundancy.

Requirement

The essential requirement for the configuration of fault-tolerant connections with STEP 7 is a configured hardware installation.

The hardware configuration in both subsystems of a fault-tolerant system **must** be identical. This applies in particular to the slots.

Depending on the network used, CPs can be used for fault-tolerant and fail-safe communication, see Appendix Function and communication modules that can be used in a redundant configuration (Page 367)

Industrial Ethernet with ISO protocol or PROFIBUS without distributed I/O and ISO on TCP is supported. Fault-tolerant S7 connections via Industrial Ethernet with ISO on TCP are supported by the integrated PN interfaces and corresponding CPs. You require a suitable CP for fault-tolerant S7 connections via Industrial Ethernet with ISO protocol or via PROFIBUS. These connections are not possible via the internal PROFIBUS-DP interface.

Only Industrial Ethernet is supported for connecting to PC stations using fault-tolerant S7 connections. To be able to use fault-tolerant S7 connections between a fault-tolerant system and a PC, you must install the "S7-REDCONNECT" software package on the PC. The software is part of the SIMATIC Net CD. As of version 8.1.1, communication over ISO-on-TCP is also supported. Please refer to the product information on the SIMATIC NET PC software to learn more about the CPs you can use at the PC end.

Communication combinations

The following table shows the possible combinations of fault-tolerant connections via Industrial Ethernet.

Local connection end point	**Local network connection**	**Used network protocol**	**Remote network connection**		**Remote connection end point**	
CPU 410	CPU-PN interface CP443-1 (EX30) CP443-1 (EX30)	TCP TCP TCP	CPU-PN interface CPU-PN interface CP443-1 (EX30)	TCP TCP TCP	CPU 410 CPU 41xH V6/ CPU 410 CPU 41xH V4.5 and higher/CPU 410	S7 fault tolerant connection via ISOonTCP
CPU 410	CP443-1 (EX30)	ISO	CP443-1	ISO	CPU 41xH /CPU 410	S7 fault tolerant connection via ISO
PC station with Simatic Net CD	PC station with Simatic Net CD CP1613/1623/1628, V8.1.1 or higher	TCP TCP	CPU-PN interface CP443-1 (EX30)	TCP TCP	CPU 41xH V6/ CPU 410 CPU 41xH V4.5 and higher/CPU 410	S7 fault tolerant connection via ISOonTCP
PC station with Simatic Net CD	for example CP1623 with Simatic Net, V8.1.2 or higher	ISO	CP443-1	ISO	CPU 41xH /CPU 410	S7 fault tolerant connection via ISO
PC station with Simatic Net CD	for example CP1623 with Simatic Net up to V7.x	ISO	CP443-1	ISO	CPU 41xH /CPU 410	S7 fault tolerant connection via ISO

Configuration

The availability of the system, including the communication, is set during configuration. Refer to the STEP 7 documentation to find out how to configure connections.

Only S7 communication is used for fault-tolerant S7 connections. To set this up, open the "New Connection" dialog box, then select "S7 Connection Fault-Tolerant" as the type.

The number of required redundant subconnections is determined by STEP 7 as a function of the redundancy nodes. Up to four redundant connections can be generated, if supported by the network. Higher redundancy cannot be achieved even by using more CPs.

In the "Properties - Connection" dialog box you can also modify specific properties of a fault-tolerant connection if necessary. When using more than one CP, you can also route the connections in this dialog box. This may be practical, because by default all connections are routed initially through the first CP. If all the connections are busy there, any further connections are routed via the second CP, etc.

You have to extend the monitoring time of the connection when you use long synchronization cables.

Example: If you are operating 5 fault-tolerant S7 connections with a monitoring time of 500 ms and short synchronization cables up to 10 m and you want to change these to long synchronization cables with a length of 10 km, you must increase the monitoring time to 1000 ms.

To ensure CIR capability of the fault tolerant system, you must activate the "Save connections prior to loading" option in Step 7 NetPro.

Programming

Fault-tolerant communication is supported on the fault-tolerant CPU and is implemented using S7 communication.

This is possible only within an S7 project/multiproject.

You program the fault-tolerant communication with STEP 7 using communication SFBs. These communication blocks can be used to transmit data over subnets (Industrial Ethernet, PROFIBUS). The communication SFBs integrated in the operating system enable an acknowledged data transmission. In addition to data transfer, you can also use other communication functions for controlling and monitoring the communication peer.

User programs written for S7 connections can also be used for fault-tolerant S7 connections without program modification. Cable and connection redundancy has no effect on the user program.

Note

For information on programming the communication, refer to the STEP 7 documentation (e.g., *Programming with STEP 7*).

The START and STOP communication functions act on exactly one CPU or on all CPUs of the fault-tolerant system (for more details refer to Reference Manual *System Software for S7-300/400, System and Standard Functions*).

Disruptions of a subconnection while communication jobs are active over fault-tolerant S7 connections can extend the runtime of these jobs.

Note

Downloading the connection configuration during operation

If you download a connection configuration during operation, established connections may be terminated.

17.11.1 Communication between fault-tolerant systems

Availability

The easiest way to increase the availability between linked systems is to use a redundant plant bus. This is set up with a duplex fiber-optic ring or a dual electrical bus system. The connected nodes may consist of simple standard components.

Availability can best be enhanced using a duplex fiber-optic ring. If a break of the two-fiber fiber-optic cable occurs, communication is maintained between the systems involved. The systems then communicate as if they were connected to a bus system (line). A ring topology basically contains two redundant components and automatically forms a 1-out-of-2 redundancy node. The fiber-optic network can also be set up in star topology as redundant bus.

If one electrical cable segment fails, communication between the participating systems is also upheld (1-out-of-2 redundancy).

The following examples illustrate the differences between a duplex fiber-optic ring and a dual electrical bus system.

Note

The number of connection resources required on the CPs depends on the network used.

If you implement a duplex fiber-optic ring (see figure below), two connection resources are required per CP. In contrast, only one connection resource is required per CP if a double electrical network (see figure after next) is used.

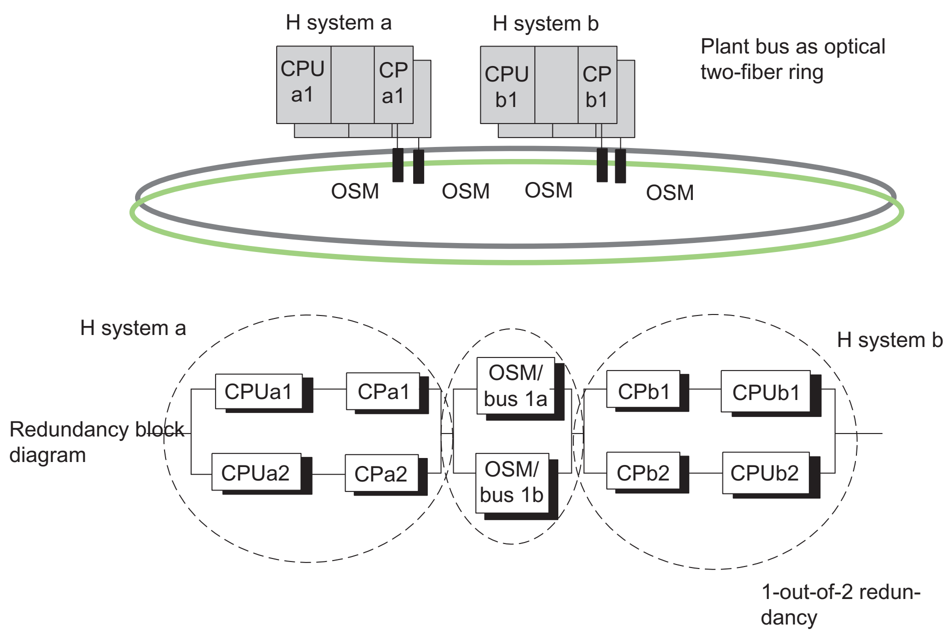


Figure 17-16 Example of redundancy with fault-tolerant system and redundant ring

Configuration view ≠ Physical view

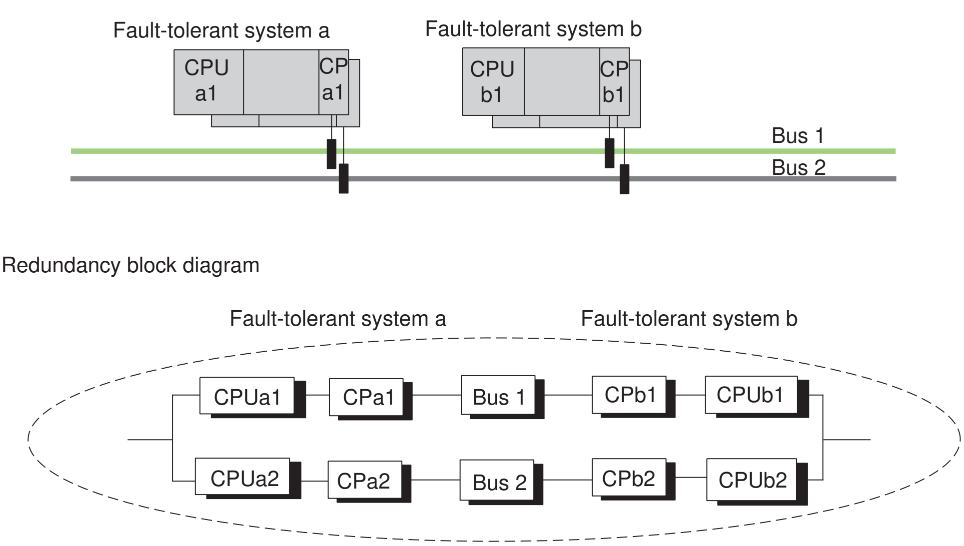


Figure 17-17 Example of redundancy with fault-tolerant system and redundant bus system

Configuration view = Physical view

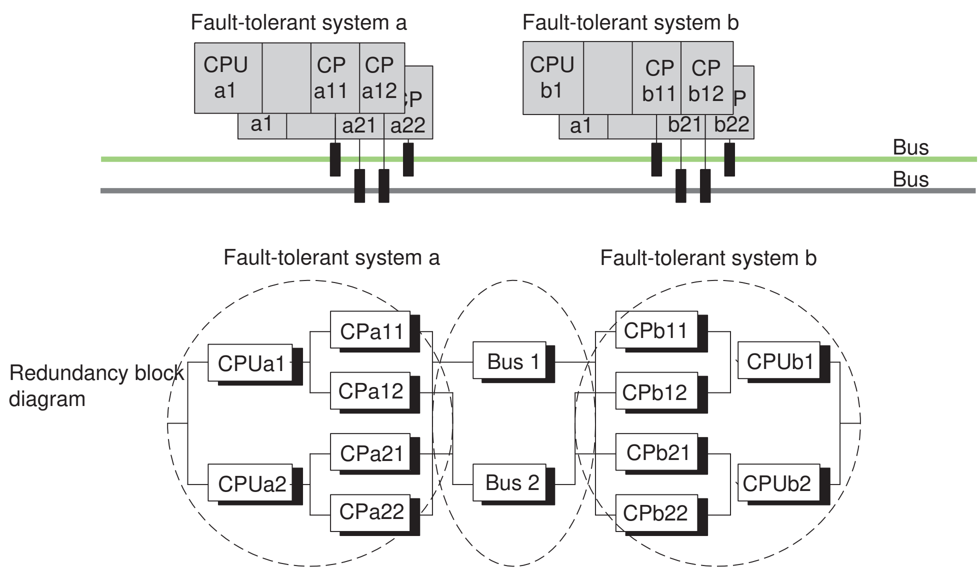


Figure 17-18 Example of fault-tolerant system with additional CP redundancy

Configuration view = Physical view

You decide during configuration if the additional CPs are used to increase resources or availability. This configuration is typically used to increase availability.

Note

Internal and external interface

Communication between fault-tolerant systems can be either via internal interfaces or via external interfaces (CP).

The partial connections of an S7 H connection cannot be configured over an external and internal interface

---

Response to failure

With a duplex optic-fiber ring, only a double error within a fault-tolerant system, e.g., CPUa1 and CPa2 in one system, leads to total failure of communication between the systems involved (see Figure 11-14).

If a double error, e.g., CPUa1 and CPb2, occurs in the first case of a redundant electrical bus system (see Figure 11-15), this results in a total failure of communication between the systems involved.

In the case of a redundant electrical bus system with CP redundancy (see Figure 11-16), only a double error within a fault-tolerant system, e.g., CPUa1 and CPa2, or a triple error, e.g., CPUa1, CPa22, and bus2, will result in a total failure of communication between the systems involved.

Fault-tolerant S7 connections

Any disruption of subconnections while communication jobs are active over fault-tolerant S7 connections leads to extended delay times.

17.11.2 Communication between fault-tolerant systems and a fault-tolerant CPU

Availability

Availability can be enhanced by using a redundant plant bus and by using a fault-tolerant CPU in a standard system.

If the communication peer is a fault-tolerant CPU, redundant connections can also be configured, in contrast to systems with a standard CPU.

Note

Fault-tolerant connections use two connection resources on CP b1 for the redundant connections. One connection resource each is occupied on CP a1 and CP a2 respectively. In this case, the use of further CPs in the standard system only serves to increase the resources.

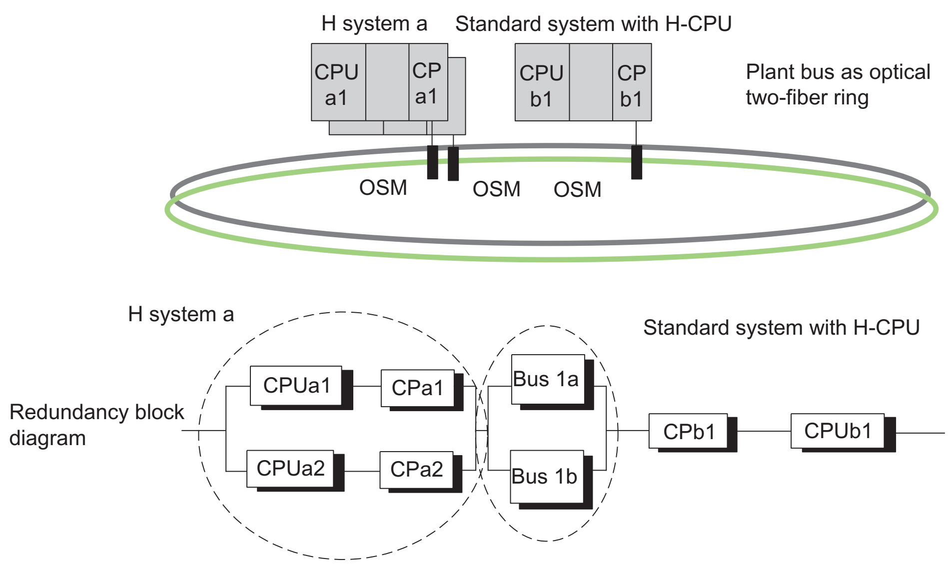


Figure 17-19 Example of redundancy with fault-tolerant system and fault-tolerant CPU

Response to failure

Double errors in the fault-tolerant system, i.e., CPUa1 and CPa2, or single errors in the standard system, i.e., CPUb1, lead to a total failure of communication between the systems involved. This can be seen in the previous figure.

17.11.3 Communication between fault-tolerant systems and PCs

Availability

PCs are not fault-tolerant due to their hardware and software characteristics. The availability of a PC (OS) system and its data management is ensured by means of suitable software such as WinCC Redundancy.

Communication takes place via fault-tolerant S7 connections.

The "S7-REDCONNECT" software package is required for fault-tolerant communication on a PC. S7-REDCONNECT is used to connect a PC to a redundant bus system using one or two CPs. The second CP is merely used to redundantly connect the PC to the bus system and does not increase the availability of the PC. Always use the latest version of this software.

Only Industrial Ethernet is supported for connecting PC systems. The SIMATIC Net software V 8.1.2 is required for connection via ISOonTCP. This corresponds to the configuration TCP/RFC1006 at the PC end.

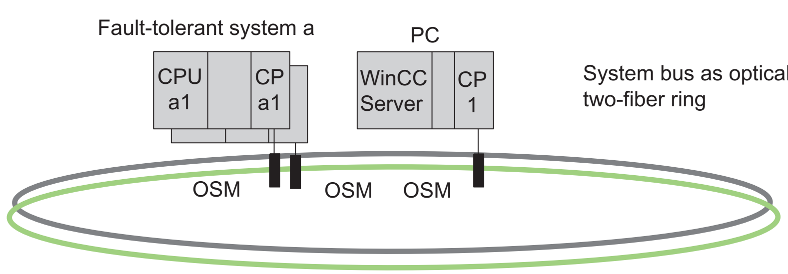
Note

The PROFINET IO MRP (Media Redundancy Protocol) for PROFINET IO ring topologies is not supported by SIMATIC NET PC modules. Plant buses as duplex fiber-optic rings cannot be operated with MRP.

Configuring connections

The PC must be engineered and configured as a SIMATIC PC station. Additional configuration of fault-tolerant communication is not necessary at the PC end. The connection configuration is uploaded from the STEP 7 project to the PC station.

You can find out how to use STEP 7 to integrate fault-tolerant S7 communication for a PC into your OS system in the WinCC documentation.



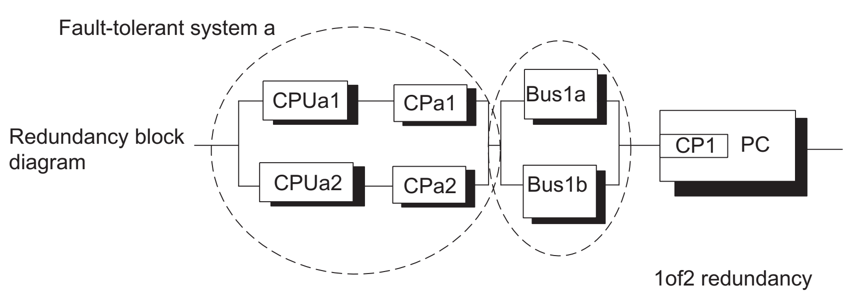
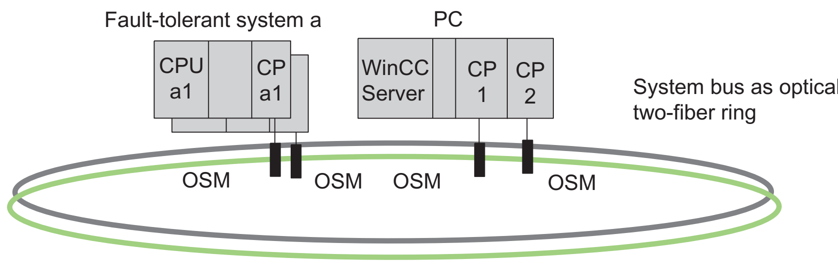


Figure 17-20 Example of redundancy with fault-tolerant system and redundant bus system



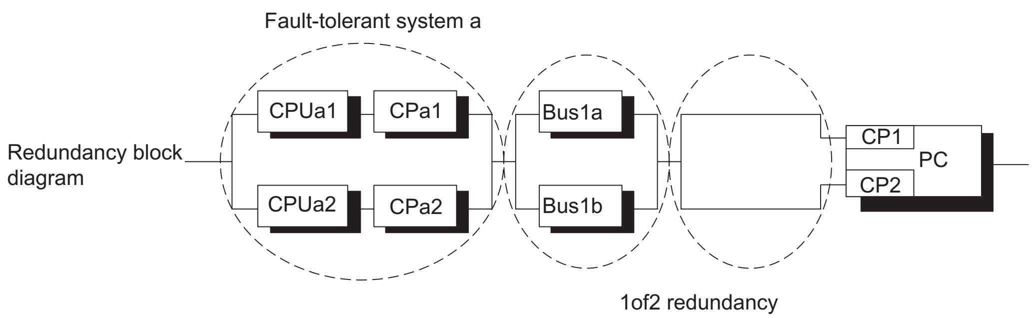


Figure 17-21 Example of redundancy with a fault-tolerant system, redundant bus system and redundant connection to the PC.

Response to failure

Double errors in the fault-tolerant system, e.g., CPUa1 and CPa2, or failure of the PC station result in a total failure of communication between the systems involved; see previous figures.

PC/PG as Engineering System (ES)

To be able to use a PC as Engineering System, you need to configure it under its name as a PC station in HW Config. The ES is assigned to a CPU and is capable of executing STEP 7 functions on that CPU.

If this CPU fails, communication between the ES and the fault-tolerant system is no longer possible.

17.12 Consistent data

17.12.1 Consistency of communication blocks and functions

On the S7-400H, communication jobs are not processed in the cycle control point but rather in fixed time slices during the program cycle.

The byte, word and double word data formats can always be processed consistently in the system, in other words, the transmission or processing of 1 byte, 1 word = 2 bytes or 1 double word = 4 bytes cannot be interrupted.

If the user program calls communication blocks, such as SFB 12 "BSEND" and SFB 13 "BRCV", which are only used in pairs and access shared data, access to this data area can be coordinated by the user by means of the "DONE" parameter, for example. The consistency of data transmitted locally with these communication blocks can thus be ensured in the user program.

In contrast, S7 communication functions do not require a block such as SFB 14 "GET", SFB 15 "PUT", in the user program of the target device. Here, you must make allowance for the volume of consistent data in the programming phase.

Access to work memory of the CPU

The communication functions of the operating system access the CPU's work memory in fixed block lengths. Blocks for S7-400H CPUs have a variable length of up to 472 bytes.

This ensures that the interrupt response time is not prolonged due to communication load. Because this access is performed asynchronously to the user program, you cannot transmit an unlimited number of bytes of consistent data.

The rules to ensure data consistency are described below.

17.12.2 Consistency rules for SFB 14 "GET" or read variable, and SFB 15 "PUT" or write variable

SFB 14

The data are received consistently if you observe the following points:

Evaluate the entire, currently used part of the receive area RD_i before you activate a new request.

SFB 15

When a send operation is initiated (rising edge at REQ), the data to be sent from the send areas SD_i are copied from the user program. You can write new data to these areas after the block call command without corrupting the current send data.

Note

Completion of transfer

The send operation is not completed until the status parameter DONE assumes value 1.

17.12.3 Consistent reading and writing of data from and to DP standard slaves/IO devices

Reading data consistently from a DP standard slave using SFC 14 "DPRD_DAT"

Using SFC 14 "DPRD_DAT" (read consistent data of a DP standard slave), you can consistently read the data of a DP standard slave of IO device.

if no error occurred during the data transmission, the data read is entered into the destination area defined by RECORD.

The destination area must have the same length as the one you have configured for the selected module with STEP 7.

By calling SFC 14 you can only access the data of one module/DP identifier at the configured start address.

For information on SFC 14, refer to the corresponding online help and to Manual "System and Standard Functions".

Note

Evaluate the entire currently used part of the receive area RD_i before you activate a new job.

Writing data consistently to a DP standard slave using SFC 15 "DPWR_DAT"

Using SFC 15 "DPWR_DAT" (write consistent data to a DP standard slave), you transmit the data in RECORD consistently to the addressed DP standard slave or IO device.

The source area must have the same length as the one you configured for the selected module with STEP 7.

For information on SFC 15, refer to the corresponding online help and Manual "System and Standard Functions".

Note

When a send operation is activated (positive edge at REQ), the data to be transmitted from the send areas SD_i is copied from the user program. You can write new data to these areas after the block call command without corrupting the current send data.

Upper limits for the transfer of consistent user data to a DP slave

The PROFIBUS DP standard defines upper limits for the transfer of consistent user data to a DP slave. For this reason a maximum of 64 words = 128 bytes of user data can be consistently transferred in a block to the DP standard slave.

You can define the length of the consistent area in your configuration. In the special identification format (SIF), you can define a maximum length of consistent data of 64 words = 128 bytes: 128 bytes for inputs and 128 bytes for outputs. A greater length is not possible.

This upper limit applies only to pure user data. Diagnostics and parameter data are grouped to form complete data records, and are thus always transferred consistently.

In the general identification format (GIF), you can define a maximum length of consistent data of 16 words = 32 bytes; 32 bytes for inputs, and 32 bytes for outputs. A greater length is not possible.

In this context, consider that a CPU 41x operating as DP slave generally has to support its configuration at an external master (implementation by means of GSD file) using the general identification format. A CPU 41x operated as DP slave thus supports only a maximum length of 16 words = 32 bytes in its transfer memory for PROFIBUS DP.

Note

The PROFIBUS DP standard defines the upper limits for transmission of consistent user data. Typical DP standard slaves adhere to this upper limit. Older CPUs (<1999) had CPU-specific restrictions in terms of the transmission of consistent user data. The maximum length of data this CPU can consistently read and write to and from a DP standard slave is specified in your technical specifications, keyword "DP Master – User data per DP slave". With this value, newer CPUs exceed the length of data that a DP standard slave provides or receives.

Upper limits of the length of consistent user data transmitted to an IO Device

The length of consistent user data that you can transmit to an IO device is limited to 1025 bytes (= 1024 bytes user data + 1 byte secondary value). Irrespective of whether you can transmit more than 1024 bytes to an IO device, the transmission of consistent data is still limited to 1024 bytes.

When operating in PN-IO mode, the length of data transmission via CP 443-1 is limited to 240 bytes.

17.13 Link-up and update sequence

There are two types of link-up and update operation:

- Within a "normal" link-up and update operation, the fault-tolerant system will change over from solo operation to redundant system state. The two CPUs then process the same program synchronously.
- When a link up and update operation takes place with master/standby changeover, the second CPU with modified components can assume control over the process. Either the hardware configuration or the operating system may have been modified.
  In order to return to redundant system state, a "normal" link-up and update operation must be performed subsequently.

How to start the link-up and update operation?

Initial situation: Solo operation, i.e., only one of the CPUs of a fault-tolerant system connected via fiber-optic cables is in RUN operating state.

You can initiate the link-up and update operation for achieving the redundant system state as follows:

- POWER ON the standby if prior to POWER OFF the CPU was not in STOP operating state.
- Operator input on the PG/ES.

You can only start a link-up and update operation with master/standby changeover by an operator input on the PG/ES.

Note

If a link-up and update operation is interrupted on the standby CPU (for example due to POWER OFF, STOP), this may cause data inconsistency and lead to a memory reset request on this CPU.

The link-up and update functions are possible again after a memory reset on the standby.

Flow chart of the link-up and update operation

The figure below outlines the general sequence of the link-up and update. In the initial situation, the master is in solo operation. In the figure, CPU 0 is assumed to be the master CPU.

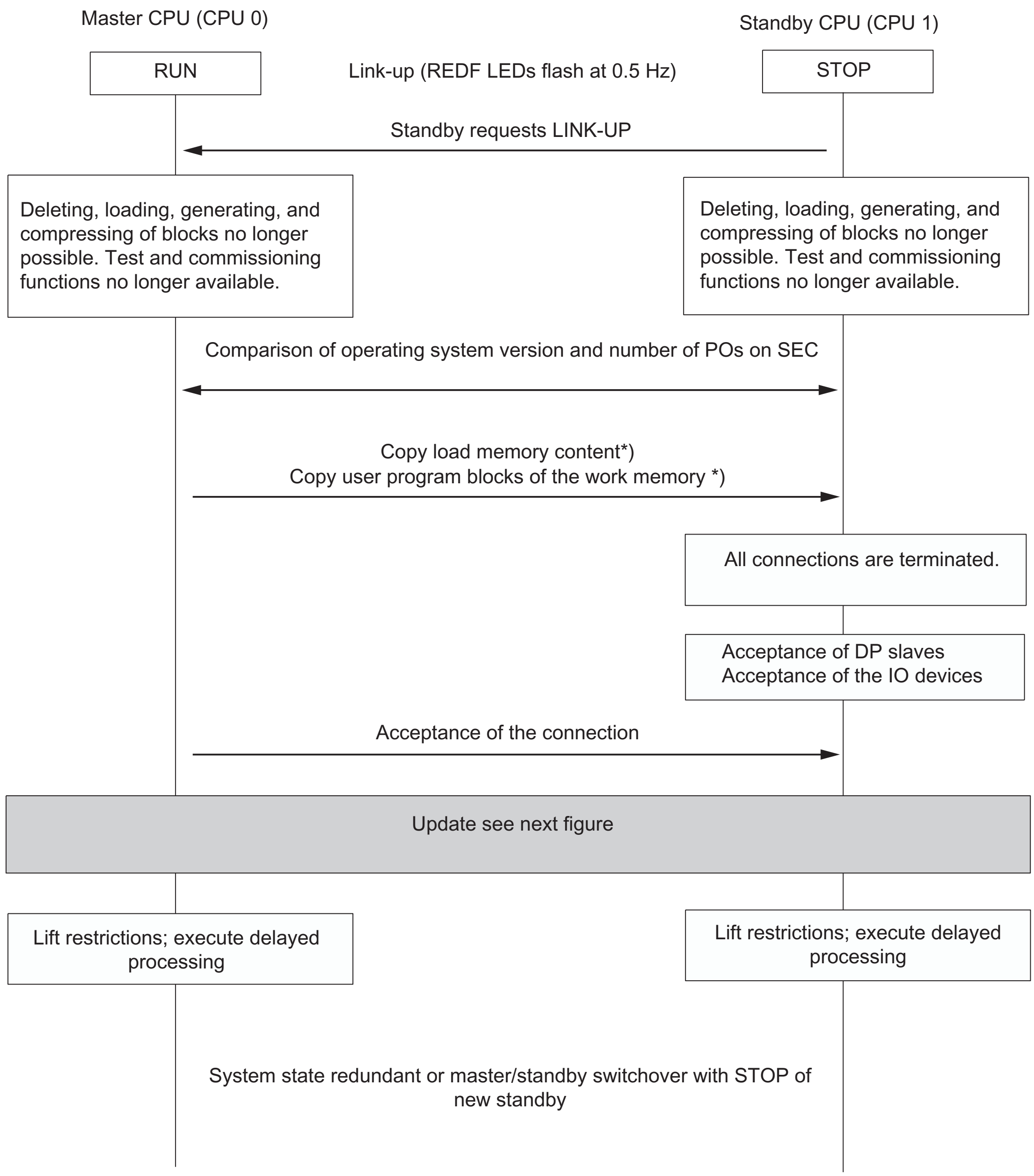


Figure 17-22 Sequence of link-up and update

*) If the "Switchover to CPU with modified configuration" option is set, the content of the load memory is not copied; what is copied from the user program blocks of the work memory (OBs, FCs, FBs, DBs, SDBs) of the master CPU is listed in Chapter Switch to CPU with modified configuration (Page 329)

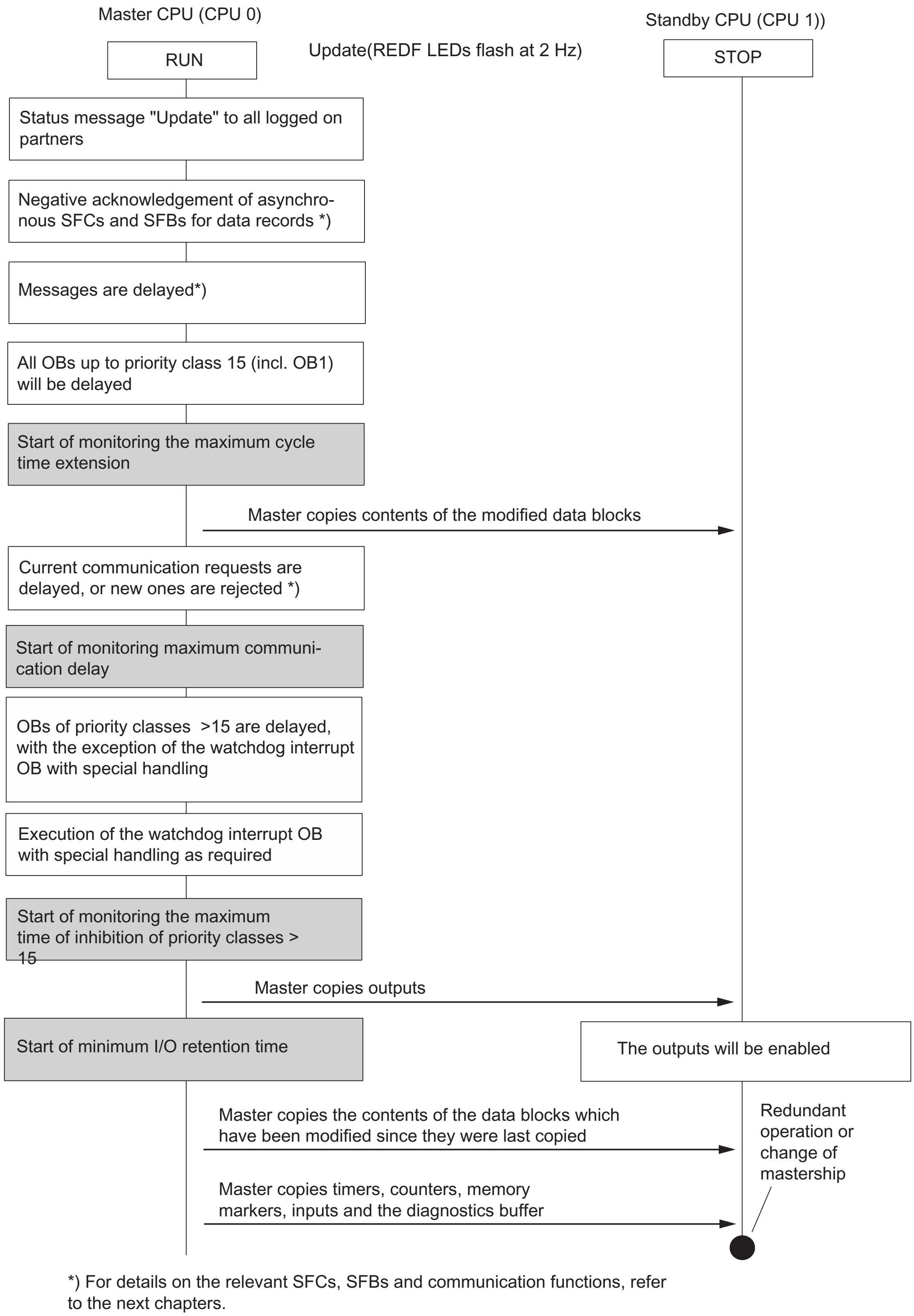


Figure 17-23 Update sequence

Minimum duration of input signals during update

Program execution is stopped for a certain time during the update (the sections below describe this in greater detail). To ensure that the CPU can reliably detect changes to input signals during the update, the following condition must be satisfied:

Minimum signal duration > 2 × time required for I/O update (DP and PNIO only)
 + call interval of the priority class
+ execution time for the program of the priority class
 + update time
 + execution time for programs of higher-priority classes

Example:

Minimum signal duration of an input signal that is evaluated in a priority class > 15 (e.g., OB 40).

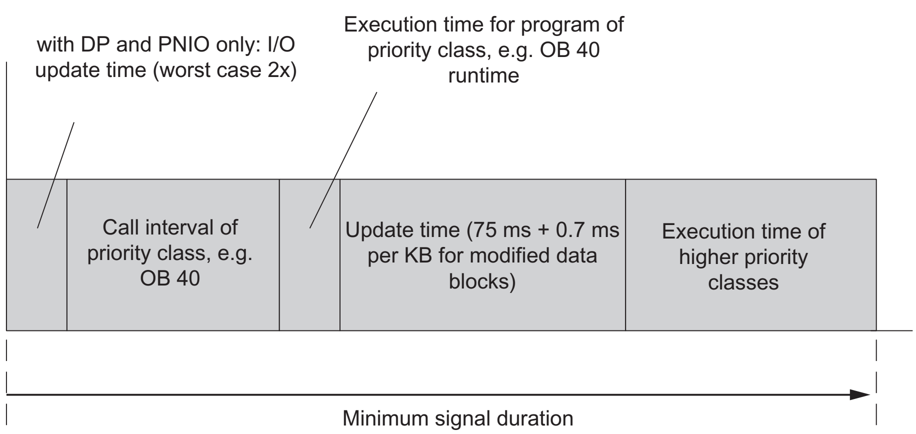


Figure 17-24 Example of minimum signal duration of an input signal during the update

17.13.1 Link-up sequence

For the link-up sequence, you need to decide whether to carry out a master/standby changeover, or whether the redundant system state is to be achieved after that.

Link-up with the objective of achieving the redundant system state

To exclude differences in the two subsystems, the master and the standby CPU run the following comparisons.

The following are compared:

1. Consistency of the memory configuration
2. Consistency of the operating system version
3. Consistency of the contents in load memory

If 1. or 2. are inconsistent, the standby CPU switches to STOP and outputs an error message.

If 3. is inconsistent, the user program in the load memory in RAM is copied from the master CPU to the standby CPU.

Link-up with master/standby changeover

In STEP 7 you can select one of the following options:

- "Switch to CPU with modified configuration"
- "Switchover to CPU with modified operating system"
- "Switchover to CPU with modified hardware version"
- "Switchover to CPU via only one intact redundant link"
- "Switching to a CPU with modified PO limit"

Switch to CPU with modified configuration

You may have modified the following elements on the standby CPU:

- The hardware configuration

No blocks are transferred from the master to the standby during the link-up. The exact circumstances are described in Chapter Switch to CPU with modified configuration (Page 329).

For information on steps required in the scenarios mentioned above, refer to section Replacement of failed components during redundant operation (Page 221).

Note

Even though you have not modified the hardware configuration on the standby CPU, there is nevertheless a master/standby changeover and the previous master CPU switches to STOP.

17.13.2 Update sequence

What happens during updating?

The execution of communication functions and OBs is restricted section by section during updating. Likewise, all the dynamic data (content of the data blocks, timers, counters, and bit memories) are transferred to the standby CPU.

Update procedure:

1. Until the update is completed, all asynchronous SFCs and SFBs which access data records of I/O modules (SFCs 13, 51, 52, 53, 55 to 59, SFB 52 and 53) are acknowledged as "negative" with the return values W#16#80C3 (SFCs 13, 55 to 59, SFB 52 and 53) or W#16#8085 (SFC 51). When these values are returned, the jobs should be repeated by the user program.
2. Message functions are delayed until the update is completed (see list below).
3. The execution of OB 1 and of all OBs up to priority class 15 is delayed.
   In the case of cyclic interrupts, the generation of new OB requests is disabled, so no new cyclic interrupts are stored and as a result no new request errors occur.
   The system waits until the update is completed, and then generates and processes a maximum of one request per cyclic interrupt OB. The time stamp of delayed cyclic interrupts cannot be evaluated.
4. Transfer of all data block contents modified since link-up.

5. The following communication jobs are acknowledged negatively:
   - Reading/writing of data records using HMI functions
   - Reading diagnostic information using STEP 7
   - Disabling and enabling messages
   - Logon and logoff for messages
   - Acknowledgement of messages
6. Initial calls of communication functions are acknowledged negatively. These calls manipulate the work memory, see also *System Software for S7-300/400, System and Standard Functions*. All remaining communication functions are executed with delay, after the update is completed.
7. The system disables the generation of new OB requests for all OBs of priority class > 15, so new interrupts are not saved and as a result do not generate any request errors.
   Queued interrupts are not requested again and processed until the update is completed. The time stamp of delayed interrupts cannot be evaluated.
   The user program is no longer processed and there are no more I/O updates.
8. Generating the start event for the cyclic interrupt OB with special handling.

Note

The cyclic interrupt OB with special handling is particularly important in situations where you need to address certain modules or program parts within a specific time. This is a typical scenario in fail-safe systems. For details, refer to the *S7-400F and S7-400FH Automation Systems* and *S7-300 Automation Systems, Fail-safe Signal Modules* manuals.

To prevent an extension of the special cyclic interrupt, the cyclic alarm OB with special handling must be assigned top priority.

9. Transfer of outputs and of all data block contents modified again. Transfer of timers, counters, bit memories, and inputs. Transfer of the diagnostic buffer.
   During this data synchronization, the system interrupts the clock pulse for cyclic interrupts, time-delay interrupts and S7 timers. This results in the loss of any synchronism between cyclic and time-of-day interrupts.
10. Cancel all restrictions. Delayed interrupts and communication functions are executed. All OBs are executed again.
   A constant bus cycle time compared with previous calls can no longer be guaranteed for delayed cyclic interrupt OBs.

Note

Process interrupts and diagnostic interrupts are stored by the I/O devices. Such interrupt requests issued by distributed I/O modules are executed when the block is re-enabled. Any such requests by central I/O modules can only be executed provided the same interrupt request did not occur repeatedly while the status was disabled.

If the PG/ES requested a master/standby changeover, the previous standby CPU assumes master mode and the previous master CPU goes into STOP when the update is completed. Both CPUs will otherwise go into RUN (redundant system mode) and execute the user program in synchronism.

When there is a master/standby changeover, in the first cycle after the update OB 1 is assigned a separate identifier (see *System Software for S7-300/400, System and Standard Functions*

Reference Manual). For information on other aspects resulting from modifying the configuration, refer to section Switch to CPU with modified configuration (Page 329).

Delayed message functions

The listed SFCs, SFBs and operating system services trigger the output of messages to all logged-on partners. These functions are delayed after the start of the update:

- SFC 17 "ALARM_SQ", SFC 18 "ALARM_S", SFC 107 "ALARM_DQ", SFC 108 "ALARM_D"
- SFC 52 "WR_USMSG"
- SFB 31 "NOTIFY_8P", SFB 33 "ALARM", SFB 34 "ALARM_8", SFB 35 "ALARM_8P", SFB 36 "NOTIFY", SFB 37 "AR_SEND"
- Process control alarms
- System diagnostics messages

From this time on, any requests to enable and disable messages by SFC 9 "EN_MSG" and SFC 10 "DIS_MSG" are rejected with a negative return value.

Communication functions and resulting jobs

After it has received one of the jobs specified below, the CPU must in turn generate communication jobs and output them to other modules. These include, for example, jobs for reading or writing parameterization data records from/to distributed I/O modules. These jobs are rejected until the update is completed.

- Reading/writing of data records using HMI functions
- Reading data records using SSL information
- Disabling and enabling messages
- Logon and logoff for messages
- Acknowledgement of messages

Note

The last three of the functions listed are registered by a WinCC system, and automatically repeated when the update is completed.

17.13.3 Switch to CPU with modified configuration

Switch to CPU with modified configuration

You may have modified the hardware configuration on the standby CPU. The necessary steps are described in Section Replacement of failed components during redundant operation (Page 221).

Note

Even though you have not modified the hardware configuration on the standby CPU, there is nevertheless a master/standby changeover and the former master CPU switches to STOP.

When you initiate the link-up and update operation from STEP 7 with the "Switch to CPU with modified configuration" option, the system reacts as follows with respect to handling of the memory contents.

Load memory

The contents of the load memory are not copied from the master to the standby CPU.

Work memory

The following components are transferred from the work memory of the master CPU to the standby CPU:

- Contents of all data blocks assigned the same interface time stamp in both load memories and whose attributes "read only" and "unlinked" are not set.
- Data blocks generated in the master CPU by SFCs.
  The DBs generated in the standby CPU by means of SFC are deleted.
  If a data block with the same number is also contained in the load memory of the standby CPU, the link-up operation is cancelled with an entry in the diagnostics buffer.
- Process images, timers, counters, and bit memories

The status of SFB instances of S7 communication contained in modified data blocks is restored to the status prior to their initial call.

17.13.4 Disabling of link-up and update

Link-up and update entails a cycle time extension. This includes a period during which no I/O updates are performed; see Chapter Time monitoring (Page 120). You must pay special attention to this if you are using distributed I/O and a master/standby changeover occurs after the update (thus, when the configuration is modified during operation).

⚠ **CAUTION**
Always perform link-up and update operations when the process is not in a critical state.

You can set specific start times for link-up and update operations at SFC 90 "H_CTRL". For detailed information on this SFC, refer to Manual *System Software for S7-300/400, System and Standard Functions*.

Note

If the process tolerates cycle time extensions at any time, you do not need to call SFC 90 "H_CTRL".

The CPU does not perform a self-test during link-up and updating. If you use a fail-safe user program, you should avoid any excessive delay for the update operation. For more details, refer to Manual *S7-400F and S7-400FH Automation Systems*.

Example of a time-critical process

A slide block with a 50 mm cam moves on an axis at a constant velocity v = 10 km/h = 2.78 m/s = 2.78 mm/ms. A switch is located on the axis. So the switch is actuated by the cam for the duration of Δt = 18 ms.

For the CPU to detect the actuation of the switch, the inhibit time for priority classes > 15 (see below for definition) must be significantly below 18 ms.

With respect to maximum inhibit times for operations of priority class > 15, STEP 7 only supports settings of 0 ms or between 100 and 60000 ms, so you need to work around this by taking one of the following measures:

- Shift the start time of link-up and updating to a time at which the process state is non-critical . Use SFC 90 "H_CTRL" to set this time (see above).
- Use a considerably longer cam and/or substantially reduce the approach velocity of the slide block to the switch.

17.14 The user program

The rules of developing and programming the user program for the standard S7-400 system also apply to the S7-400H.

In terms of user program execution, the S7-400H behaves in the same manner as a standard system. The synchronization functions are integrated in the operating system and are executed automatically in the background. You do not need to consider these functions in your user program.

In redundant operation, the user programs are stored identically on both CPUs and are executed in event-synchronous mode.

However, we offer you several specific blocks for optimizing your user program, e.g., in order to improve its response to the extension of cycle times due to updates.

Specific blocks for S7–400H

In addition to the blocks that can be used both in S7-400 and in S7-400H, there are additional blocks for S7-400H. You can use these blocks to influence redundancy functions.

You can react to redundancy errors of the S7-400H using the following organization blocks:

- OB 70, I/O redundancy errors
- OB 72, CPU redundancy errors

SFC 90 "H_CTRL" can be used to influence fault-tolerant systems as follows:

- You can disable interfacing in the master CPU.
- You can disable updating in the master CPU.
- You can remove, resume or immediately start a test component of the cyclic self-test.
- You can execute a programmed master-standby changeover. The following changeovers are possible:
  - The current standby CPU becomes the master CPU.
  - The CPU in rack 0 becomes a master CPU.
  - The CPU in rack 1 becomes a master CPU.

Additional information

For detailed information on programming the blocks described above, refer to the STEP 7 Online Help.

17.15 Other options for connecting redundant I/Os

Redundant I/O at user level

If you cannot use the redundant I/O supported by the system (Chapter Connection of two-channel I/O to the PROFIBUS DP interface (Page 81)), for example, because the module to be used redundantly is not in the list of supported components, you can also implement the use of redundant I/O at the user level.

Configurations

The following redundant I/O configurations are supported:

1. Redundant configuration with one-sided central and/or distributed I/O.
   For this purpose, one signal module each is inserted into the CPU 0 and CPU 1 subsystems.
2. Redundant configuration with switched I/O
   One signal module each is inserted into two ET 200M distributed I/O devices with active backplane bus.

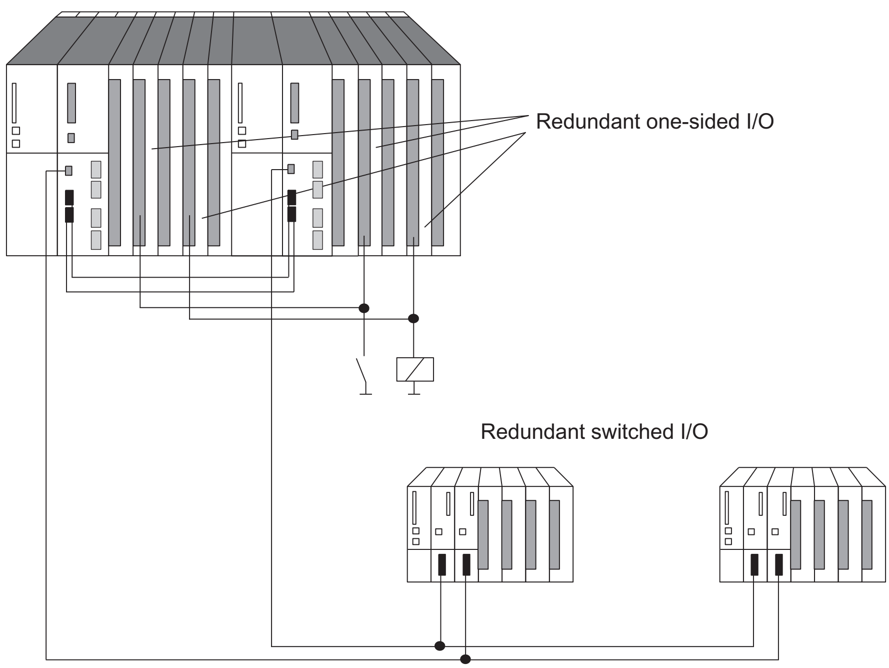


Figure 17-25 Redundant one-sided and switched I/O

Note

When using redundant I/O, you may need to add time to the calculated monitoring times; see Chapter Determining the monitoring times (Page 124)

Hardware configuration and project engineering of the redundant I/O

Strategy recommended for use of redundant I/O:

1. Use the I/O as follows:
   – in a one-sided configuration, one signal module in each subsystem
   – in a switched configuration, one signal module each in two ET 200M distributed I/O devices.
2. Wire the I/O in such a way that it can be addressed by both subsystems.
3. Configure the signal modules so that they have different logical addresses.

Note

It is not advisable to configure the input and output modules with the same logical addresses. Otherwise, in addition to the logical address, you will also need to query the type (input or output) of the defective module in OB 122.

The user program must update the process image for redundant one-sided output modules even in solo operation (e.g., direct accesses). If you use process image partitions, the user program must update them (SFC 27 "UPDAT_PO") in OB 72 (recovery of redundancy). The system would otherwise first output old values to the single-channel one-sided output modules of the standby CPU on the transition to redundant system state.

Redundant I/O in the user program

The sample program below shows the use of two redundant digital input modules:

- Module A in rack 0 with logical start address 8 and
- module B in rack 1 with logical start address 12.

One of the two modules is read in OB 1 by direct access. For the following it is generally assumed that the module in question is A (value of variable MODA is TRUE). If no error occurred, processing continues with the value read.

If an I/O area access error has occurred, module B is read by direct access ("second try" in OB 1). If no error occurred, processing of module B continues with the value read. However, if an error has also occurred here, both modules are currently defective, and operation continues with a substitute value.

The sample program is based on the fact that following an access error on module A and its replacement, module B is always processed first in OB 1. Module A is not processed first again in OB 1 until an access error occurs on module B.

Note

The MODA and IOAE_BIT variables must also be valid outside OB 1 and OB 122. The ATTEMPT2 variable, however, is used only in OB 1.

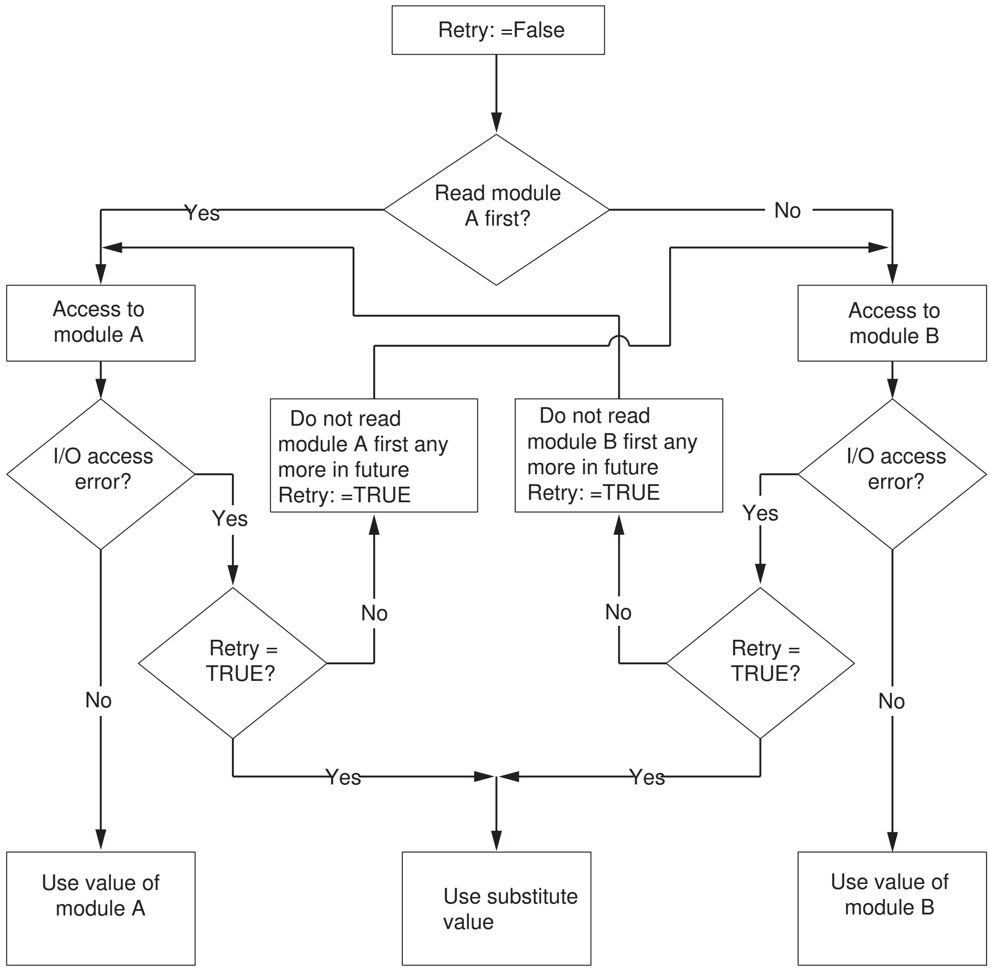


Figure 17-26 Flow chart for OB 1

Monitoring times during link-up and update

Note

If you have made I/O modules redundant and have taken account of this in your program, you may need to add an overhead to the calculated monitoring times so that no bumps occur at output modules (in HW Config -> Properties CPU -> H Parameter).

An overhead is only required if you operate modules from the following table as redundant modules.

Table 17-8 For the monitoring times with redundant I/O

Module type	Overhead in ms
ET200M: Standard output modules	2
ET200M: HART output modules	10
ET200M: F-output modules	50

Follow the steps below:

- Calculate the overhead from the table. If you use several module types from the table redundantly, apply the largest overhead.
- Add this to all of the monitoring times calculated so far.

17.16 CPU 410 cycle and reaction times

17.16.1 Cycle time

This chapter describes the decisive factors in the cycle time, and how to calculate it.

Definition of cycle time

The cycle time represents the time that the operating system needs to execute a program, that is, one OB 1 cycle, including all program sections and system activities interrupting this cycle.

This time is monitored. The CPU 410-5H has a fixed cycle monitoring of 6 seconds.

Time slice model

Cyclic program processing, and therefore also user program processing, is based on time slices. To demonstrate the processes, let us presume a global time slice length of exactly 1 ms.

Process image

During cyclic program execution, the CPU requires a consistent image of the process signals. To ensure this, the process signals are read/written prior to program execution. During the subsequent program execution, the CPU does not access the signal modules directly when addressing the input (I) and output (O) address areas. It accesses the CPU's system memory area containing the image of the inputs and outputs.

Sequence of cyclic program processing

The table below shows the various phases in cyclic program execution.

Table 17-9 Cyclic program processing

Step	Sequence
1	The operating system initiates the scan cycle monitoring time.
2	The CPU copies the values from the process output images to the output modules.
3	The CPU reads the status of inputs of the input modules, and then updates the process image of the inputs.
4	The CPU processes the user program in time slices and executes the instructions specified in the program.
5	At the end of a cycle, the operating system executes pending tasks, e.g., loading and deleting of blocks.
6	Finally, on expiration of any given minimum cycle time, the CPU returns to the start of the cycle and restarts cycle monitoring.

Elements of the cycle time

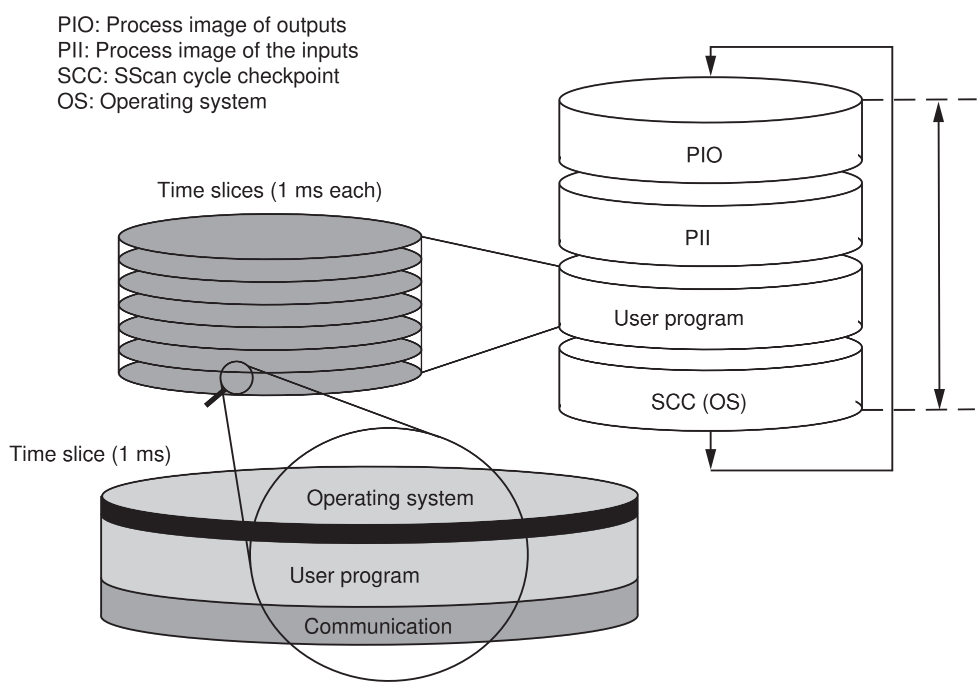


Figure 17-27 Elements and composition of the cycle time

17.16.2 Calculating the cycle time

Extending the cycle time

The cycle time of a user program is extended by the factors outlined below:

- Time-based interrupt processing
- Hardware interrupt processing (see also Chapter Interrupt response time (Page 352))
- Diagnostics and error processing (see also Chapter Example of calculation of the interrupt response time (Page 354))
- Communication via the integrated PROFINET IO interface and CPs connected by means of the communication bus
  (e.g.: Ethernet, Profibus, DP) as a factor in communication load
- Special functions such as monitoring and modifying variables
  or the block status
- Transfer and deletion of blocks, compressing of the user program memory
- Runtime of signals using the synchronization cable

Influencing factors

The table below shows the factors influencing the cycle time.

Table 17-10 Factors influencing cycle time

Factors	Remark
Transfer time for the process output image (POI) and process input image (PII)	See tables from 19-3 onwards
User program execution time	This value is calculated based on the execution times of the various statements (see the *S7-400 statement list*).
Operating system execution time at the cycle control point	See Table 19-7
Extension of cycle time due to communication load	You configure the maximum permitted communication load on the cycle as a percentage in **STEP 7** (Manual *Programming with STEP 7*). See Chapter Cycle load due to communication (Page 340).
Load on cycle times due to interrupts	Interrupt requests can always stop user program execution. See Table 19-8

Process image update

The table below shows the time a CPU requires to update the process image (process image transfer time). The specified times only represent "ideal values", and may be extended accordingly by any interrupts or communication of the CPU.

Calculation of the transfer time for process image update:

K+ portion in the central controller (from row A in the following table)
 + portion in the expansion device with local connection (from row B)

+ portion in the expansion device with remote connection (from row C)
+ portion via integrated DP interface (from row D1)
+ portion via external DP interface (from row D2)
portion of consistent data via integrated DP interface (from row E1)
+ portion of consistent data via external DP interface (from row E2)
+ portion in PN/IO area for the integrated PROFINET IO interface (from row F)
+ portion for each submodule with 32 byte of consistent data for the integrated PROFINET IO interface (from row G)

= Transfer time for process image update

The tables below show the various portions of the transfer time for a process image update (process image transfer time). The specified times only represent "ideal values", and may be extended accordingly by any interrupts or communication of the CPU.

Table 17-11 Portion of the process image transfer time, CPU 410-5H

	Portions	CPU 410-5H stand-alone mode	CPU 410-5H redundant
K	Base load	2 μs	3 μs
A *)	In the central controller Read/write byte/word/double word	7.3 μs	15 μs
B *)	In the expansion unit with local link Read/write byte/word/double word	20 μs	26 μs
C *)**)	In the expansion unit with remote link Read/write byte/word/double word	45 μs	50 μs
D1	In the DP area for the integrated DP interface Read byte/word/double word	0.4 μs	10 μs
D2 ***)	In the DP area for the external DP interfaces Read/write byte/word/double word	5 μs	15 μs
E1	Consistent data in the process image for the integrated DP interface Read/write data	8 μs	30 μs
E2	Consistent data in the process image for the external DP interface (CP 443–5 extended) Read write	80 μs 60 μs	100 μs 70 μs
F	In the PNIO area for the integrated PROFINET IO interface Read/write for each byte/word/double word	2 μs	15 μs
G	Per submodule with 32 bytes of consistent data for the integrated PROFINET IO interface	8 μs	30 μs
*) In the case of I/O inserted into the central controller or expansion device, the specified value includes the execution time for the I/O module The module data is updated with the minimum number of accesses. (example: 8 bytes result in 2 double word accesses; 16 bytes in 4 double word accesses.)			
**) Measured with IM460-3 and IM461-3 at a link length of 100 m			
***) Measured with modules with 1 byte of user data, e.g., DI 16.			

Extending the cycle time

The calculated cycle time of a S7-400H CPU must be multiplied by a CPU-specific factor. The table below lists these factors:

Table 17-12 Extending the cycle time

Startup	CPU 410-5H stand-alone mode	CPU 410-5H redundant
Factor	1.05	1.2

Long synchronization cables may increase cycle times. This extension can have the factor 2 - 5 with a cable length of 10 km.

Operating system execution time at the cycle control point

The table below shows the operating system execution time at the cycle checkpoint of the CPUs.

Table 17-13 Operating system execution time at the cycle control point

Sequence	CPU 410-5H stand-alone mode	CPU 410-5H redundant
Cycle control at the SCCP	25 - 330 μs ∅ 30 μs	120 - 600 μs ∅ 135 μs

Extended cycle time due to nested interrupts

Table 17-14 Extended cycle time due to nested interrupts

CPU	Hardware interrupt	Diagnostic interrupt	Time-of-day interrupt	Delay interrupt	Cyclic interrupt	Programming error	I/O access error	Asynchronous error
CPU 410-5H stand-alone mode	75 μs	40 μs	50 μs	40 μs	40 μs	20 μs	20 μs	55 μs
CPU 410-5H redundant	180 μs	70 μs	200 μs	120 μs	120 μs	90 μs	45 μs	130 μs

The program runtime at interrupt level must be added to this time extension.

If several interrupts are nested, their times must be added together.

17.16.3 Cycle load due to communication

The operating system of the CPU provides the configured percentage of the overall CPU processing capacity to the communication on a continuous basis (time slice technique). If this processing capacity is not required for communication, it is made available to the other processing.

In the hardware configuration you can specify a communication load value between 5% and 50%. The default value is 20%.

The parameter represents the share of the cycle load in the internal copy jobs created at the communication end. Communication at the interfaces is not affected.

This percentage is to be interpreted as a mean value, i.e., within one time slice, the communication portion may be significantly greater than 20%. On the other hand, communication load in the next time slice is very small or not present.

The formula below describes the influence of communication load on the cycle time:

$$\text{Actual cycle time} = \text{Cycle time} \times \frac{100}{100 - \text{"Configured communication load in \%"}}$$

Round the result up to the next highest integer !

Figure 17-28 Formula: Influence of communication load

Data consistency

The user program is interrupted to process communications. This interruption can be triggered after any command. These communication jobs may lead to a change in user data. As a result, data consistency cannot be ensured over several accesses.
How to ensure data consistency in operations comprising more than one command is described in Chapter "Consistent data".

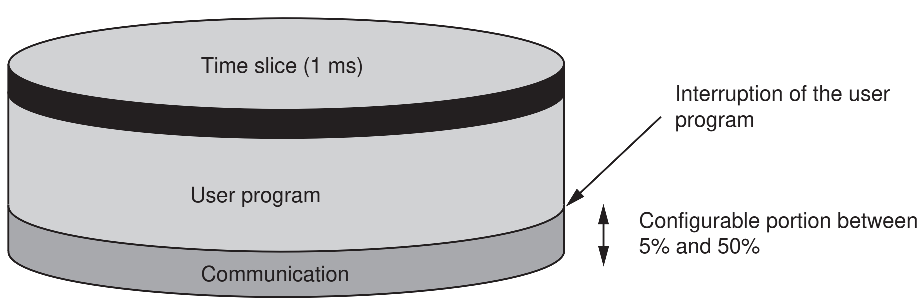


Figure 17-29 Distribution of a time slice

The operating system takes a certain portion of the remaining time slice for internal tasks. This portion is included in the factor defined in the tables starting at 16-3.

Example: 20% communication load

In the hardware configuration you have set a communication load of 20%.

The calculated cycle time is 10 ms.

This means that a setting of 20% communication load allocates an average of 200 μs to communication and 800 μs to the user program in each time slice. So the CPU requires 10 ms / 800 μs = 13 time slices to execute one cycle. This means the physical cycle time is equivalent to 13 times 1-ms time slice = 13 ms, if the CPU fully utilizes the configured communication load.

That is to say, 20% communication does not extend the cycle by a linear amount of 2 ms, but by 3 ms.

Example: 50% communication load

You configured a communication load of 50% in the hardware configuration.

The calculated cycle time is 10 ms.

This means that 500 μs remain in each time slice for the cycle. Therefore, the CPU requires 10 ms / 500 μs = 20 time slices to execute one cycle. This means the physical cycle time is 20 ms if the CPU fully utilizes the configured communication load.

So a setting of 50% communication load allocates 500 μs to communication and 500 μs to the user program in each time slice. Therefore, the CPU requires 10 ms / 500 μs = 20 time slices to execute one cycle. This means the physical cycle time is equivalent to 20 times 1-ms time slice = 20 ms, if the CPU fully utilizes the configured communication load.

This means that 50% communication does not extend the cycle by a linear amount of 5 ms, but by 10 ms (= doubling the calculated cycle time).

Dependency of the actual cycle time on communication load

The figure below describes the non-linear dependency of the actual cycle time on communication load. In our example we have chosen a cycle time of 10 ms.

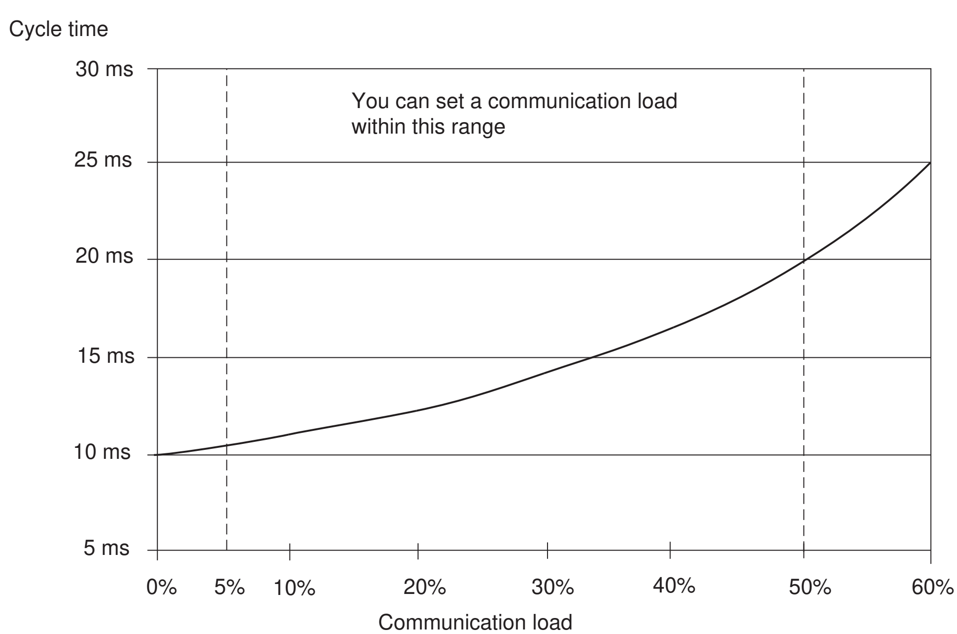


Figure 17-30 Dependency of the cycle time on communication load

Further effects on the actual cycle time

Seen statistically, the extension of cycle times due to communication load leads to more asynchronous events occurring within an OB 1 cycle, for example interrupts. This further extends the OB 1 cycle. How much it is extended depends on the number of events per OB 1 cycle and the time required for processing these events.

Remarks

- Change the value of the "communication load" parameter to check the effects on the cycle time during system runtime.
- Always take the communication load into account when you set the maximum cycle time, otherwise you risk timeouts.

17.16.4 Response time

Definition of response time

The response time is the time from detecting an input signal to changing the output signal associated with it.

Fluctuation range

The actual response time lies between the shortest and the longest response time. You must always assume the longest response time when configuring your system.

The shortest and longest response times are analyzed below so that you can gain an impression of the variation of the response time.

Factors

The response time depends on the cycle time and the following factors:

- Delay of the inputs and outputs
- Additional DP cycle times on the PROFIBUS DP network
- Execution in the user program

Delay of inputs/outputs

Make allowances for the following module-specific delay times:

- For digital inputs: the input delay time
- For interrupt-capable digital inputs: the input delay time + internal preparation time
- For digital outputs: negligible delay times

- For relay outputs: typical delay times of 10 ms to 20 ms.
  The delay of relay outputs depends on
  the temperature and voltage, among other things.
- For analog inputs: cycle time for analog input
- For analog outputs: response time at analog outputs

For information on delay times, refer to the technical specifications of the signal modules.

DP cycle times on the PROFIBUS DP network

If you configured your PROFIBUS DP network in **STEP 7**, **STEP 7** calculates the typical DP cycle time to be expected. You can then view the DP cycle time of your configuration on the PG in the bus parameters section.

The figure below provides an overview of the DP cycle time. In this example, we assume an average value for each DP slave of 4 bytes of data.

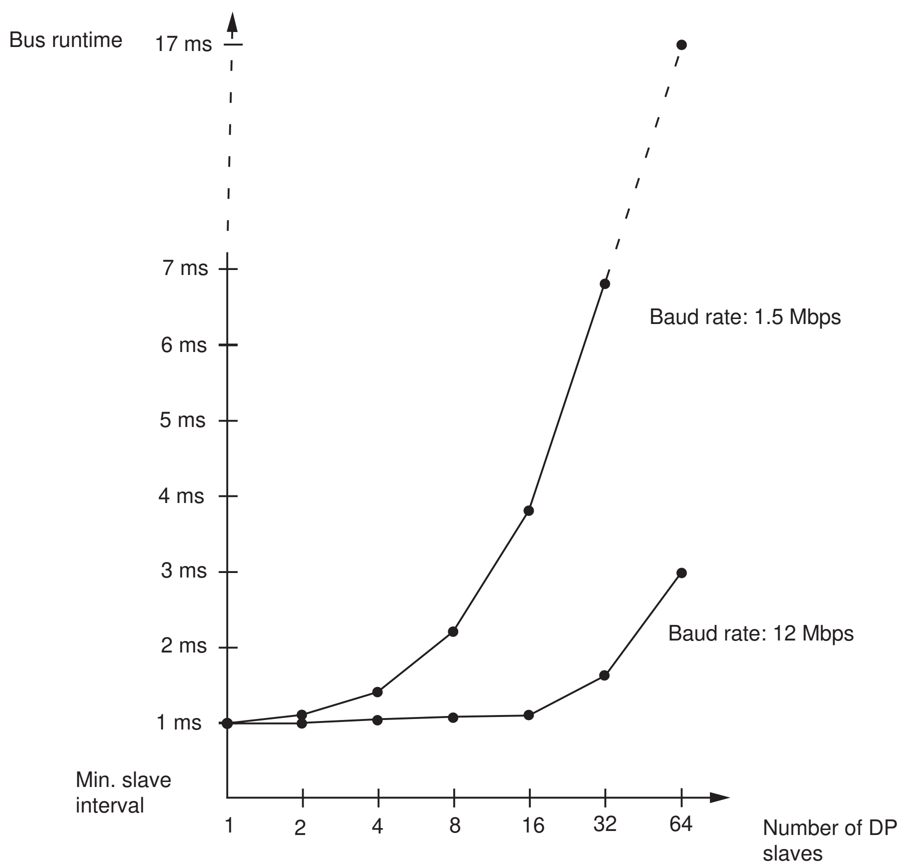


Figure 17-31 DP cycle times on the PROFIBUS DP network

If you are operating a PROFIBUS DP network with more than one master, you will need to take the DP cycle time into account for each master. In other words, perform a separate calculation for each master and add the results together.

Shortest response time

The figure below shows the conditions under which the shortest response time is achieved.

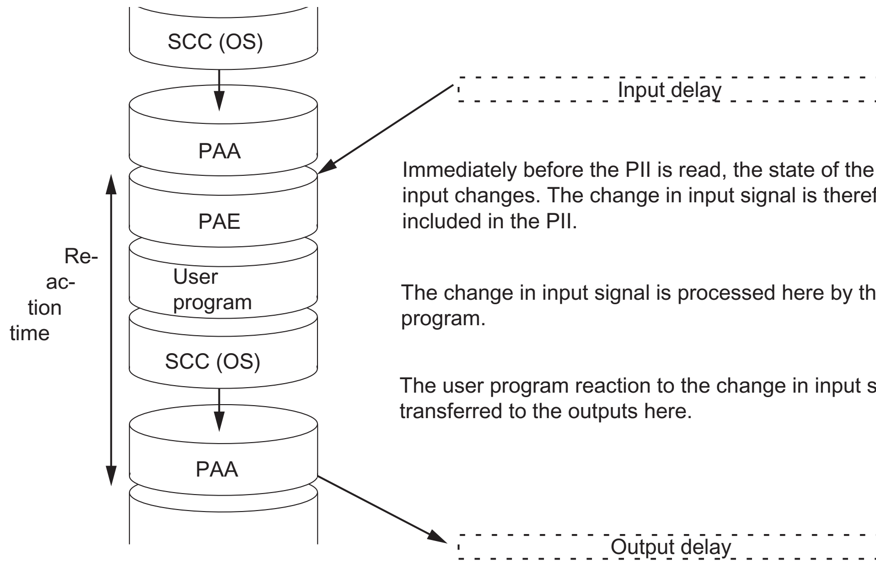


Figure 17-32 Shortest response time

Calculation

The (shortest) response time is calculated as follows:

- 1 x process image transfer time of the inputs +
- 1 x process image transfer time of the outputs +
- 1 x program processing time +
- 1 x operating system processing time at the SCCP +
- Delay of the inputs and outputs

The result is equivalent to the sum of the cycle time plus the I/O delay times.

Note

If the CPU and signal module are not in the central controller, you must add twice the runtime of the DP slave frame (including processing in the DP master).

Longest response time

The figure below shows the conditions under which the longest response time is achieved.

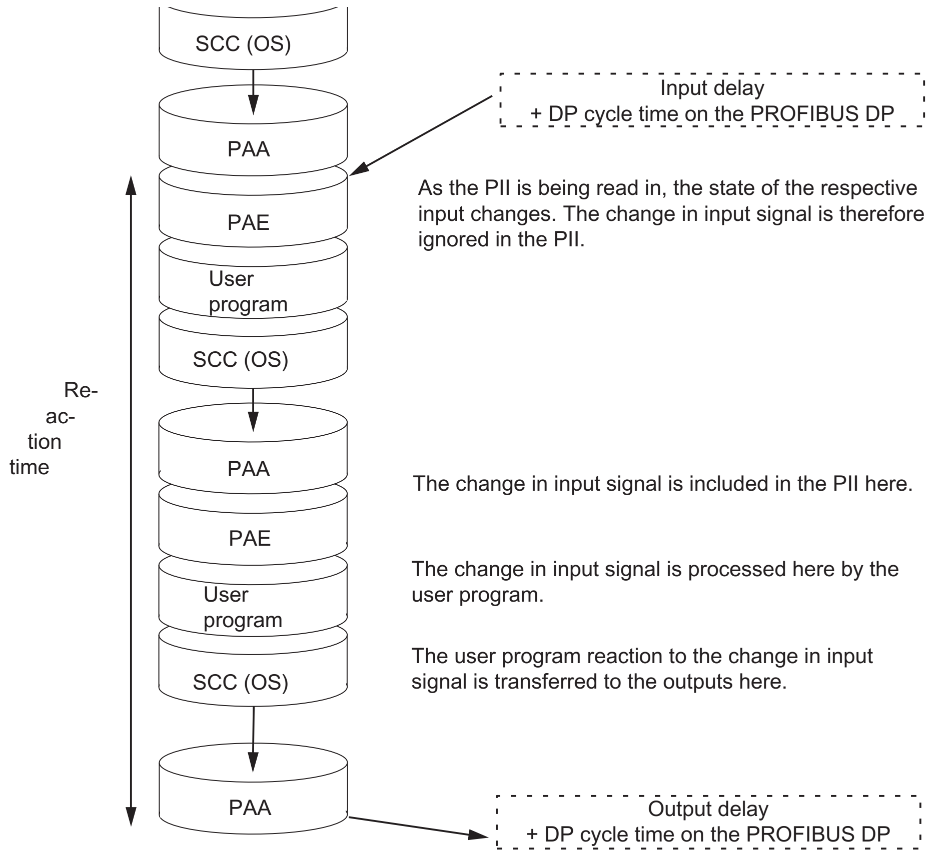


Figure 17-33 Longest response time

Calculation

The (longest) response time is calculated as follows:

- 2 x process image transfer time of the inputs +
- 2 x process image transfer time of the outputs +
- 2 x operating system processing time +
- 2 x program processing time +
- 2 x delay of the DP slave frame (including processing in the DP master) +
- Delay of the inputs and outputs

This is equivalent to the sum of twice the cycle time and the delay in the inputs and outputs plus twice the DP cycle time.

Processing direct I/O access

You can achieve faster response times by directly accessing the I/O in your user program, e.g., with the following instructions:

- L PIB
- T PQW

However, note that any I/O access requires a synchronization of the two units and thus extends the cycle time.

Reducing the response time

This reduces the maximum response time to

- Delay of the inputs and outputs
- Runtime of the user program (can be interrupted by higher-priority interrupt processing)
- Runtime of direct access
- 2x bus runtime of DP

The following table lists the execution times of direct access by the CPU to I/O modules. The specified times are pure CPU processing times and do not include the processing times of the signal modules.

Table 17-15 Direct access of the CPUs to I/O modules in the central controller

Access type	CPU 410-5H stand-alone mode	CPU 410-5H redundant
Read byte	2.2 µs	11.0 µs
Read word	3.7 µs	11.1 µs
Read double word	6.8 µs	14.2 µs
Write byte	2.2 µs	10.8 µs
Write word	3.8 µs	11.2 µs
Write double word	7.0 µs	14.4 µs

Table 17-16 Direct access of the CPUs to I/O modules in the expansion unit with local link

Access type	CPU 410-5H stand-alone mode	CPU 410-5H redundant
Read byte	5.5 µs	13.0 µs
Read word	10.5 µs	17.9 µs
Read double word	19.9 µs	27.4 µs
Write byte	5.3 µs	12.7 µs
Write word	10.2 µs	17.6 µs
Write double word	19.8 µs	27.3 µs

Table 17-17 Direct access of the CPUs to I/O modules in the expansion unit with remote link, setting 100 m

Access type	CPU 410-5H stand-alone mode	CPU 410-5H redundant
Read byte	11.3 μs	16.6 μs
Read word	22.8 μs	28.1 μs
Read double word	44.1 μs	49.8 μs
Write byte	10.8 μs	16.2 μs
Write word	21.9 μs	27.3 μs
Write double word	44.0 μs	49.4 ms

Note

You can also achieve fast response times by using hardware interrupts; see Chapter Interrupt response time (Page 352).

17.16.5 Calculating cycle and response times

Cycle time

1. Determine the user program runtime with the help of the instruction list.
2. Calculate and add the process image transfer time. You will find guide values for this in the tables starting at 16-3.
3. Add the processing time at the scan cycle checkpoint. You will find guide values for this in Table 16-8.
4. Multiply the calculated value by the factor in Table 16-7.

The final result is the **cycle time**.

Extension of the cycle time due to communication and interrupts

1. Multiply the result by the following factor:
   100 / (100 – "configured communication load in %")
2. Using the instruction list, calculate the runtime of the program elements processing the interrupts. To do so, add the relevant value from Table 16-9.
   Multiply this value by the factor from step 4.
   Add this value to the theoretical cycle time as often as the interrupt is triggered or is expected to be triggered during the cycle time.

The result is an approximated **actual cycle time**. Note down the result.

Table 17-18 Example of calculating the response time

Shortest response time	**Longest response time**
3. Next, calculate the delays in the inputs and outputs and, if applicable, the cycle times on the PROFIBUS DP network.	3. Multiply the actual cycle time by factor 2.
	4. Next, calculate the delays in the inputs and outputs and the DP cycle times on the PROFIBUS DP network.
4. The result you obtain is the **shortest response time**.	5. The result you obtain is the **longest response time**.

17.16.6 Examples of calculating the cycle and response times

Example I

You have installed an S7-400 with the following modules in the central controller:

- a CPU 410–5H in redundant mode
- 2 digital input modules SM 421; DI 32xDC 24 V (each with 4 bytes in the PI)
- 2 digital output modules SM 422; DO 32xDC 24 V/0.5 (each with 4 bytes in the PI)

User program

According to the instruction list, the user program runtime is 15 ms.

Calculating the cycle time

The cycle time for the example results from the following times:

- As the CPU-specific factor is 1.2, the user program execution time is:
  approx. 18.0 ms
- Process image transfer time (4 double-word accesses)
  Process image: 9 μs + 4 ×25 μs = approx. 0.109 ms
- OS execution time at the scan cycle checkpoint:
  approx. 0.31 ms

The total of the listed times is equivalent to the cycle time:

Cycle time = 18.0 ms + 0.109 ms + 0.31 ms **= 18.419 ms**.

Calculation of the actual cycle time

- Allowance for communication load (default value: 20%):
  18.419 ms * 100 / (100–20) **= 23.024 ms**.
- There is no interrupt processing.

So the actual, cycle time is approx. **23 ms**.

Calculating the longest response time

- Longest response time
  23.024 ms * 2 **= 46.048 ms**.
- The delay of the inputs and outputs is negligible.
- All the components are plugged into the central controller; DP cycle times do not therefore have to be taken into account.
- There is no interrupt processing.

So the longest, rounded up response time is **= 46.1 ms**.

Example II

You have installed an S7-400 with the following modules:

- a CPU 410–5H in redundant mode
- 4 digital input modules SM 421; DI 32×DC 24 V (each with 4 bytes in the PI)
- 3 digital output modules SM 422; DO 16xDC 24 V /2 (each with 2 bytes in the PI)
- 2 analog input modules SM 431; AI 8x13 bit (not in the PI)
- 2 analog output modules SM 432; AO 8x13 bit (not in the PI)

CPU parameters

The CPU parameters were assigned as follows:

- Cycle load due to communication: 40%

User program

According to the instruction list, the user program runtime is 10.0 ms.

Calculating the cycle time

The theoretical cycle time for the example is derived from the following times:

- As the CPU-specific factor is 1.2, the user program execution time is:
  approx. 12.0 ms
- Process image transfer time (4 x double-word access and 3 x word access)
  Process image: 9 μs + 7 ×25 μs = approx. 0.184 ms
- Operating system runtime at scan cycle checkpoint:
  approx. 0.31 ms

The total of the listed times is equivalent to the cycle time:

Cycle time = 12.0 ms + 0.184 ms + 0.31 ms **= 12.494 ms**.

Calculation of the actual cycle time

- Allowance for communication load:
  12.494 ms * 100 / (100–40) **= 20.823 ms**.
- A time-of-day interrupt with a runtime of 0.5 ms is triggered every 100 ms.
  The interrupt can be triggered a maximum of one time during a cycle:
  0.5 ms + 0.490 ms (from table 16-9) **= 0.99 ms.**
  Allowing for communication load:
  0.99 ms * 100 / (100–40) **= 1.65 ms**.
- 20.823 ms + 1.65 ms **= 22.473 ms**.

Taking into account the time slices, the actual rounded up cycle time is **22.5 ms**.

Calculating the longest response time

- Longest response time
  22.5 ms * 2 **= 45 ms**.
- Delay of inputs and outputs
  - The maximum input delay of the digital input module SM 421; DI 32×DC 24 V is 4.8 ms per channel
  - The output delay of the digital output module SM 422; DO 16×DC 24 V/2A is negligible.
  - An interference frequency suppression of 50 Hz was assigned for the analog input module SM 431; AI 8×13Bit. The result is a conversion time of 25 ms per channel. As 8 channels are active, a cycle time of the analog input module of 200 ms results.
  - Analog output module SM 432; AO 8×13Bit was assigned for measuring range 0 ... 10 V. This results in a conversion time of 0.3 ms per channel. Since 8 channels are active, the result is a cycle time of 2.4 ms. The transient time for a resistive load of 0.1 ms must be added to this. The result is an analog output response time of 2.5 ms.
- All components are installed in the central controller, so DP cycle times can be ignored.
- Case 1: The system sets an output channel of the digital output module after a digital input signal is read in. The result is as follows:
  Response time = 45 ms + 4.8 ms = 49.8 ms.
- Case 2: The system reads in and outputs an analog value. The result is as follows:
  Response time = 45 ms + 200 ms + 2.5 ms = 247.5 ms.

17.16.7 Interrupt response time

Definition of interrupt response time

The interrupt response time is the time from the first occurrence of an interrupt signal to the call of the first instruction in the interrupt OB.

General rule: Higher priority interrupts are handled first. This means the interrupt response time is increased by the program execution time of the higher-priority interrupt OBs, and by previous interrupt OBs of the same priority which have not yet been processed (queue).

Note that any update of the standby CPU extends the interrupt response time.

Calculating the interrupt response time

Minimum interrupt response time of the CPU
+ minimum interrupt response time of the signal modules
+ cycle time on PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET IO

= Shortest interrupt response time

Minimum interrupt response time of the CPU
+ maximum interrupt response time of the signal modules
+ 2 * cycle time on PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET IO

= Longest interrupt response time

Hardware and diagnostic interrupt response times of the CPUs

Table 17-19 Hardware and interrupt response times; maximum interrupt response time without communication

CPU	Hardware interrupt response times		Diagnostic interrupt response times	
	min.	**max.**	**min.**	**max.**
CPU 410-5H stand-alone mode	60 μs	90 μs	60 μs	90 μs
CPU 410-5H redundant	140 μs	310 μs	120 μs	250 μs

Increasing the maximum interrupt response time with communication

The maximum interrupt response time is extended when the communication functions are active. The additional time is calculated using the following formula:

CPU 410-5H t_v = 100 μs + 1000 μs × n%, significant extension possible

where n = cycle load due to communication

Signal modules

The hardware interrupt response time of signal modules is made up as follows:

- Digital input modules
  Hardware interrupt response time = internal interrupt processing time + input delay
  You will find these times in the data sheet for the respective digital input module.
- Analog input modules
  Hardware interrupt response time = internal interrupt processing time + conversion time
  The internal interrupt processing time for analog input modules can be neglected. The conversion times can be found in the data sheet for the individual analog input modules.

The diagnostic interrupt response time of the signal modules is the time from detection of a diagnostic event by the signal module to the triggering of the diagnostic interrupt by the signal module. This short time can be neglected.

Hardware interrupt processing

Hardware interrupt processing begins when the hardware interrupt OB 4x is called. Higher-priority interrupts stop hardware interrupt processing. Direct access to I/O modules is executed during the execution time of the operation. After the hardware interrupt has been processed, the system either resumes cyclic program processing, or calls and processes interrupt OBs of the same or lower priority.

17.16.8 Example of calculation of the interrupt response time

Elements of the interrupt response time

As a reminder: The hardware interrupt response time is made up of the following:

- Hardware interrupt response time of the CPU
- Hardware interrupt response time of the signal module
- 2 × DP cycle time on PROFIBUS DP

Example

You have installed a CPU 410-5H and four digital modules in the central controller. One digital input module is the SM 421; DI 16×UC 24/60 V; with hardware and diagnostic interrupts. You have enabled only the hardware interrupt in your CPU and SM parameter assignment. You decided not to use time-driven processing, diagnostics or error handling. You have assigned an input delay of 0.5 ms for the digital input modules. No activities are required at the scan cycle checkpoint. You have set the communication load of the cycle as 20%.

Calculation

In this example, the hardware interrupt response time is based on following time factors:

- Process interrupt response time of CPU 410-5H: Approx. 0.3 ms (mean value in redundant operation)
- Extension due to communication according to the description in Chapter Interrupt response time (Page 352):

100 µs + 1000 µs × 20% = 300 µs = 0.3 ms

- Hardware interrupt response time of SM 421; DI 16×UC 24/60 V:
  - Internal interrupt processing time: 0.5 ms
  - Input delay: 0.5 ms
- The DP cycle time on the PROFIBUS DP is irrelevant, because the signal modules are installed in the central controller.

The hardware interrupt response time is equivalent to the sum of the listed time factors:

Hardware interrupt response time = 0.3 ms + 0.3 ms + 0.5 ms + 0.5 ms = **approx. 1.6 ms**.

This calculated hardware interrupt response time is the time between detection of a signal at the digital input and the call of the first instruction in OB 4x.

17.16.9 Reproducibility of delay and watchdog interrupts

Definition of "reproducibility"

Time-delay interrupt:

The period that expires between the call of the first operation in the interrupt OB and the programmed time of interrupt.

Cyclic interrupt:

The fluctuation range of the interval between two successive calls, measured between the respective initial operations of the interrupt OB.

Reproducibility

The following table contains the reproducibility of time-delay and cyclic interrupts of the CPUs.

Table 17-20 Reproducibility of time-delay and cyclic interrupts of the CPUs

Module	Reproducibility	
	Time-delay interrupt	Cyclic interrupt
CPU 410-5H stand-alone mode	± 120 μs	± 160 μs
CPU 410-5H redundant	± 200 μs	± 180 μs

These times only apply if the interrupt can actually be executed at this time and if it is not delayed, for example, by higher-priority interrupts or queued interrupts of equal priority.

17.17 Runtimes of the FCs and FBs for redundant I/Os

Table 17-21 Runtimes of the blocks for redundant I/Os

Block	Runtime in stand-alone/single mode	Runtime in redundant mode
FC 450 RED_INIT Specifications are based on the startup	2 ms + 300 μs / configured module pairs The specification for a module pair is a mean value. The runtime may be < 300 μs for a few modules. For a large number of redundant modules the value may be > 300 μs.	-
FC 451 RED_DEPA	160 μs	360 μs

Block	Runtime in stand-alone/single mode	Runtime in redundant mode
FB 450 RED_IN Called from the corresponding sequence level.	750 µs + 60 µs / module pair of the current TPA The specification for a module pair is a mean value. The runtime may be additionally increased if discrepancies occur resulting in passivation and logging to the diagnostic buffer. The runtime may also be increased by a depassivation carried out at the individual sequence levels of FB RED_IN. Depending on the number of modules in the sequence level, the depassivation may increase the runtime of the FB RED_IN by 0.4 ... 8 ms. An 8 ms increase can be expected in redundant operation of modules totaling more than 370 pairs of modules at a sequence level.	1000 µs + 70 µs / module pair of the current TPA The specification for a module pair is a mean value. The runtime may be additionally increased if discrepancies occur resulting in passivation and logging to the diagnostic buffer. The runtime may also be increased by a depassivation carried out at the individual sequence levels of FB RED_IN. Depending on the number of modules in the sequence level, the depassivation may increase the runtime of the FB RED_IN by 0.4 ... 8 ms. An 8 ms increase can be expected in redundant operation of modules totaling more than 370 pairs of modules at a sequence level.
FB 451 RED_OUT Called from the corresponding sequence level.	650 µs + 2 µs / module pair of the current TPA The specification for a module pair is a mean value. The runtime may be < 2 µs for a few modules. For a large number of redundant modules the value may be > 2 µs.	860 µs + 2 µs / module pair of the current TPA The specification for a module pair is a mean value. The runtime may be < 2 µs for a few modules. For a large number of redundant modules the value may be > 2 µs.
FB 452 RED_DIAG	Called in OB 72: 160 µs Called in OB 82, 83, 85: 250 µs + 5 µs / configured module pairs Under extreme conditions the runtime of FB RED_DIAG is increased up to 1.5 ms. . This is the case when the working DB is 60 KB or larger and if there are interrupt trigger addresses that do not belong to the redundant I/O.	Called in OB 72: 360 µs Called in OB 82, 83, 85: 430 µs (basic load) + 6 µs / configured module pairs Under extreme conditions the runtime of FB RED_DIAG is increased up to 1.5 ms. . This is the case when the working DB is 60 KB or larger and if there are interrupt trigger addresses that do not belong to the redundant I/O.
FB 453 RED_STATUS	160 µs 4 µs/ configured module pairs * number of module pairs) The runtime depends on the random position of the module being searched for in the working DB. When a module address is not redundant, the entire working DB is searched. This results in the longest runtime of FB RED_STATUS. The number of module pairs is based either on all inputs (DI/AI) or all outputs (DO/AO).	350 µs + 5 µs / configured module pairs * number of module pairs) The runtime depends on the random position of the module being searched for in the working DB. When a module address is not redundant, the entire working DB is searched. This results in the longest runtime of FB RED_STATUS. The number of module pairs is based either on all inputs (DI/AI) or all outputs (DO/AO).

Note

These are guide values, not absolute values. The actual value may deviate from these specifications in some cases. This overview is intended as a guide and should help you estimate how use of the Redundant IO CGP V52 library may change the cycle time.

Characteristic values of redundant automation systems

A

This appendix provides a brief introduction to the characteristic values of redundant automation systems, and shows the practical effects of redundant configurations, based on a selection of configurations.

You will find an overview of the MTBF of various SIMATIC products in the SIMATIC FAQs in the following entry: Mean Time Between Failures (MTBF) list for SIMATIC Products (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/16818490)

A.1 Basic concepts

The quantitative assessment of redundant automation systems is usually based on their reliability and availability parameters. These are described in detail below.

Reliability

Reliability refers to the capability of technical equipment to fulfill its function during its operating period. This is usually no longer the case if any of its components fails.

So a commonly used measure for reliability is the **MTBF** (**M**ean **T**ime **B**etween **F**ailure). This can be analyzed statistically based on the parameters of running systems, or by calculating the failure rates of the components used.

Reliability of modules

The reliability of SIMATIC components is extremely high as a consequence of extensive quality assurance measures in design and production.

Reliability of automation systems

The use of redundant modules considerably prolongs the MTBF of a system. The combination of integrated high-quality self-tests and error detection mechanisms of the S7-400H CPUs allows the detection and localization of virtually all errors.

The MTBF of an S7-400H is determined by the **MDT** (**M**ean **D**own **T**ime) of a system unit. This time is derived in essence from the error detection time plus the time required to repair or replace defective modules.

In addition to other measures, a CPU provides a self-test function with an adjustable test cycle time. The default test cycle time is 90 minutes. This time has an influence on the error detection time. The repair time usually required for a modular system such as the S7-400H is 4 hours.

Mean Down Time (MDT)

The MDT of a system is determined by the times outlined below:

- Time required to detect an error
- Time required to find the cause of an error
- Time required for troubleshooting and to restart the system

The system MDT is calculated based on the MDT of the individual system components. The structure in which the components make up the system also forms part of the calculation.

Correlation between MDT and MTBF: MDT << MTBF

The MDT value is of the highest significance for the quality of system maintenance. The most important factors are:

- Qualified personnel
- Efficient logistics
- High-performance tools for diagnostics and error recognition
- A sound repair strategy

The figure below shows the dependency of the MDT on the times and factors mentioned above.

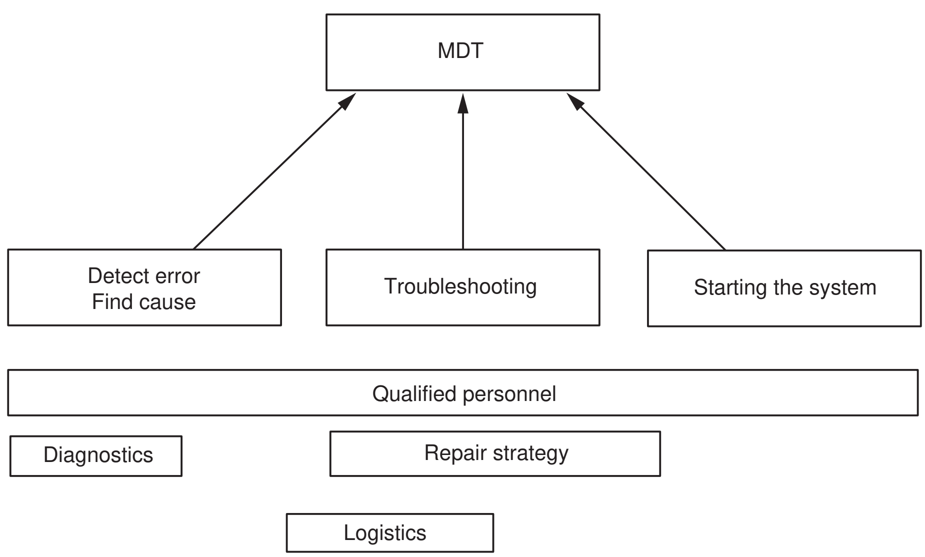


Figure A-1 MDT

The figure below shows the parameters included in the calculation of the MTBF of a system.

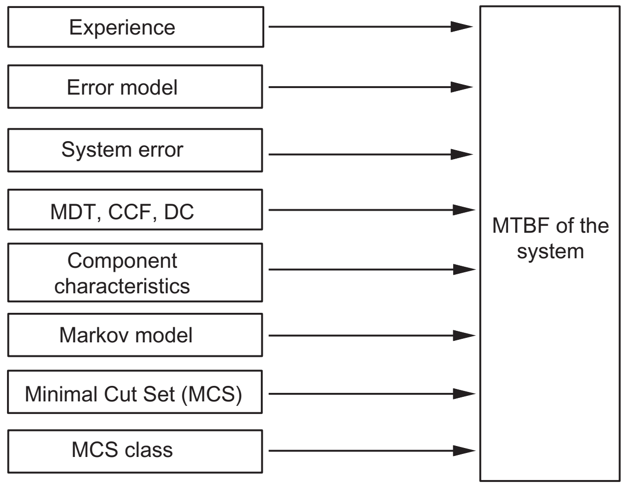


Figure A-2 MTBF

Requirements

This analysis assumes the following conditions:

- The failure rate of all components and all calculations is based on an average temperature of 40 °C.
- The system installation and configuration is free of errors.
- All replacement parts are available locally, in order to prevent extended repair times due to missing spare parts. This keeps the component MDT down to a minimum.
- The MDT of individual components is 4 h. The system's MDT is calculated based on the MDT of the individual components plus the system structure.
- The MTBF of the components meets the following standards:
  - SN 29500
    This standard is compliant with MIL–HDBK 217–F.
  - IEC 60050
  - IEC 61709
- The calculations are made using the diagnostic coverage of each component.
- A CCF factor between 0.2% and 2% is assumed, depending on the system configuration.

Common Cause Failure (CCF)

The Common Cause Failure (CCF) is an error which is caused by one or more events which also lead to an error state on two or more separate channels or components in a system. A CCF leads to a system failure.

The CCF may be caused by one of the following factors:

- Temperature
- Humidity

- Corrosion
- Vibration and shock
- Electromagnetic interference
- Electrostatic discharge
- RF interference
- Unexpected sequence of events
- Operating errors

The CCF factor defines the ratio between the probability of the occurrence of a CCF and the probability of the occurrence of any other error.

Typical CCF factors range from 2% to 0.2% in a system with identical components, and between 1% and 0.1% in a system containing different components.

Within the range stipulated in IEC 61508, a CCF factor between 0.02% and 5% is used to calculate the MTBF.

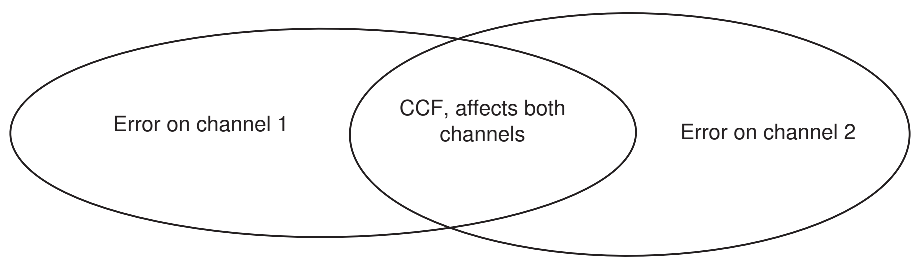


Figure A-3 Common Cause Failure (CCF)

Reliability of an S7-400H

The use of redundant modules prolongs the system MTBF by a large factor. The integrated high-grade self-test and the test/message functions of the S7-400H CPUs enable the detection and localization of virtually all errors. The calculated diagnostic coverage is around 90%.

The reliability in stand-alone mode is described by the corresponding failure rate. The failure rate for all S7 components is calculated according to the SN29500 standard.

The reliability in redundant mode is described by the failure rate of the components involved. This is termed "MTBF" below. Those combinations of failed components which cause a system failure are described and calculated using Markov models. Calculations of the system MTBF take account of the diagnostic coverage and the common cause factor.

Availability

Availability is the probability that a system is operable at a given point of time. This can be enhanced by means of redundancy, for example by using redundant I/O modules or multiple encoders at the same sampling point. Redundant components are arranged such that system operability is not affected by the failure of a single component. Here, again, an important element of availability is a detailed diagnostics display.

The availability of a system is expressed as a percentage. It is defined by the mean time between failure (MTBF) and the mean time to repair MTTR (MDT). The availability of a two-channel (1-out-of-2) fault-tolerant system can be calculated using the following formula:

$$V = \frac{MTBF_{1v2}}{MTBF_{1v2} + MDT} \, 100\%$$

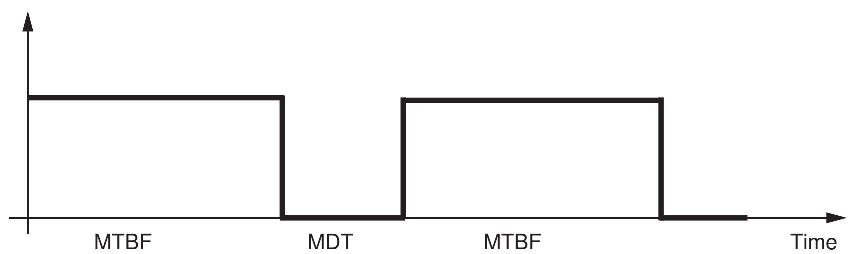


Figure A-4 Availability

A.2 Comparison of MTBF for selected configurations

The following sections compare systems with a centralized and distributed I/Os.

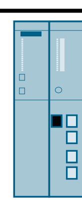
The following framework conditions are set for the calculation.

- MDT (Mean Down Time) 4 hours
- Ambient temperature 40 degrees
- Buffer voltage is safeguarded

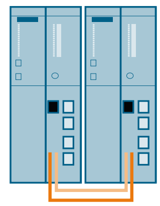
A.2.1 System configurations with redundant CPU 410

The following system with one CPU (e.g., CPU 410-5H PN/DP) in stand-alone operation serves as the basis for calculating a reference factor that defines the multiple of the system MTBF of other systems with centralized I/O compared with the base line.

Fault-tolerant CPU in stand-alone operation

Fault-tolerant CPU 410-5H in stand-alone mode	Factor
	1

Redundant CPUs in different racks

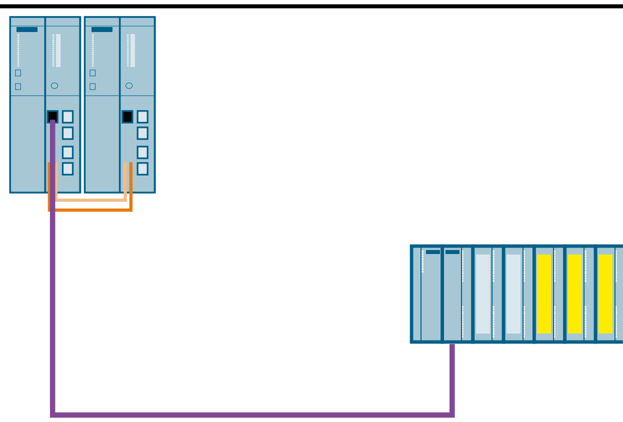
Redundant CPU 410-5H in divided rack, CCF = 2%	Factor
	approx. 15

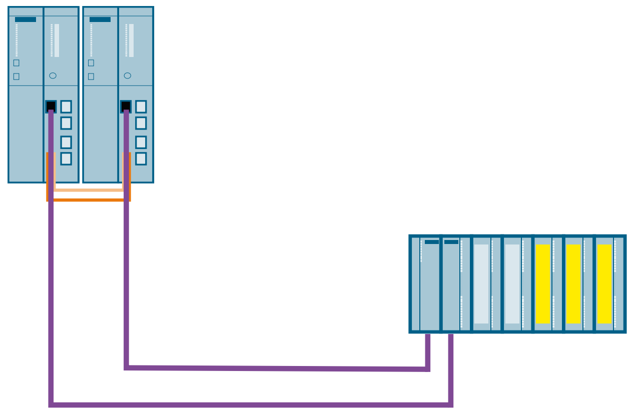
Redundant CPU 410-5H in two separate racks, CCF = 1 %	Factor
	approx. 20

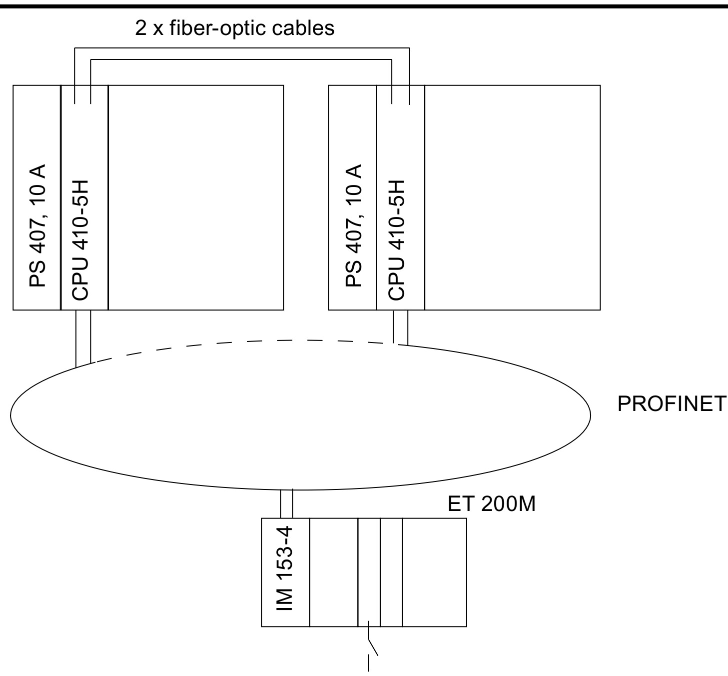
A.2.2 System configurations with distributed I/Os

The system with two fault-tolerant CPUs 410-5H and one-sided I/Os described below is taken as a basis for calculating a reference factor which specifies the multiple of the availability of the other systems with distributed I/Os compared with the base line.

Redundant CPUs with single-channel one-sided or switched I/O

One-sided distributed I/O	Base line
	1

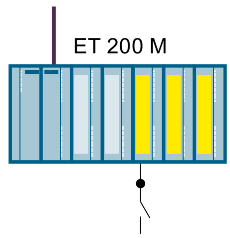
Switched distributed I/O, PROFIBUS DP, CCF = 2 %	Factor
	approx. 15

Switched distributed I/O, PROFINET, CCF = 2 %	Factor
	approx. 10

The estimate applies if the process allows for any device to fail.

Redundant CPUs with redundant I/O

The comparison only took account of the I/O modules.

Single-channel one-sided I/O	MTBF factor
	1

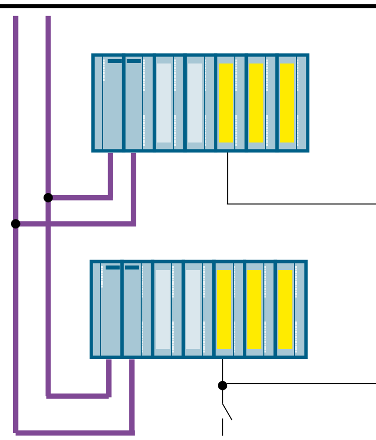
Redundant I/O	MTBF factor
	See following table

Table A-1 MTBF factors of the redundant I/O

Module	MLFB	MTBF factor CCF = 1%
Digital input modules, distributed		
DI 24xDC24V	6ES7 326–1BK02–0AB0	approx. 5
DI 8xNAMUR [EEx ib]	6ES7 326-1RF00-0AB0	approx. 5
DI16xDC24V, Alarm	6ES7 321–7BH01–0AB0	approx. 4
Analog input modules, distributed		
AI 6x13Bit	6ES7 336-1HE00-0AB0	approx. 5
AI8x12Bit	6ES7 331-7KF02-0AB0	approx. 5
Digital output modules, distributed		
DO 10xDC24V/2A	6ES7 326–2BF01–0AB0	approx. 5
DO8xDC24V/2A	6ES7 322-1BF01-0AA0	approx. 3
DO32xDC24V/0.5A	6ES7 322–1BL00–0AA0	approx. 3

Summary

Several thousand redundant automation systems are in use in different configurations in manufacturing and process automation. To calculate the MTBF, we assumed an average configuration.

Based on experience in the field, an assumption of MTBF of 3000 years is 95% reliable.

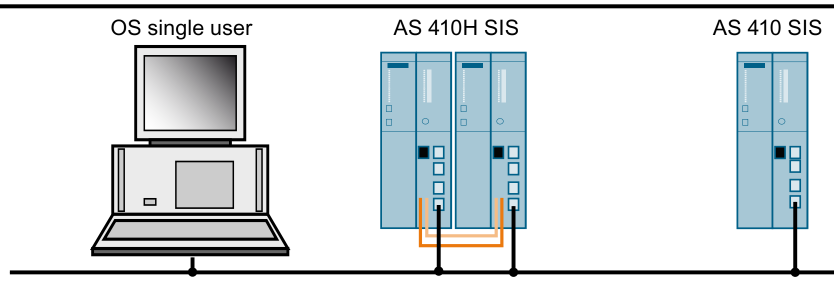
The system MTBF value calculated is about 230 years for a system configuration with redundant CPU 410-5H.

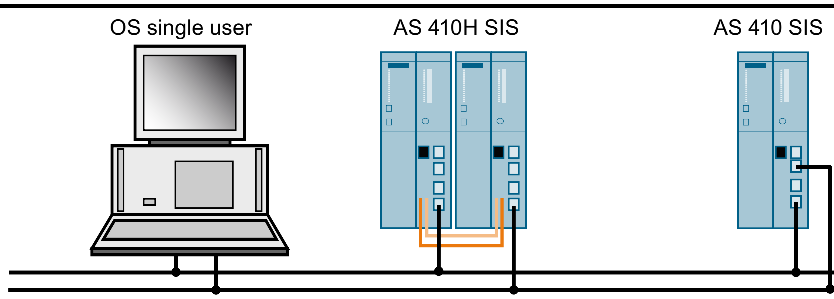
A.2.3 Comparison of system configurations with standard and fault-tolerant communication

The next section shows a comparison between standard and fault-tolerant communication for a configuration consisting of a fault-tolerant system, a fault-tolerant CPU operating in stand-alone mode, and a single-channel OS.

The comparison only took account of the CP and cable communication components.

Systems with standard and fault-tolerant communication

Standard communication	Base line
	1

Fault-tolerant communication	Factor
	Approx. 80

Function and communication modules that can be used in a redundant configuration

B

A complete list of all modules approved for SIMATIC PCS 7 can be found under "Manuals for the SIMATIC PCS 7 V9.X software" > "SIMATIC PCS 7 system documentation" > "Approved modules V9.X" at the following address: SIMATIC PCS 7 technical documentation (https://new.siemens.com/global/en/products/automation/process-control/simatic-pcs-7/technical-documentation.html)

In **redundant configuration** you can use the following function modules (FM) and communication processors (CP) with a CPU 410-5H.

Note

There may be further restriction for individual modules. Refer to the information in the corresponding product information and FAQ, or in SIMATIC NET News.

FMs and CPs which can be used centrally

Module	Article No.	Release	One-sided	Redundant
Communication module CP443-1 (Industrial Ethernet ISO and TCP/IP, 2-port switch) Without PROFINET IO and PROFINET CBA	6GK7 443–1EX30–0XE0	As of product version 1 As of firmware V3.0	Yes	Yes
Communication module CP443-1 Advanced[3] (Industrial Ethernet ISO and TCP/IP, 4-port switch, Gigabit port)	6GK7 443–1GX30–0XE0	As of product version 1 As of firmware V3.0	Yes	Yes
Communication processor CP 443-5 Extended (PROFIBUS DPV1) [1) 2)]	6GK7 443-5DX04-0XE0	As of product version 1 As of firmware V6.0	Yes	Yes
	6GK7 443-5DX05-0XE0	As of product version 1 As of firmware V7.1	Yes	Yes

[1)] Only these modules should be used as external master interfaces on the PROFIBUS DP.

[2)] These modules support DPV1 as external DP master interface module (complying with IEC 61158/EN 50170).

[3)] Do not use this CP directly on the Internet. If you want to connect the system to the Internet, you need to install appropriate protection devices in front of the CP, for example, a SCALANCE SC with firewall. Also read the information in the Industry Online Support on the Internet (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/us/en/view/109799025).

FMs and CPs usable for distributed switched use

Module	Article No.	Release
Communication processor CP 341-1 (point-to-point link)		
	6ES7 341-1AH01-0AE0 6ES7 341-1BH01-0AE0 6ES7 341-1CH01-0AE0	As of product version 1 As of firmware V1.0.0
	6ES7 341-1AH02-0AE0 6ES7 341-1BH02-0AE0 6ES7 341-1CH02-0AE0	As of product version 1 As of firmware V2.0.0
Communication processor CP 342-2 (ASI bus interface module)	6GK7 342-2AH01-0XA0	As of product version 1 As of firmware V1.10
Communication processor CP 343-2 (ASI bus interface module)	6GK7 343-2AH00-0XA0	As of product version 2 As of firmware V2.03
Counter module FM 350-2	6ES7 350-2AH00-0AE0	As of product version 2
Control module FM 355 C	6ES7 355-0VH10-0AE0	As of product version 4
Control module FM 355 S	6ES7 355-1VH10-0AE0	As of product version 3

Note

One-sided or switched function modules and communication processors are **not** synchronized in the fault-tolerant system if they exist in pairs.

Connection examples for redundant I/Os

C

C.1 MTA terminal modules (Marshalled Termination Assemblies)

MTA Terminal Modules

MTA terminal modules (Marshalled Termination Assemblies) can be used to connect field devices, sensors and actuators to the I/O modules of the ET 200M remote I/O stations simply, quickly and reliably. They can be used to significantly reduce the costs and required work for cabling and commissioning, and prevent wiring errors.

The individual MTA terminal modules are each tailored to specific I/O modules from the ET 200M range. MTA versions for standard I/O modules are also available, as for redundant and safety-related I/O modules. The MTA terminal modules are connected to the I/O modules using 3 m or 8 m long preassembled cables.

Details on combinable ET 200M modules and suitable connection cables as well as the current MTA product range are available at this address: Update and expansion of the MTA terminal modules (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/29289048)

C.2 Interconnection of output modules

Interconnection of digital output modules using external diodes <-> without external diodes

The table below lists the redundant digital output modules which in redundant operation you should interconnect using external diodes:

Table C-1 Interconnecting digital output modules with/without diodes

Module	with diodes	without diodes
6ES7 326–2BF01–0AB0	X	X
6ES7 322–1BL00–0AA0	X	-
6ES7 322-1BF01-0AA0	X	-
6ES7 322-8BF00-0AB0	X	X
6ES7 322–1FF01–0AA0	-	X
6ES7 322-8BH01-0AB0	-	X
6ES7 322-8BH10-0AB0	-	X
6ES7 322-5RD00-0AB0	X	-
6ES7 322-5SD00-0AB0	X	-

Information on connecting digital output modules via diodes

- Suitable diodes are diodes with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 1 A (e.g., types from the series 1N4003 ... 1N4007).
- It is advisable to separate the ground of the module and the ground of the load. There must be equipotential bonding between both.

Information on connecting analog output modules via diodes

- Suitable diodes are diodes with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 1 A (e.g., types from the series 1N4003 ... 1N4007).
- A separate load supply is advisable. There must be equipotential bonding between both load supplies.

C.3 8-channel HART analog input MTA

The following figure shows the connection of an encoder to two SM 331; AI 8 x 0/4...20mA HART via an 8-channel HART analog input MTA.

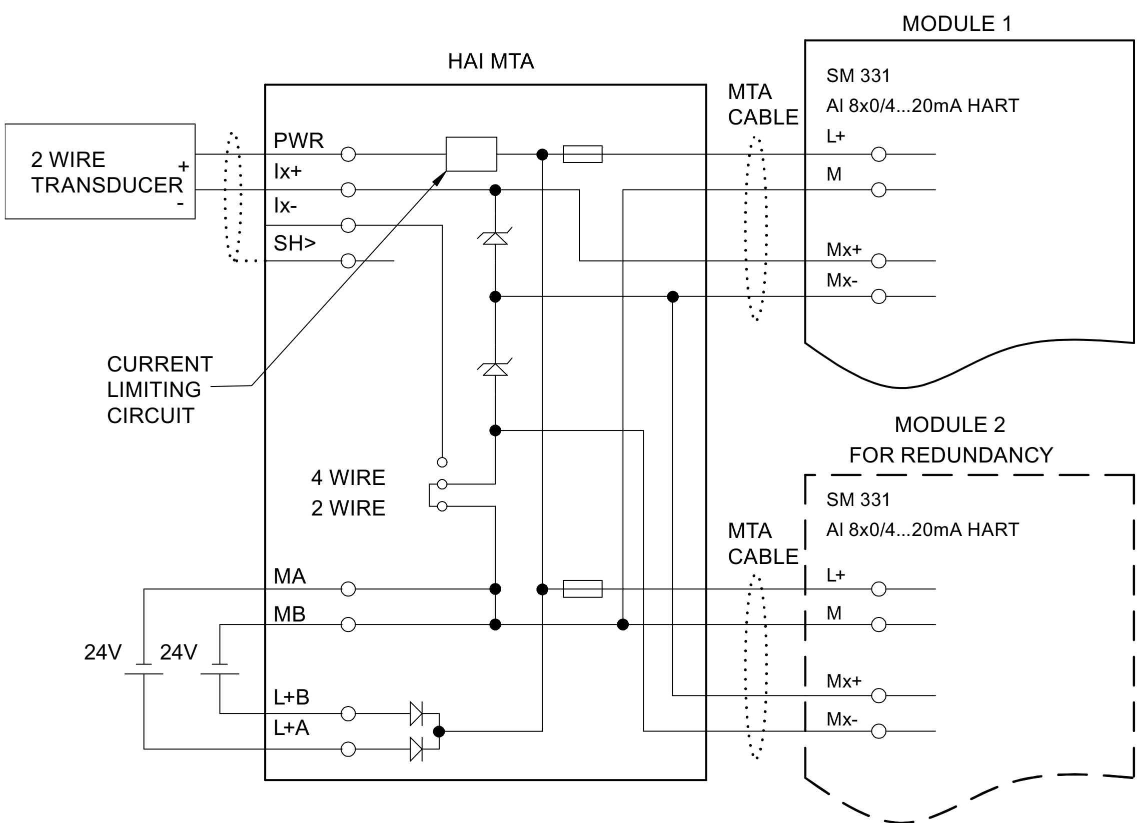


Figure C-1 Interconnection example for SM 331, AI 8 x 0/4...20mA HART

C.4 8-channel HART analog output MTA

The following figure shows the connection of an encoder to two redundant SM 322; AI 8 x 0/4...20mA HART via an 8-channel HART analog output MTA.

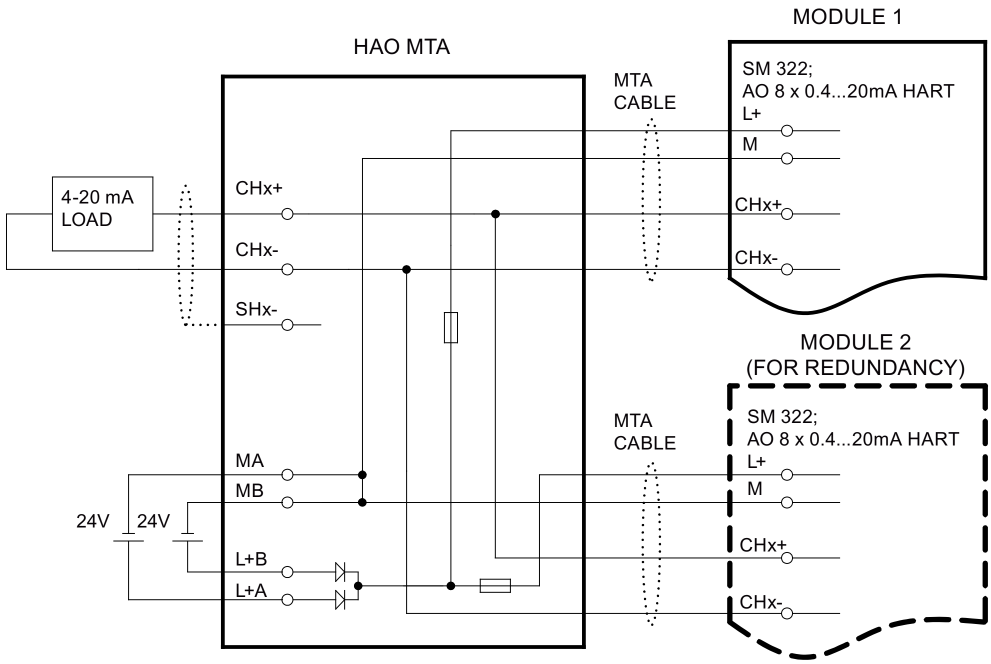


Figure C-2 Interconnection example for SM 322, AI 8 x 0/4...20mA HART

C.5 SM 321; DI 16 x DC 24 V, 6ES7 321−1BH02−0AA0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoders to two SM 321; DI 16 x DC 24 V. The encoders are connected to channel 0.

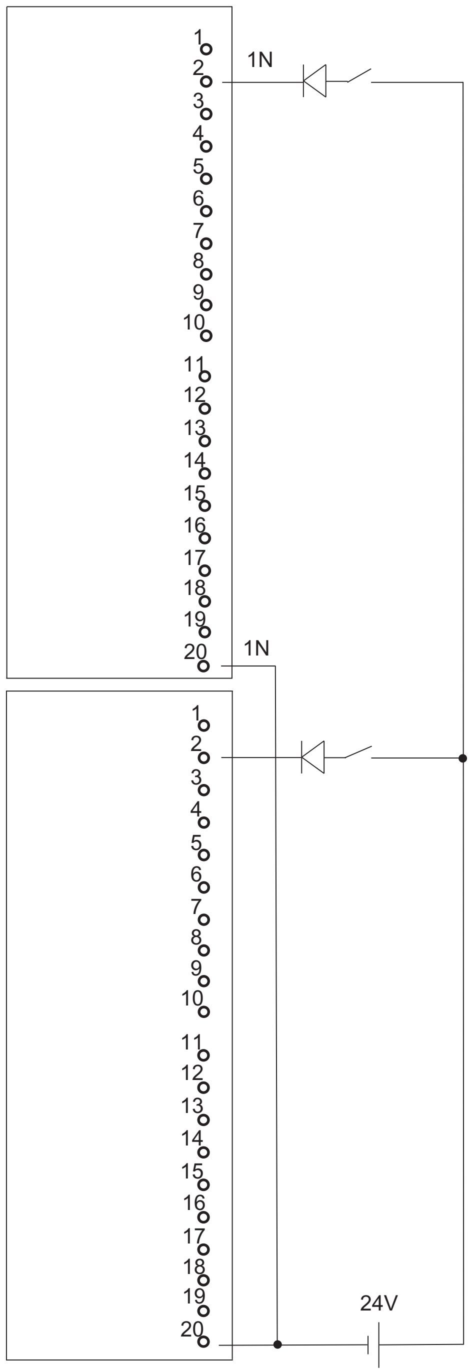


Figure C-3 Example of an interconnection with SM 321; DI 16 x DC 24 V

C.6 SM 321; DI 32 x DC 24 V, 6ES7 321−1BL00−0AA0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoder pairs to two redundant SM 321; DI 32 x DC 24 V. The encoders are connected to channel 0 and channel 16 respectively.

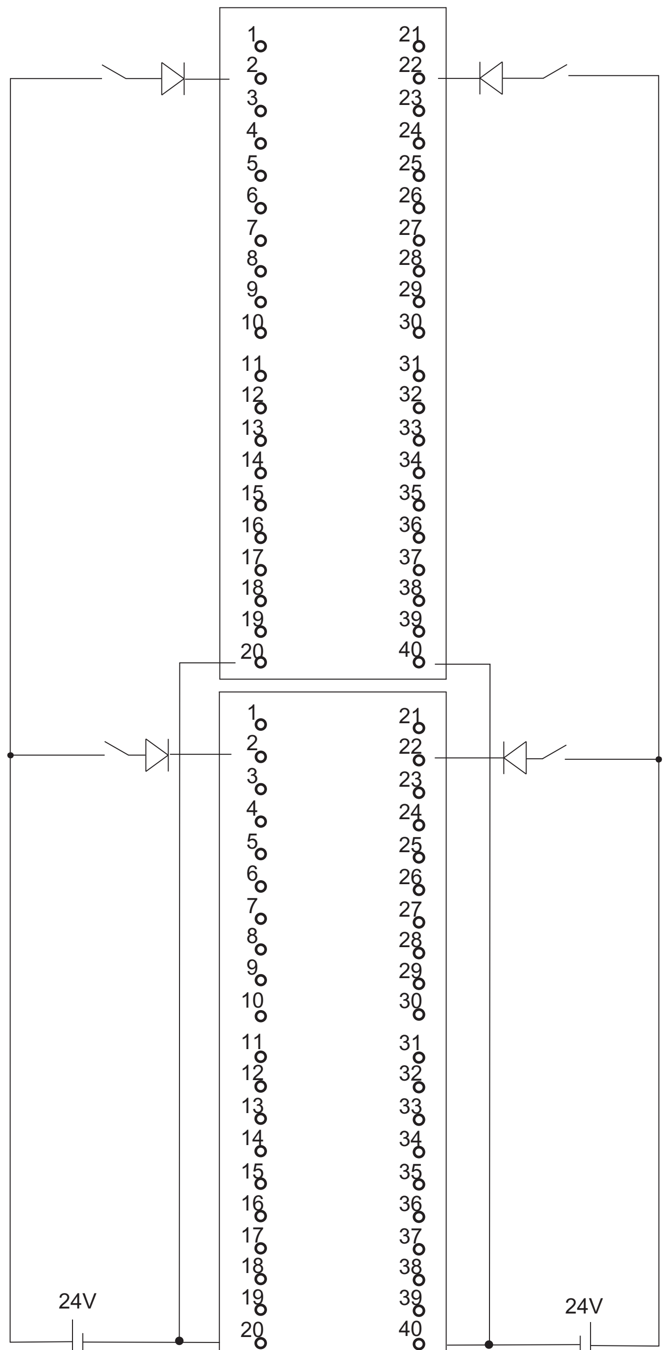


Figure C-4 Example of an interconnection with SM 321; DI 32 x DC 24 V

C.7 SM 321; DI 16 x AC 120/230V, 6ES7 321−1FH00−0AA0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoders to two SM 321; DI 16 x AC 120/230 V. The encoders are connected to channel 0.

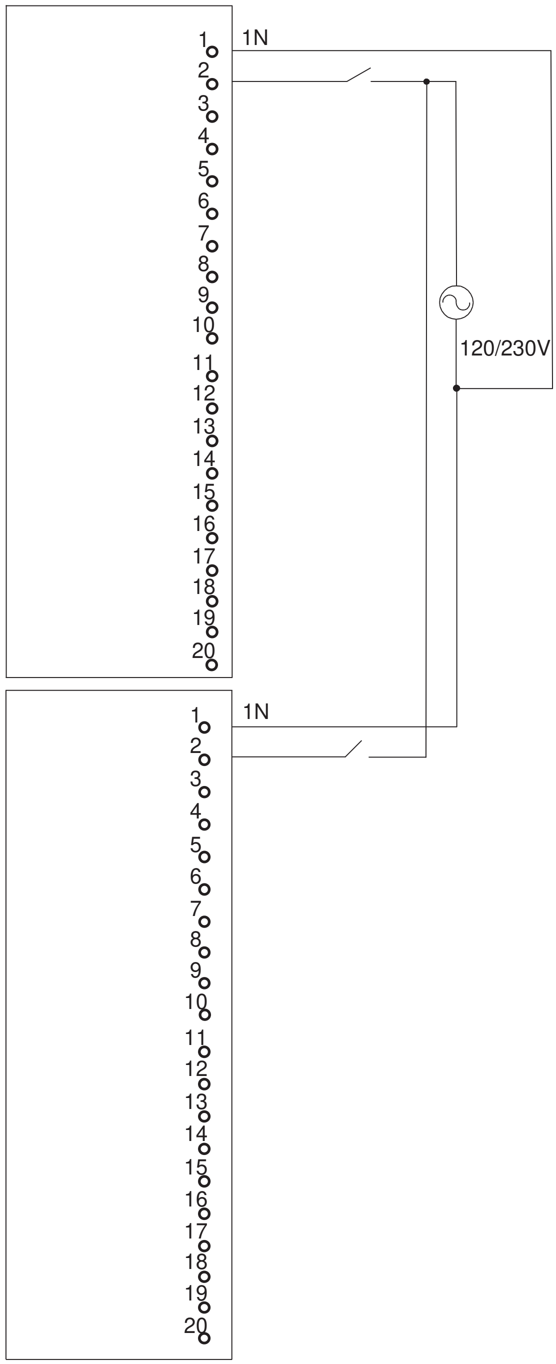


Figure C-5 Example of an interconnection with SM 321; DI 16 x AC 120/230 V

C.8 SM 321; DI 8 x AC 120/230 V, 6ES7 321−1FF01−0AA0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoders to two SM 321; DI 8 AC 120/230 V. The encoders are connected to channel 0.

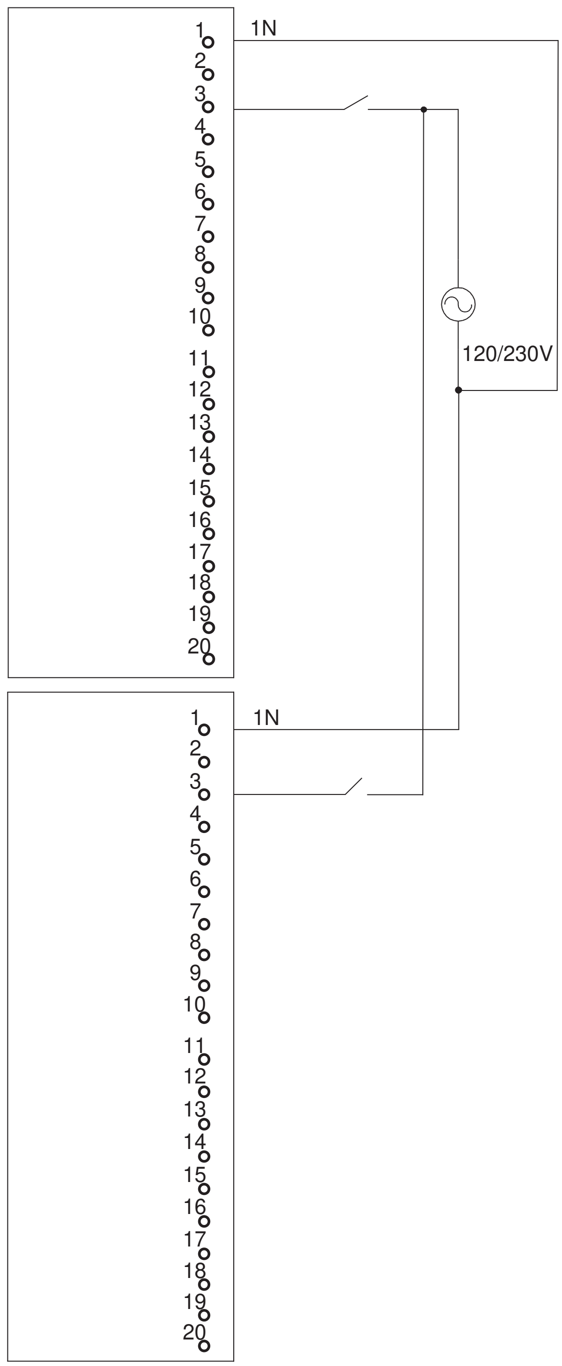


Figure C-6 Example of an interconnection with SM 321; DI 8 x AC 120/230 V

C.9 SM 321; DI 16 x DC 24V, 6ES7 321−7BH00−0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoder pairs to two SM 321; DI 16 x DC 24V. The encoders are connected to channels 0 and 8.

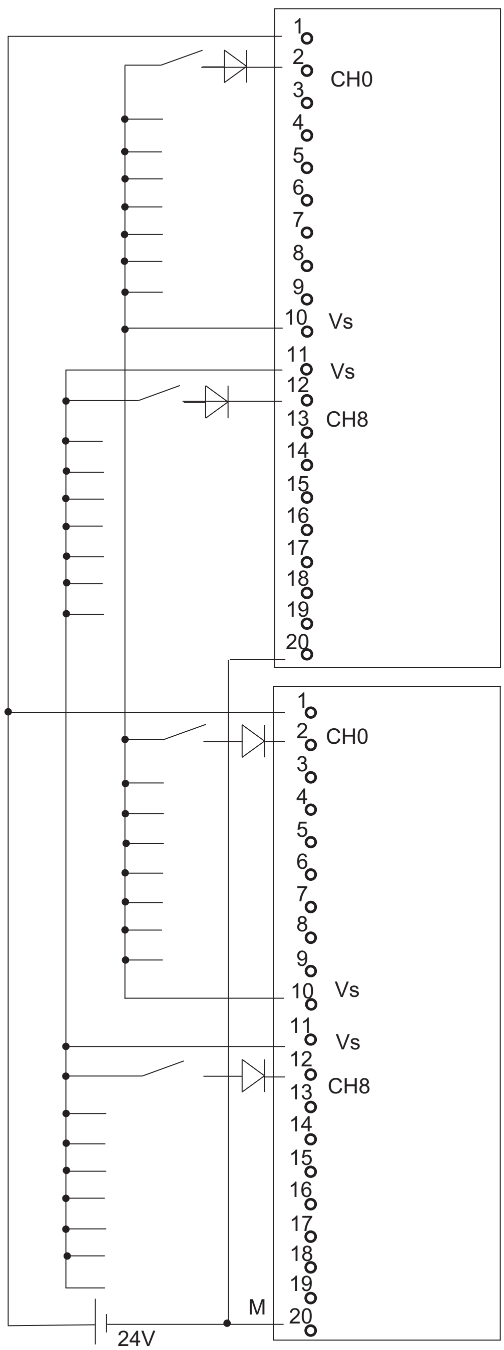


Figure C-7 Example of an interconnection with SM 321; DI 16 x DC 24V

C.10 SM 321; DI 16 x DC 24V, 6ES7 321−7BH01−0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoder pairs to two SM 321; DI 16 x DC 24V. The encoders are connected to channels 0 and 8.

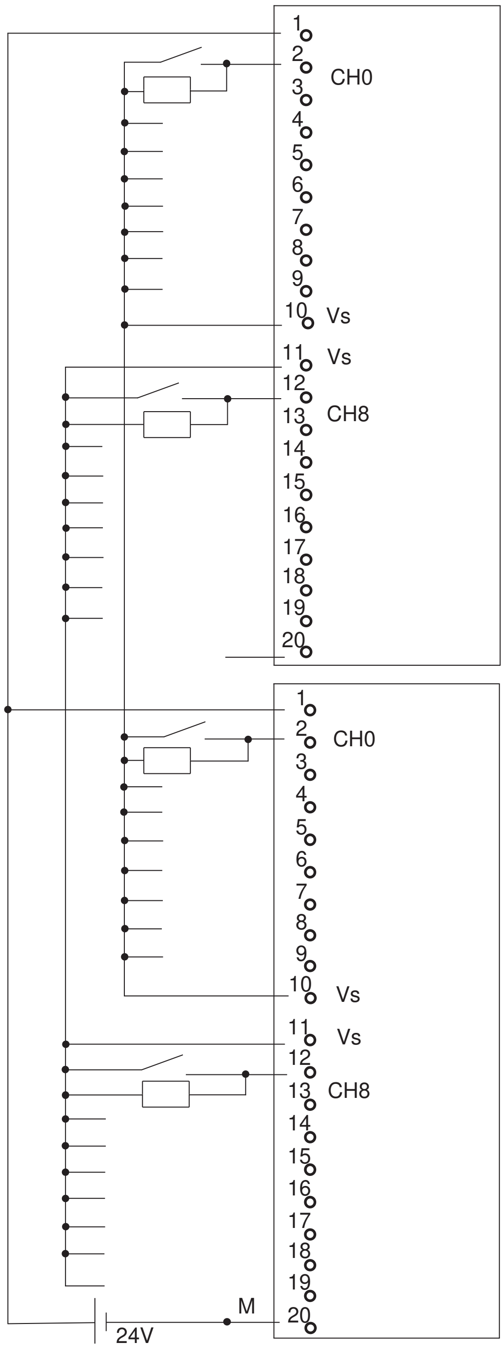


Figure C-8 Example of an interconnection with SM 321; DI 16 x DC 24V

C.11 SM 326; DO 10 x DC 24V/2A, 6ES7 326–2BF01–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two redundant SM 326; DO 10 x DC 24V/2A. The actuator is connected to channel 1.

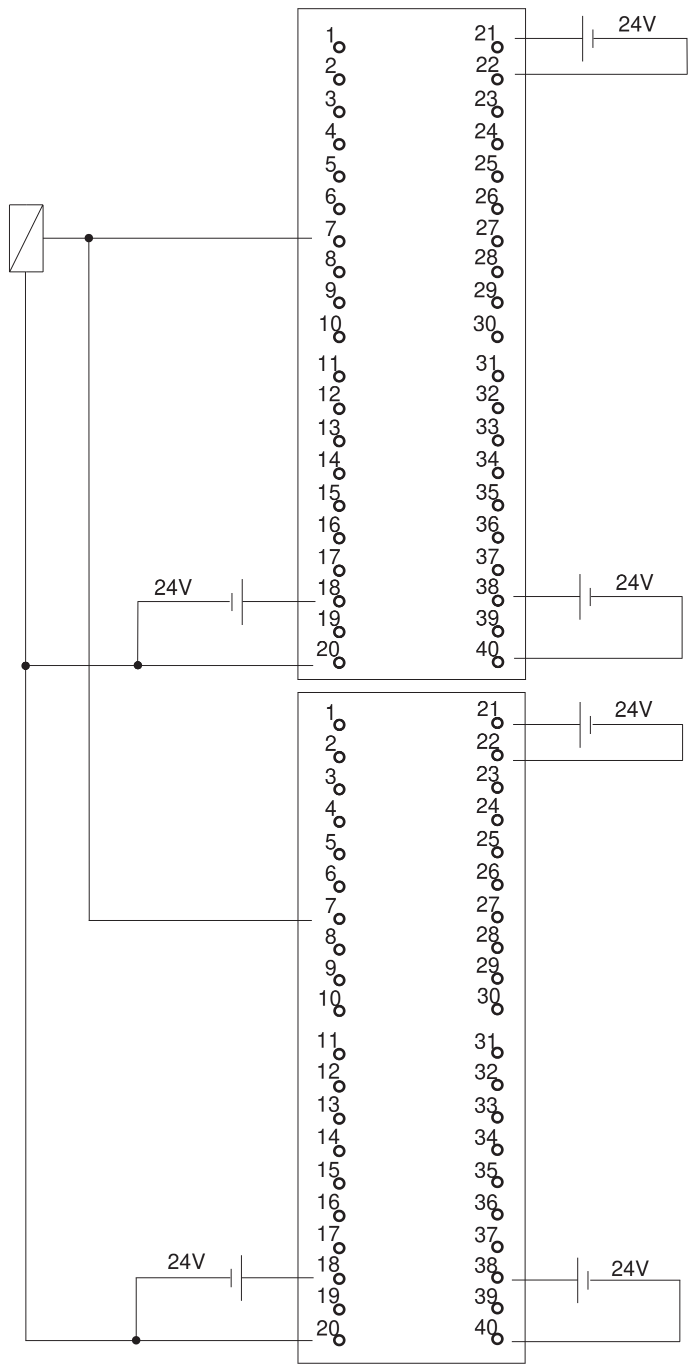


Figure C-9 Example of an interconnection with SM 326; DO 10 x DC 24V/2A

C.12 SM 326; DI 8 x NAMUR, 6ES7 326–1RF00–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoders to two redundant SM 326; DI 8 x NAMUR . The encoders are connected to channel 4.

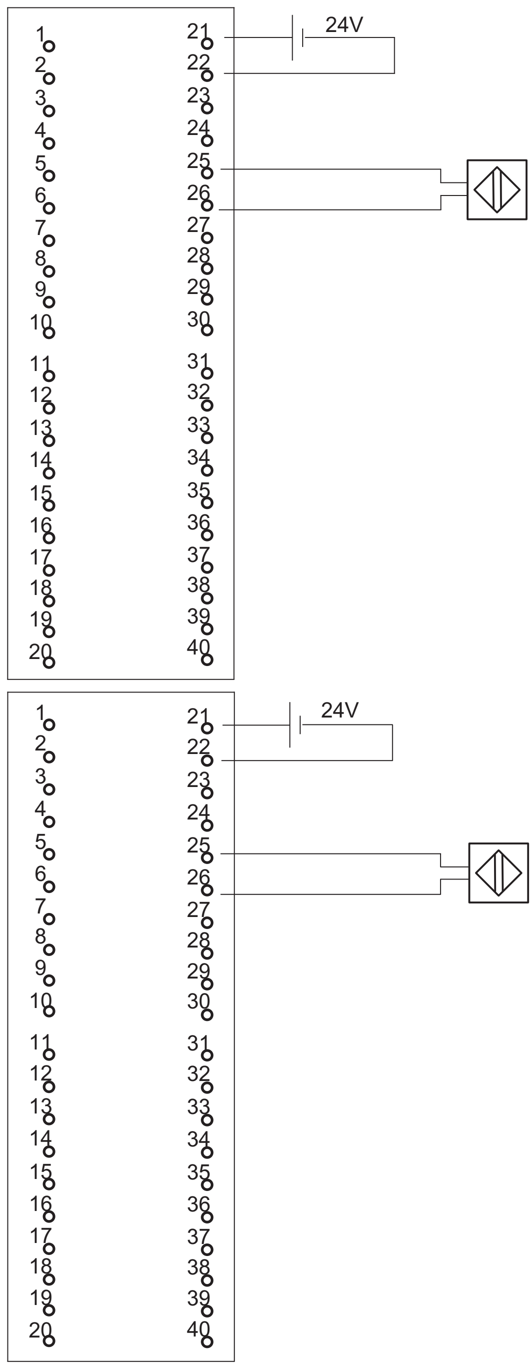


Figure C-10 Example of an interconnection with SM 326; DI 8 x NAMUR

C.13 SM 326; DI 24 x DC 24 V, 6ES7 326−1BK00−0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of one encoder to two redundant SM 326; DI 24 x DC 24 V. The encoder is connected to channel 13.

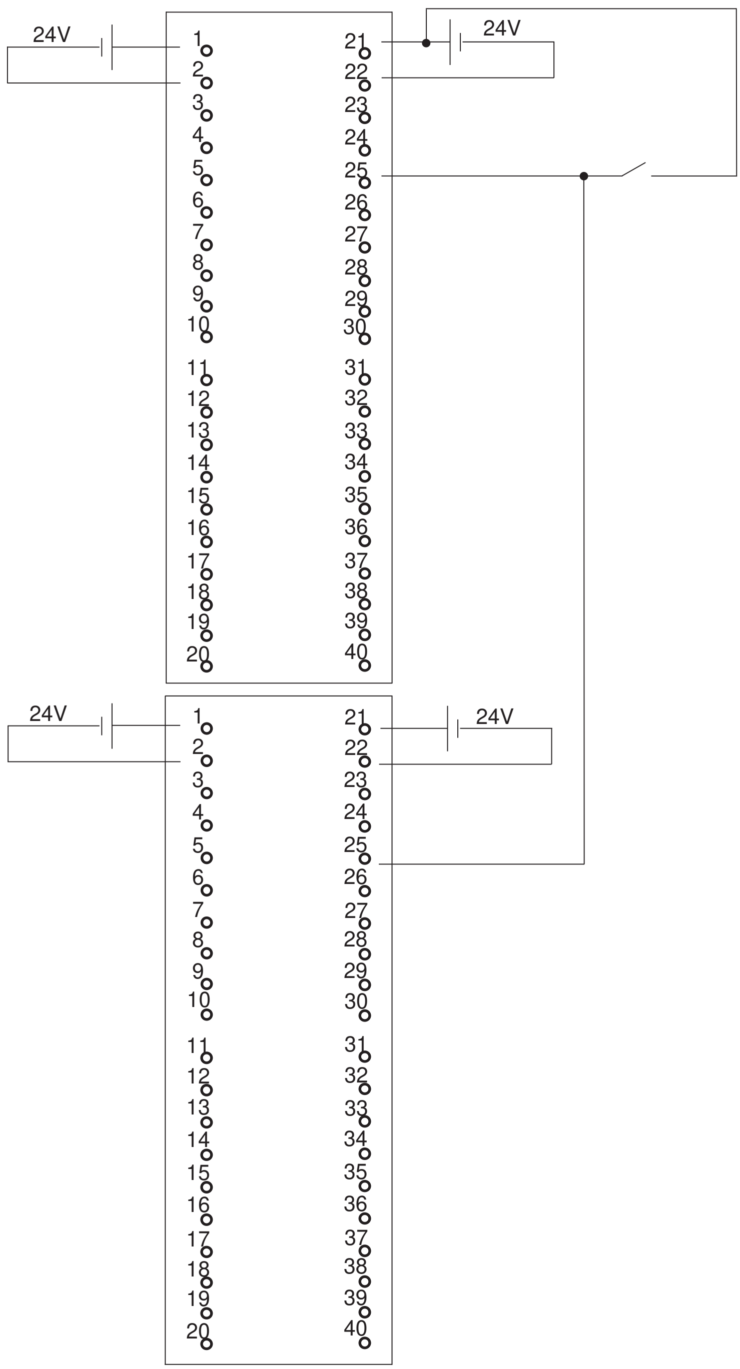


Figure C-11 Example of an interconnection with SM 326; DI 24 x DC 24 V

C.14 SM 421; DI 32 x UC 120 V, 6ES7 421−1EL00−0AA0

The diagram below shows the connection of a redundant encoder to two SM 421; DI 32 x UC 120 V. The encoder is connected to channel 0.

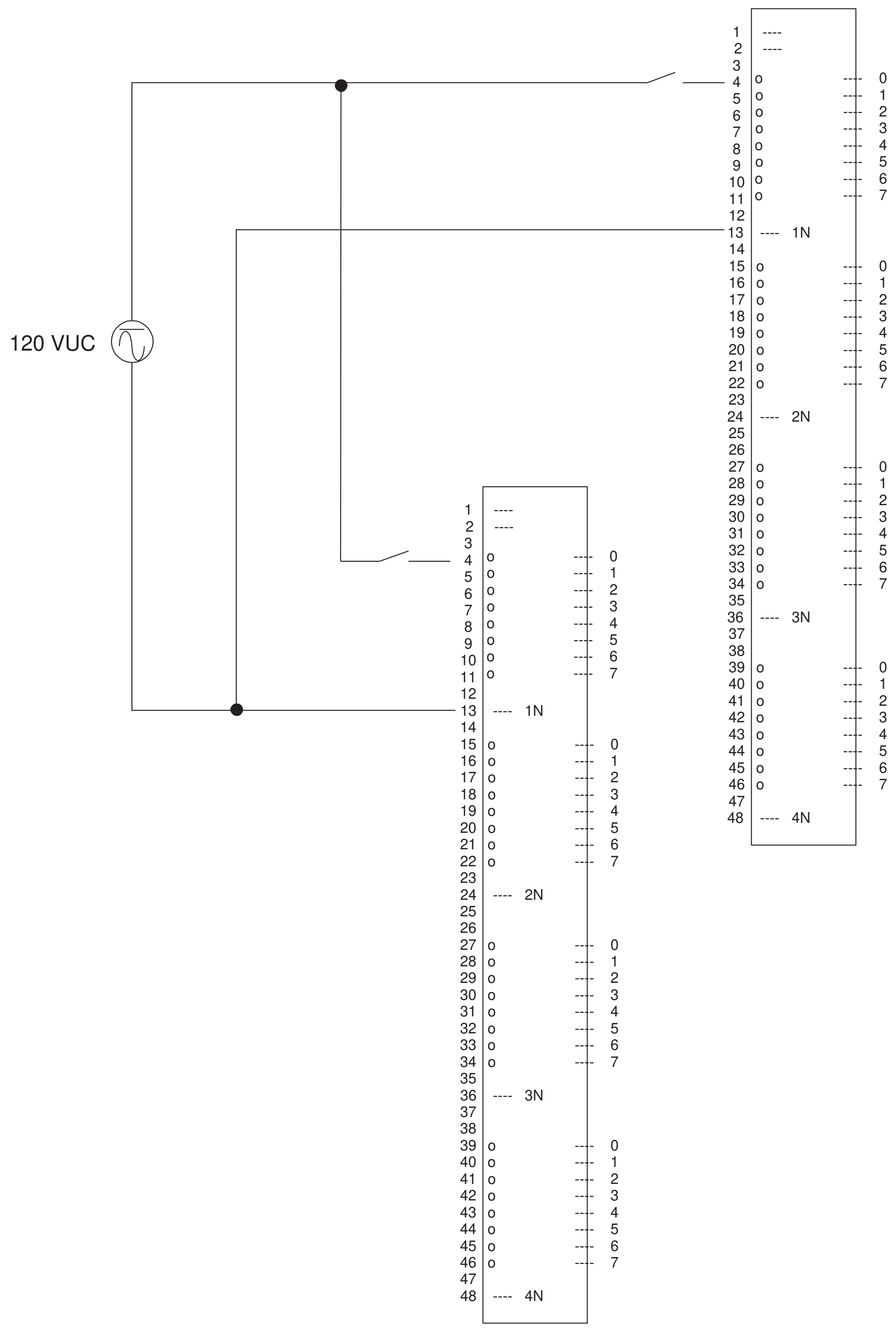


Figure C-12 Example of an interconnection with SM 421; DI 32 x UC 120 V

C.15 SM 421; DI 16 x DC 24 V, 6ES7 421−7BH01−0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoders pairs to two SM 421; D1 16 x 24 V. The encoders are connected to channel 0 and 8.

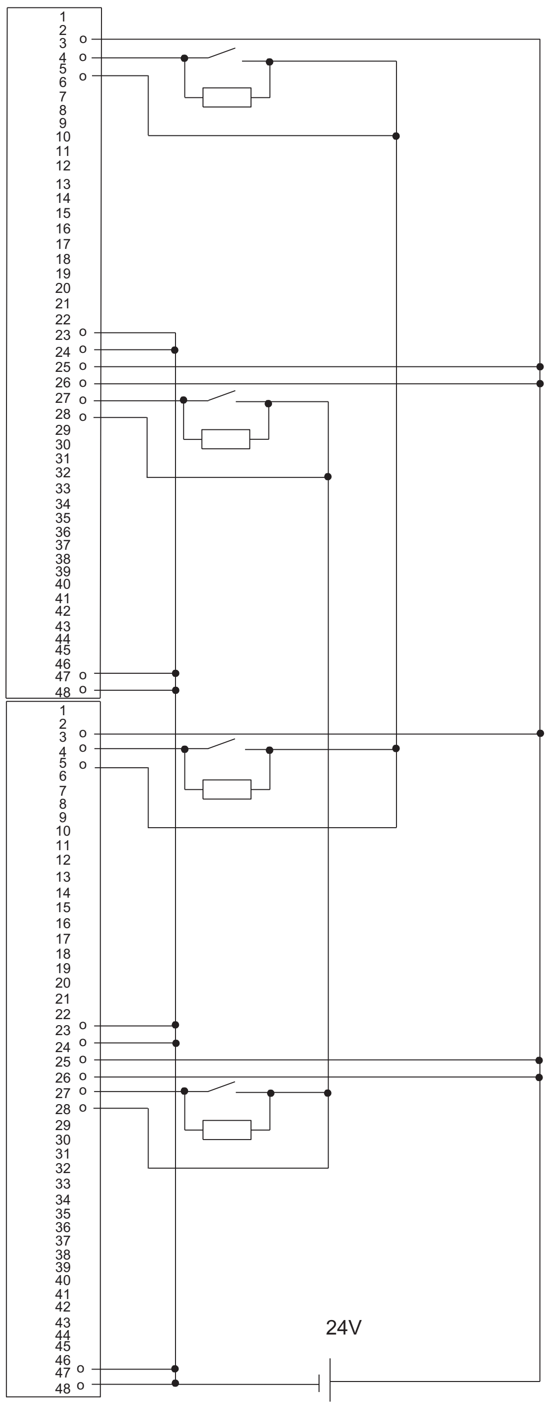


Figure C-13 Example of an interconnection with SM 421; DI 16 x 24 V

C.16 SM 421; DI 32 x DC 24 V, 6ES7 421−1BL00−0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoders to two SM 421; D1 32 x 24 V. The encoders are connected to channel 0.

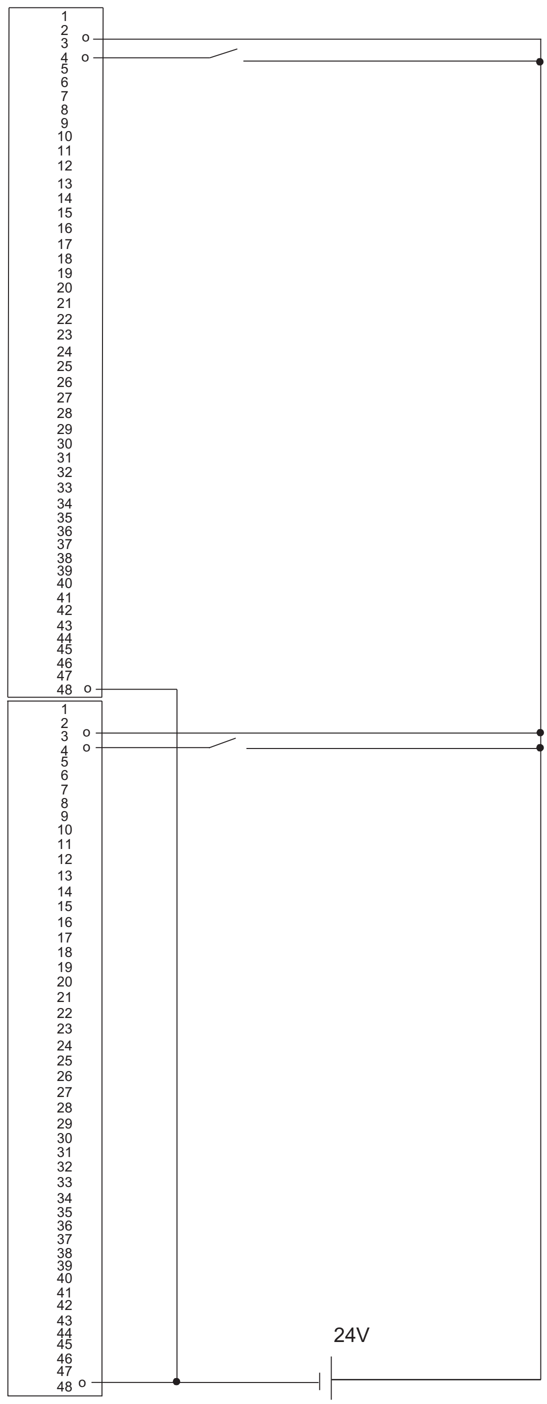


Figure C-14 Example of an interconnection with SM 421; DI 32 x 24 V

C.17 SM 421; DI 32 x DC 24 V, 6ES7 421−1BL01−0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of two redundant encoders to two SM 421; D1 32 x 24 V. The encoders are connected to channel 0.

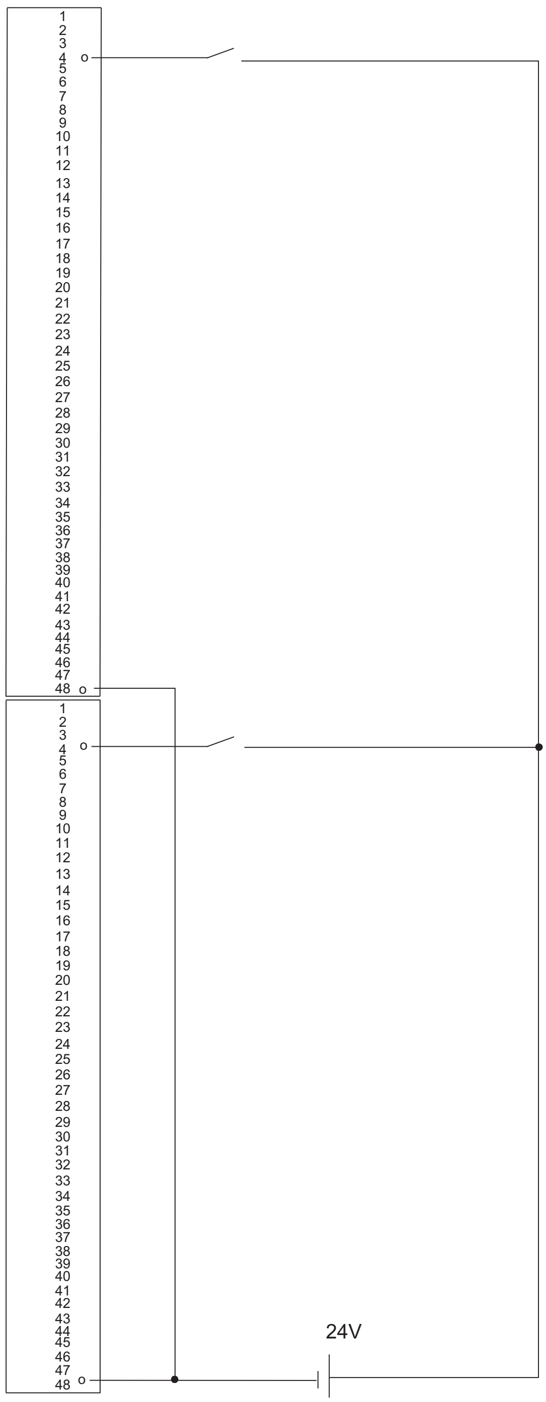


Figure C-15 Example of an interconnection with SM 421; DI 32 x 24 V

C.18 SM 322; DO 8 x DC 24 V/2 A, 6ES7 322–1BF01–0AA0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two redundant SM 322; DO 8 x DC 24 V. The actuator is connected to channel 0.

Types with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 2 A are suitable as diodes

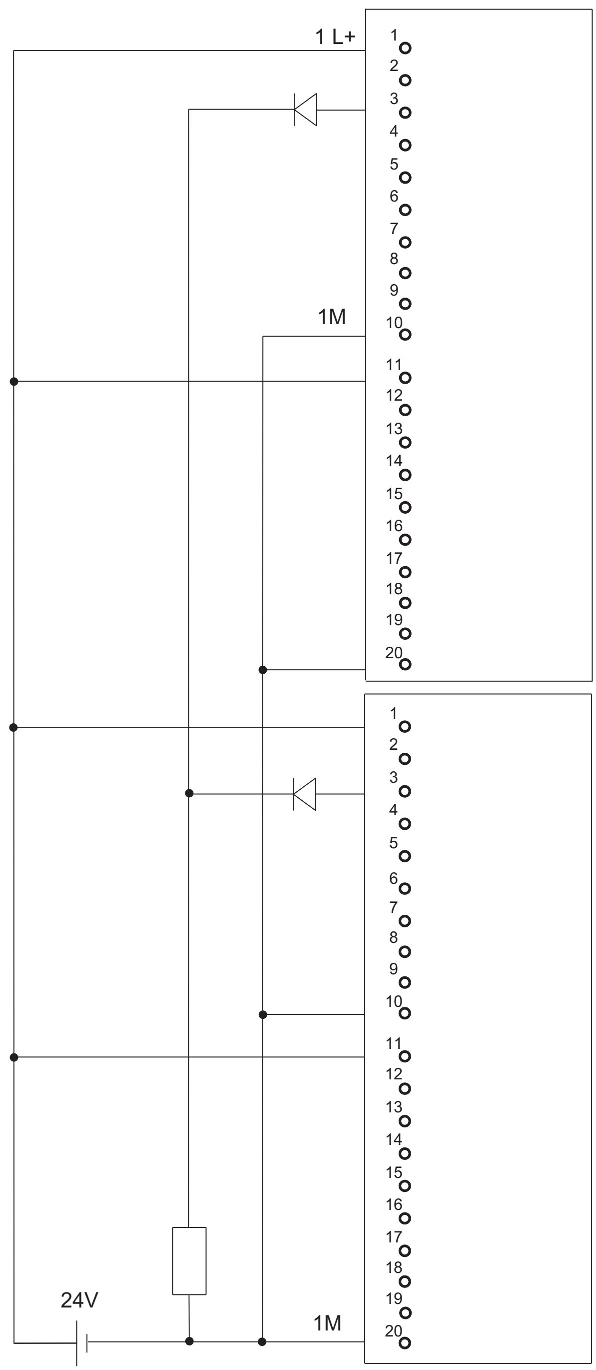


Figure C-16 Example of an interconnection with SM 322; DO 8 x DC 24 V/2 A

C.19 SM 322; DO 32 x DC 24 V/0,5 A, 6ES7 322−1BL00−0AA0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two redundant SM 322; DO 32 x DC 24 V. The actuator is connected to channel 1.

Suitable diodes are, for example, those of the series 1N4003 ... 1N4007, or any other diode with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 1 A

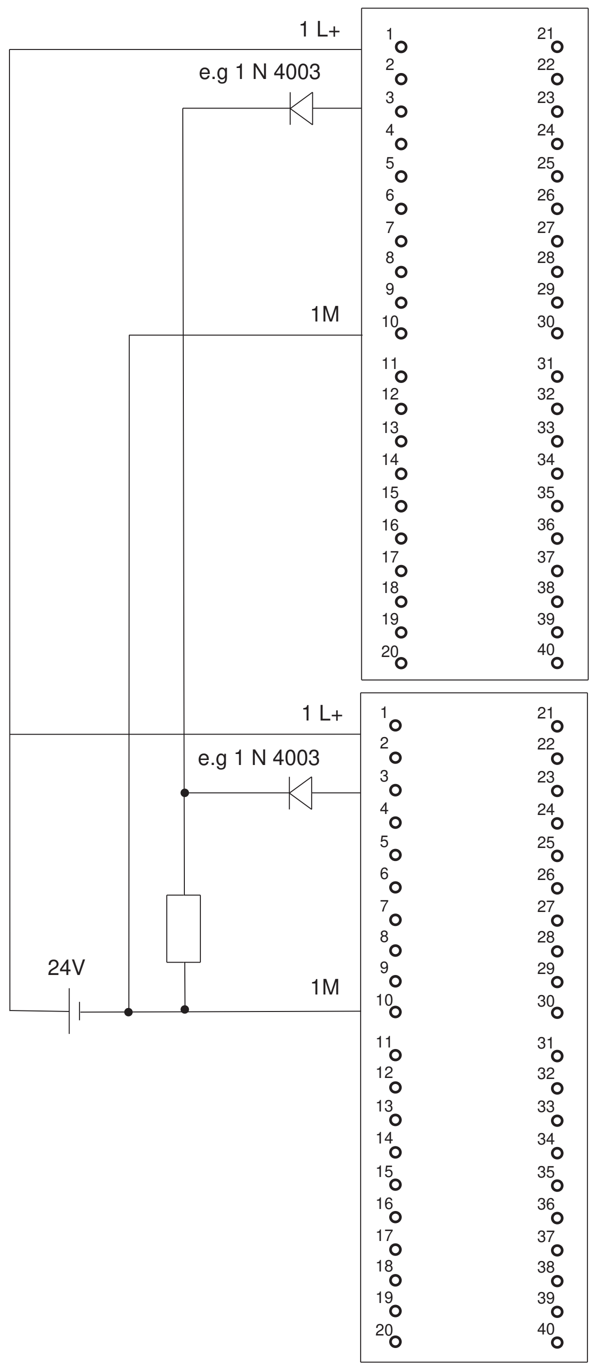


Figure C-17 Example of an interconnection with SM 322; DO 32 x DC 24 V/0.5 A

C.20 SM 322; DO 8 x AC 230 V/2 A, 6ES7 322–1FF01–0AA0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two SM 322; DO 8 x AC 230 V/2 A. The actuator is connected to channel 0.

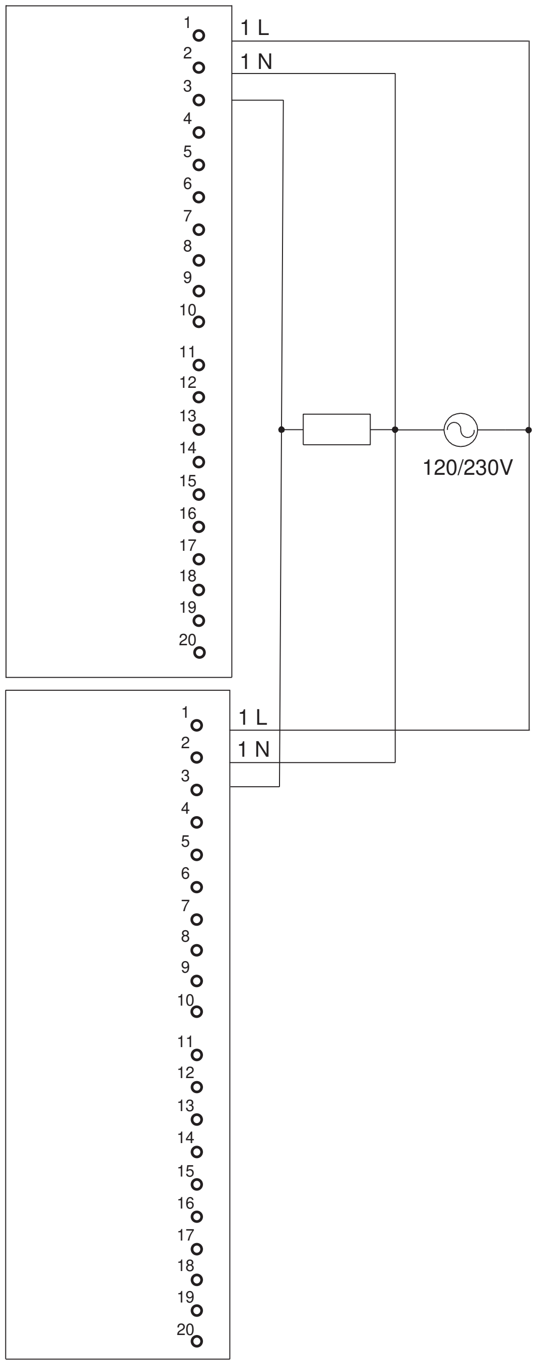


Figure C-18 Example of an interconnection with SM 322; DO 8 x AC 230 V/2 A

C.21 SM 322; DO 4 x DC 24 V/10 mA [EEx ib], 6ES7 322–5SD00–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two SM 322; DO 16 x DC 24 V/10 mA [EEx ib]. The actuator is connected to channel 0. Suitable diodes are, for example, those of the series 1N4003 ... 1N4007, or any other diode with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 1 A

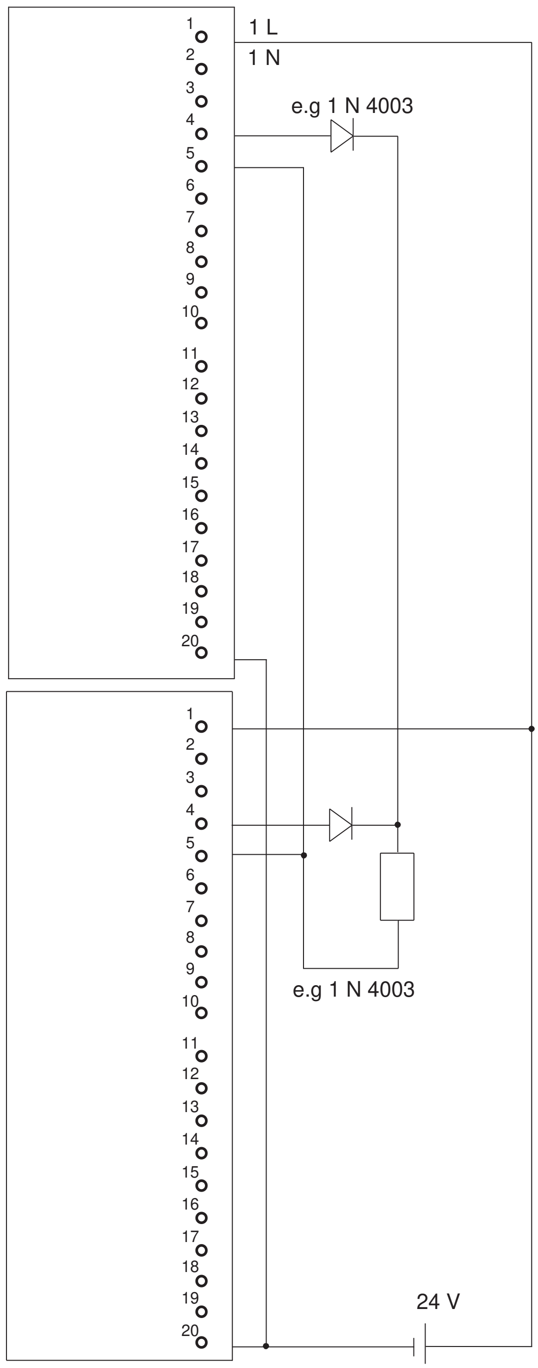


Figure C-19 Example of an interconnection with SM 322; DO 16 x DC 24 V/10 mA [EEx ib]

C.22 SM 322; DO 4 x DC 15 V/20 mA [EEx ib], 6ES7 322–5RD00–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two SM 322; DO 16 x DC 15 V/20 mA [EEx ib]. The actuator is connected to channel 0. Suitable diodes are, for example, those of the series 1N4003 ... 1N4007, or any other diode with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 1 A

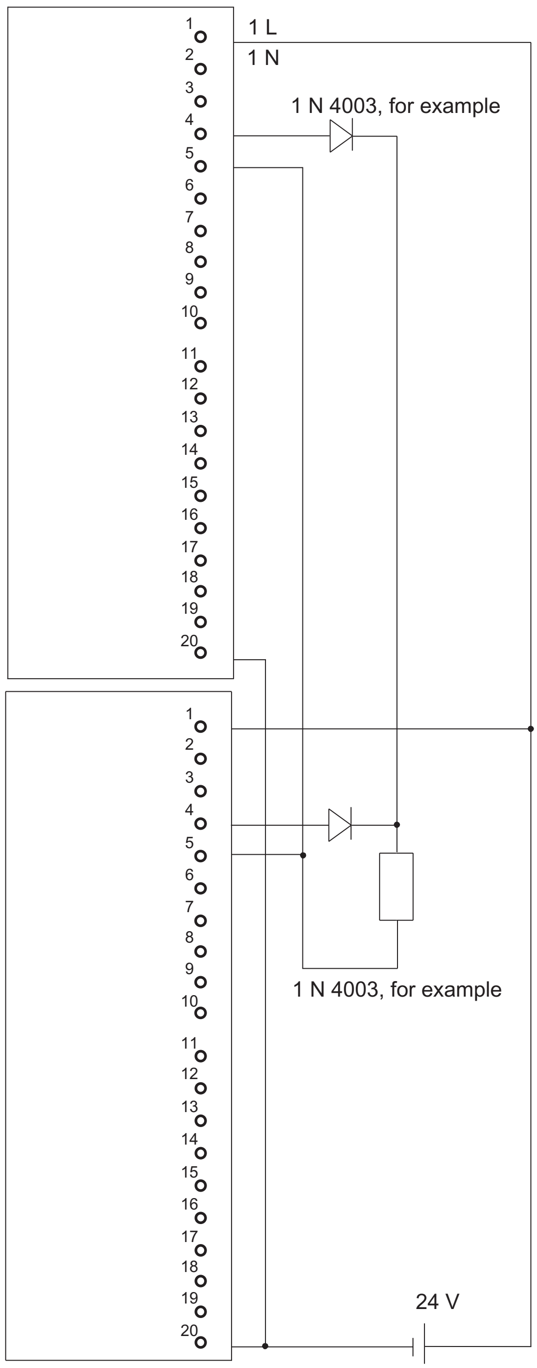


Figure C-20 Example of an interconnection with SM 322; DO 16 x DC 15 V/20 mA [EEx ib]

C.23 SM 322; DO 8 x DC 24 V/0.5 A, 6ES7 322–8BF00–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two redundant SM 322; DO 8 x DC 24 V/0.5 A. The actuator is connected to channel 0.

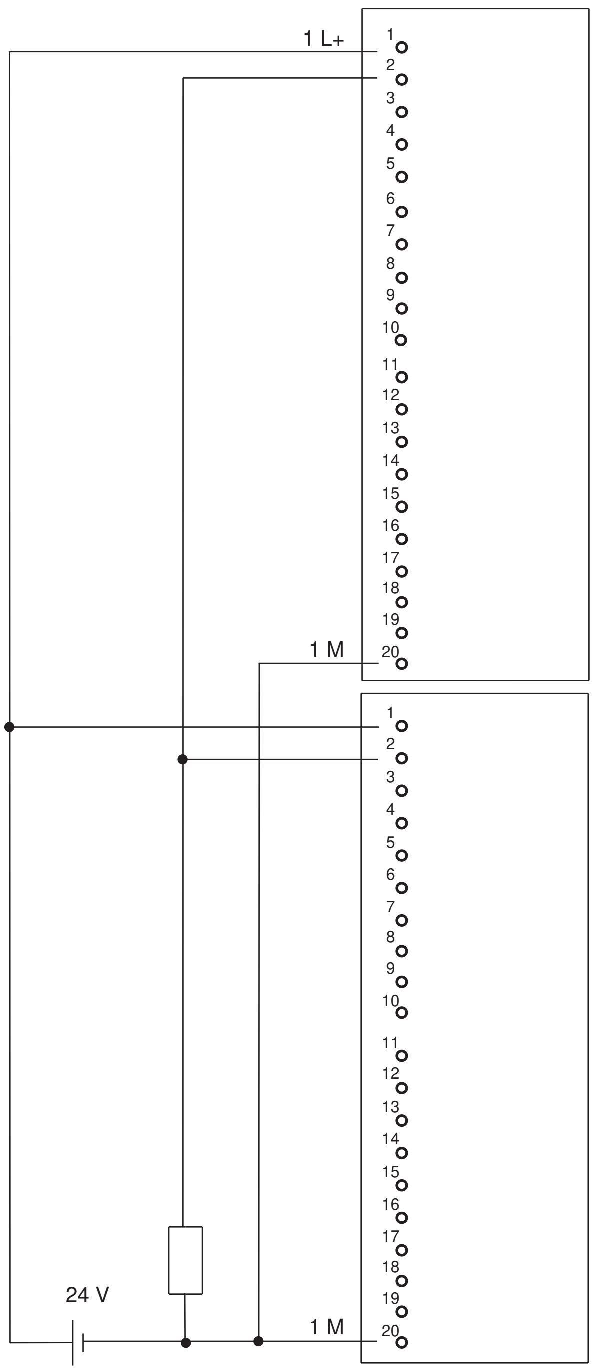


Figure C-21 Example of an interconnection with SM 322; DO 8 x DC 24 V/0.5 A

C.24 SM 322; DO 16 x DC 24 V/0.5 A, 6ES7 322–8BH01–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two redundant SM 322; DO 16 x DC 24 V/0.5 A. The actuator is connected to channel 8.

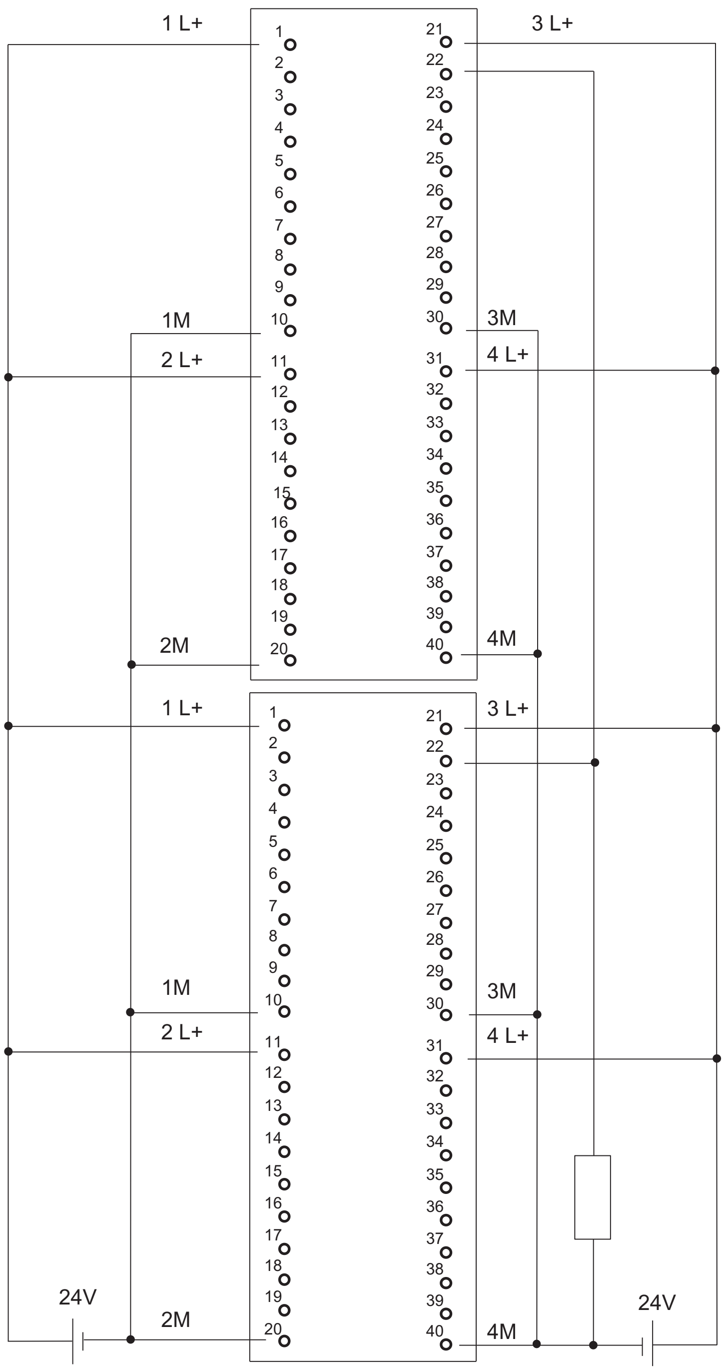


Figure C-22 Example of an interconnection with SM 322; DO 16 x DC 24 V/0.5 A

C.25 SM 332; AO 8 x 12 Bit, 6ES7 332–5HF00–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of two actuators to two redundant SM 332; AO 8 x 12 Bit. The actuators are connected to channels 0 and 4. Suitable diodes are, for example, those of the series 1N4003 ... 1N4007, or any other diode with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 1 A

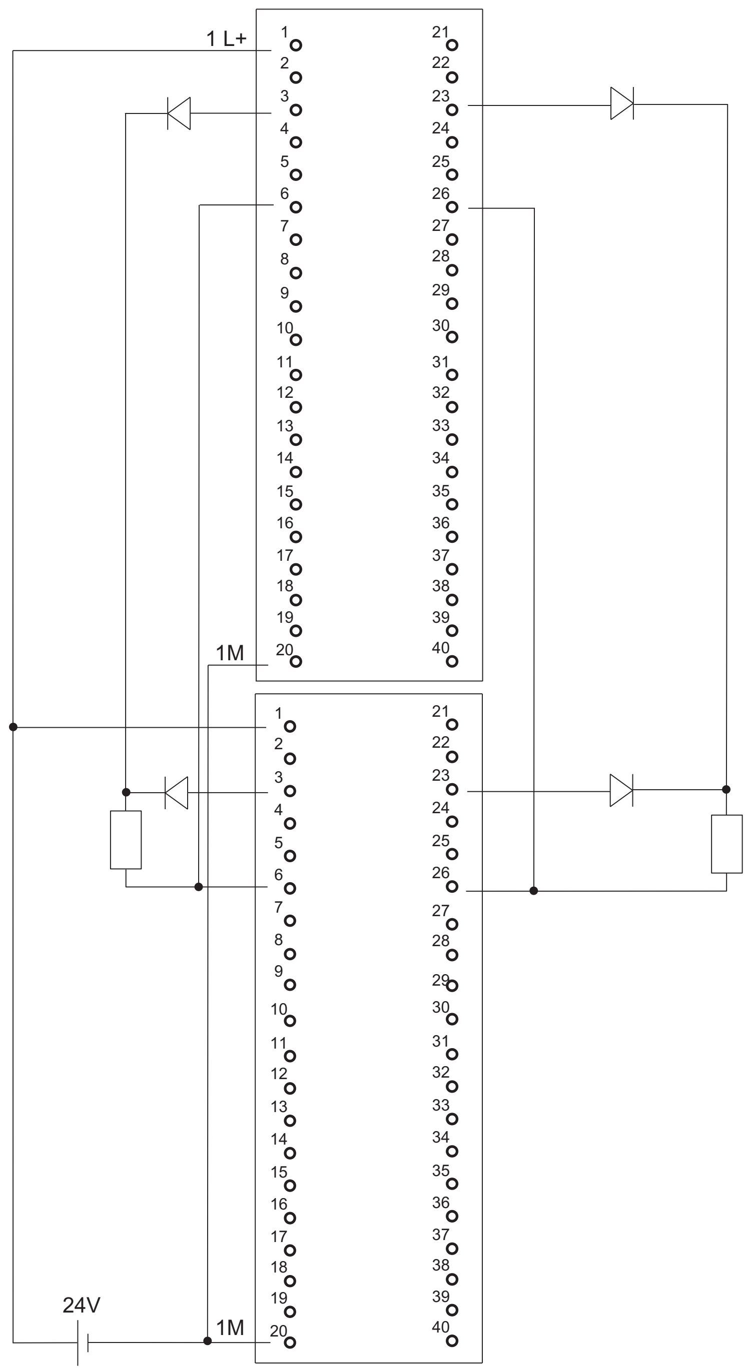


Figure C-23   Example of an interconnection with SM 332, AO 8 x 12 Bit

C.26 SM 332; AO 4 x 0/4...20 mA [EEx ib], 6ES7 332–5RD00–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two SM 332; AO 4 x 0/4...20 mA [EEx ib]. The actuator is connected to channel 0.
Suitable diodes are, for example, types from the series 1N4003 ... 1N4007 or any other diode with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 1 A

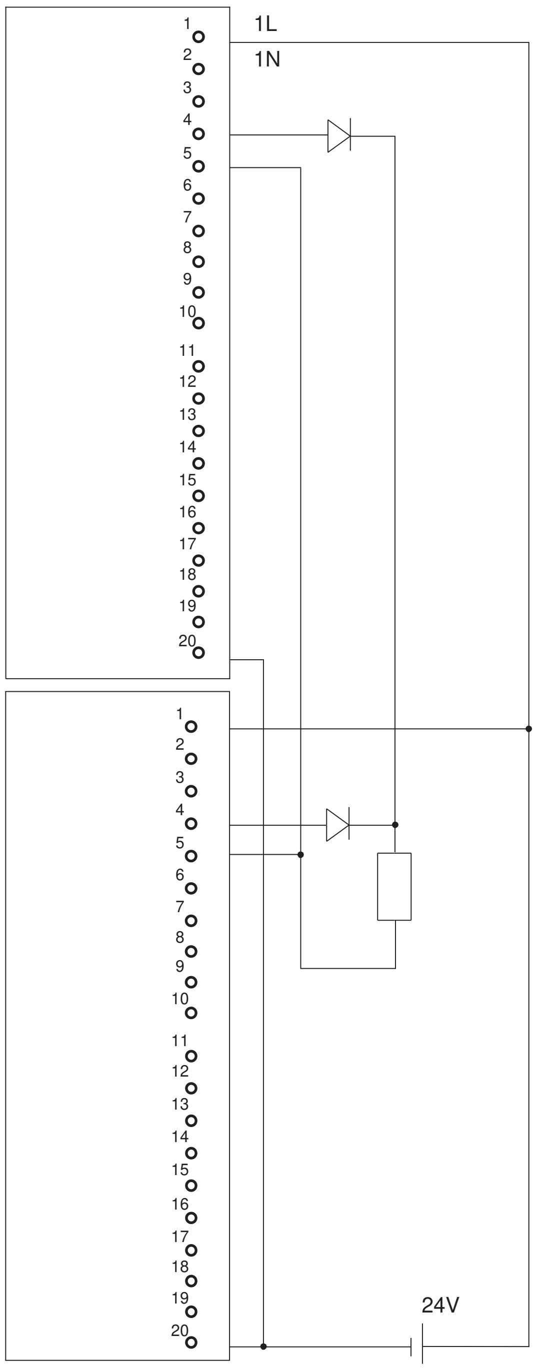


Figure C-24 Example of an interconnection with SM 332; AO 4 x 0/4...20 mA [EEx ib]

C.27 SM 422; DO 16 x AC 120/230 V/2 A, 6ES7 422–1FH00–0AA0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two SM 422; DO 16 x 120/230 V/2 A. The actuator is connected to channel 0.

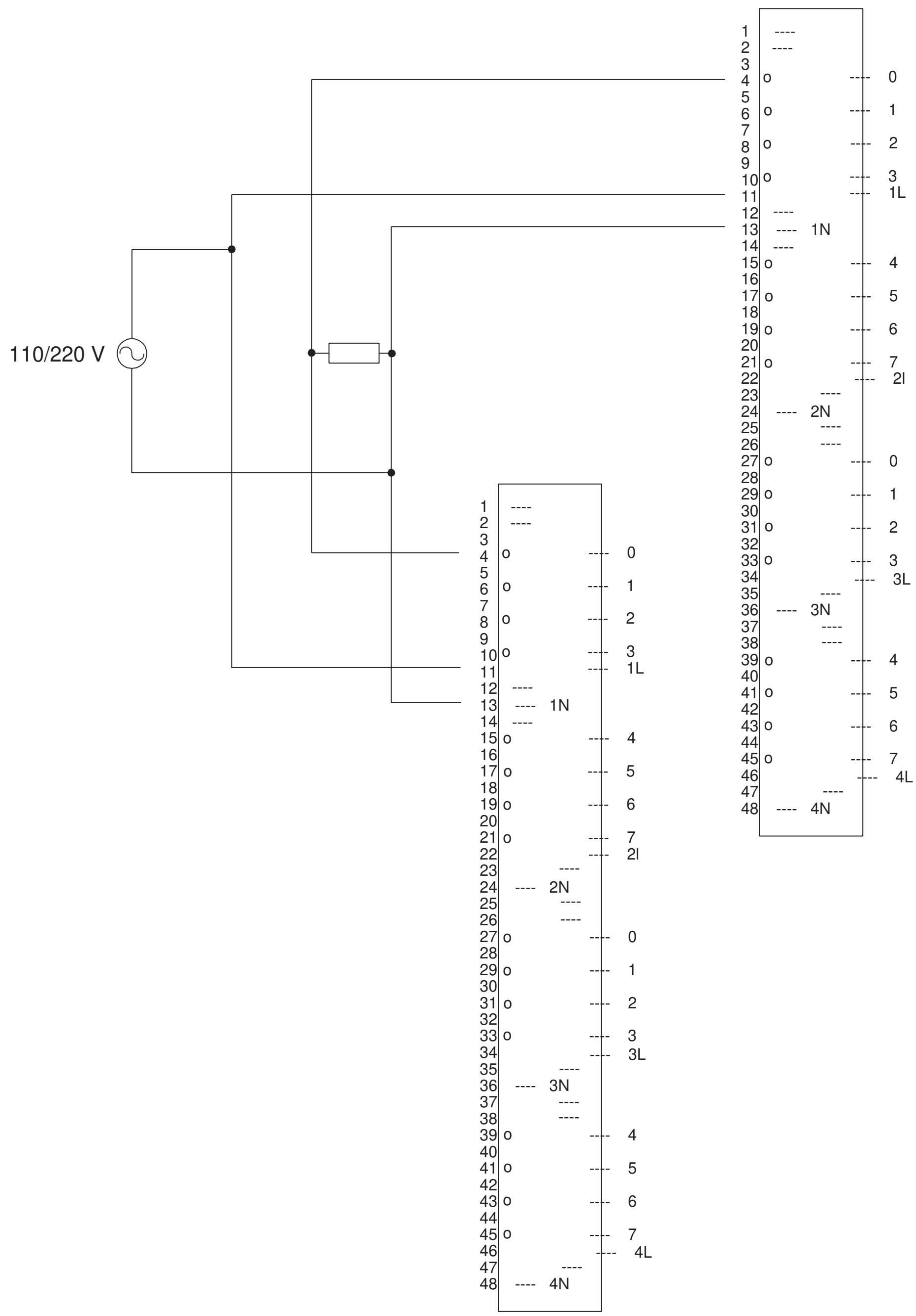


Figure C-25 Example of an interconnection with SM 422; DO 16 x 120/230 V/2 A

C.28 SM 422; DO 32 x DC 24 V/0.5 A, 6ES7 422−7BL00−0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two SM 422; DO 32 x 24 V/0.5 A. The actuator is connected to channel 0. Suitable diodes are, for example, those of the series 1N4003 ... 1N4007, or any other diode with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 1 A

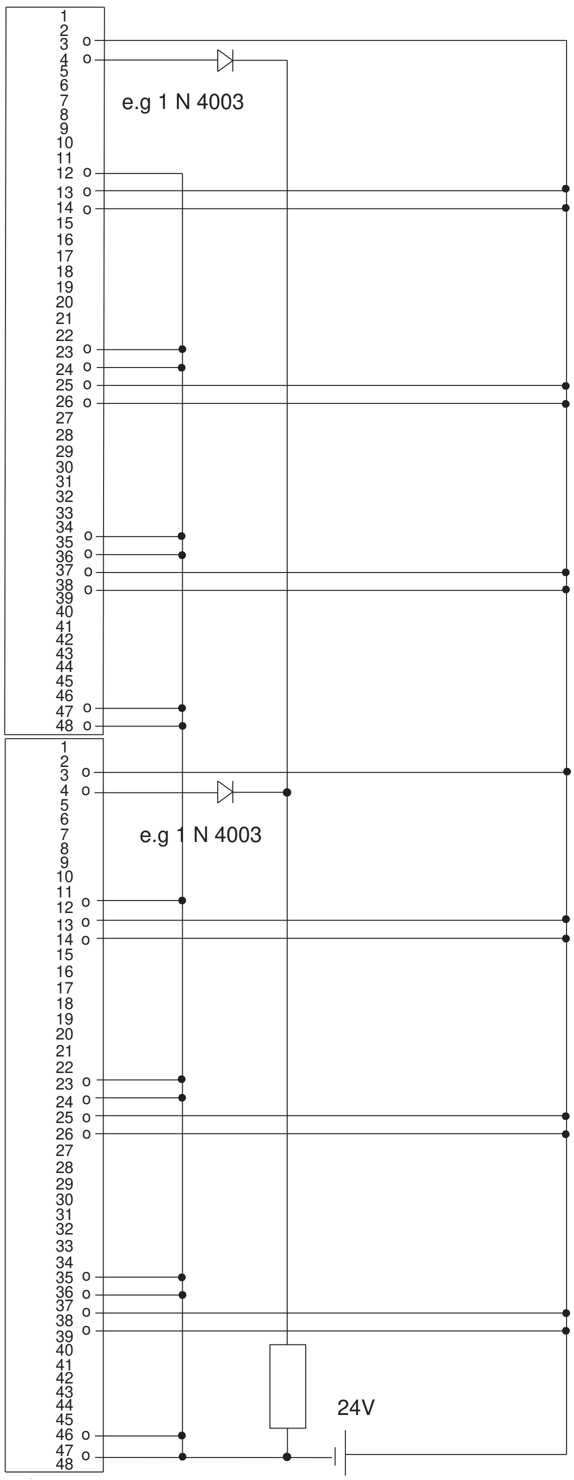


Figure C-26 Example of an interconnection with SM 422; DO 32 x DC 24 V/0.5 A

C.29 SM 331; AI 4 x 15 Bit [EEx ib]; 6ES7 331–7RD00–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of a 2-wire transmitter to two SM 331; AI 4 x 15 Bit [EEx ib]. The transmitter is connected to channel 1. Suitable Zener diode: BZX85C6v2.

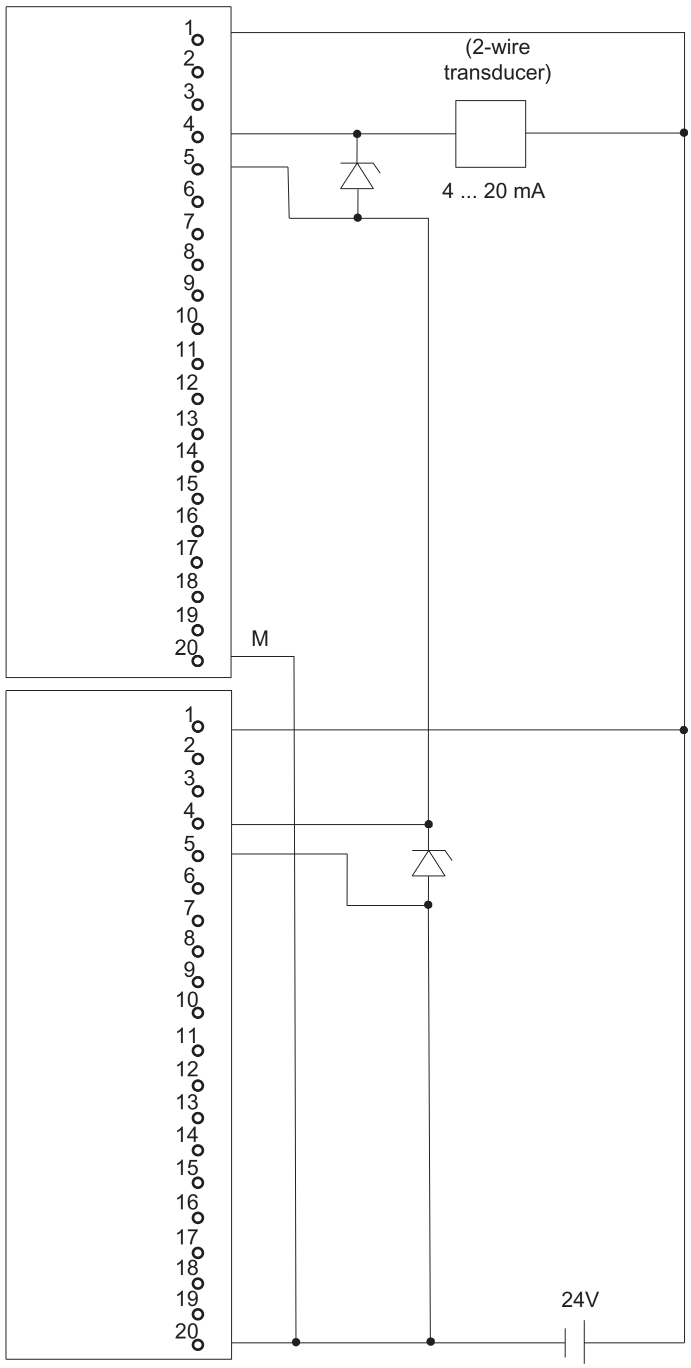


Figure C-27 Example of an interconnection with SM 331, AI 4 x 15 Bit [EEx ib]

C.30 SM 331; AI 8 x 12 Bit, 6ES7 331−7KF02−0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of a transmitter to two SM 331; AI 8 x 12 Bit. The transmitter is connected to channel 0.

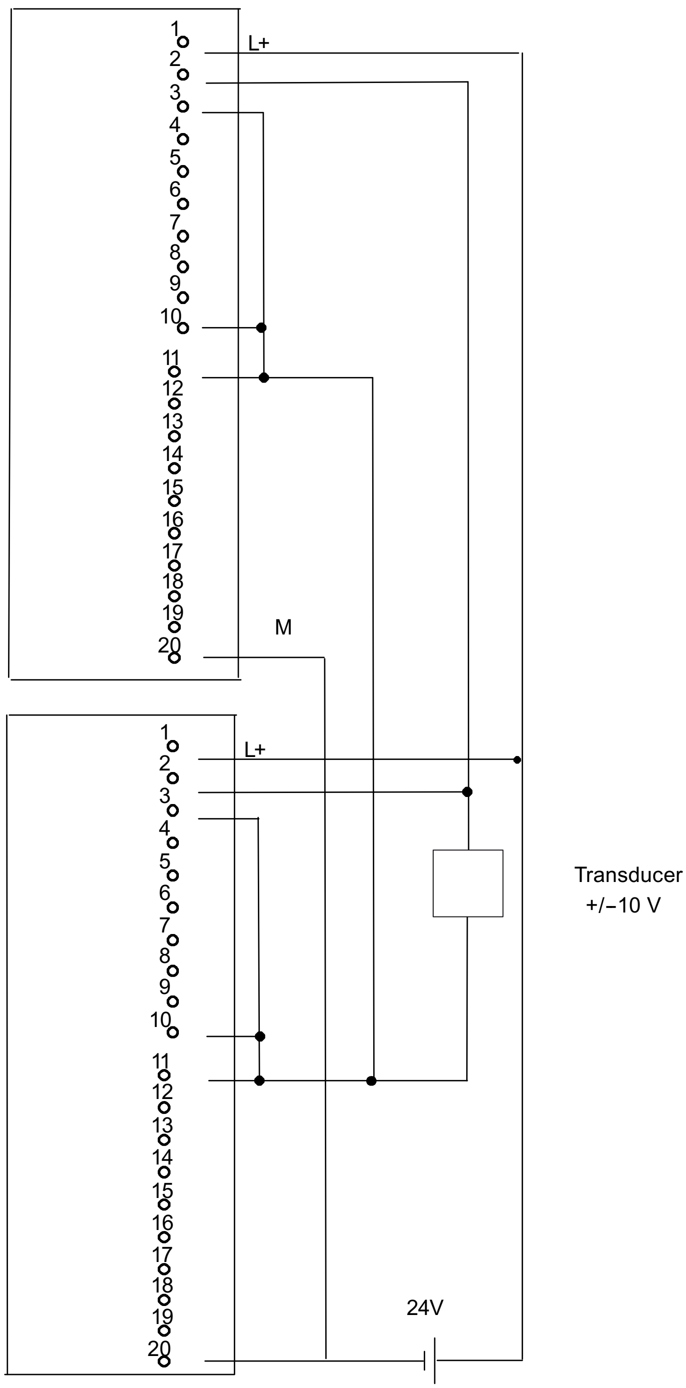


Figure C-28 Example of an interconnection with SM 331; AI 8 x 12 Bit

C.31 SM 331; AI 8 x 16 Bit; 6ES7 331–7NF00–0AB0

The figure below shows the connection of a transmitter to two redundant SM 331; AI 8 x 16 Bit. The transmitter is connected to channel 0 and 7 respectively.

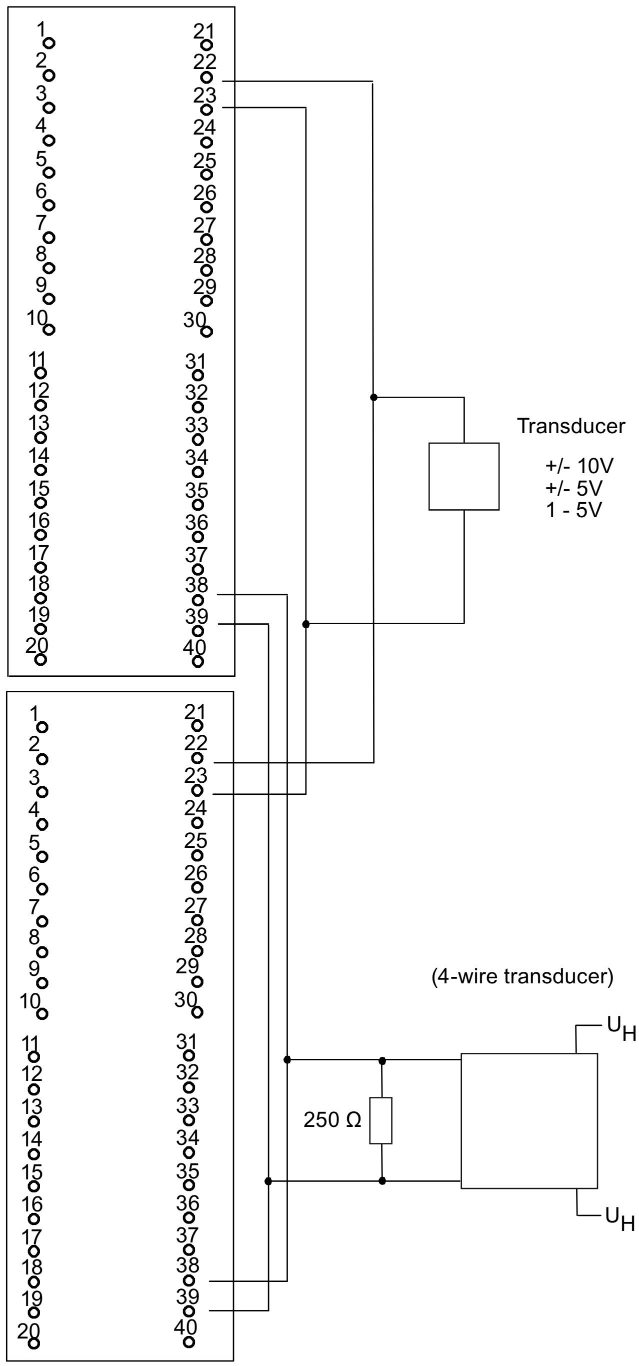


Figure C-29 Example of an interconnection with SM 331; AI 8 x 16 Bit

C.32 SM 331; AI 8 x 16 Bit; 6ES7 331–7NF10–0AB0

The figure below shows the connection of a transmitter to two redundant SM 331; AI 8 x 16 Bit. The transmitter is connected to channel 0 and 3 respectively.

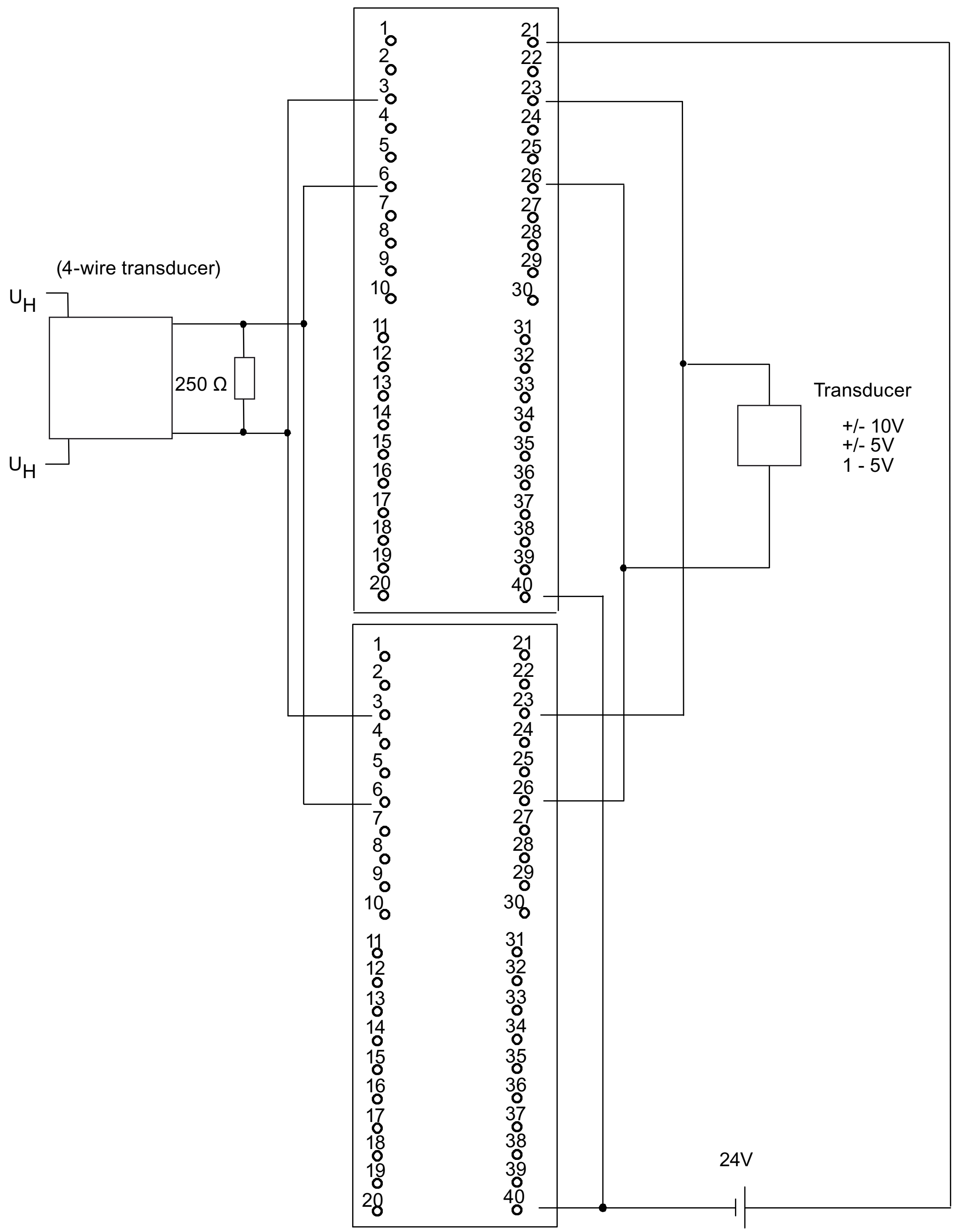


Figure C-30 Example of an interconnection with SM 331; AI 8 x 16 Bit

C.33 AI 6xTC 16Bit iso, 6ES7331-7PE10-0AB0

The figure below shows the connection of a thermocouple to two redundant SM 331 AI 6xTC 16Bit iso.

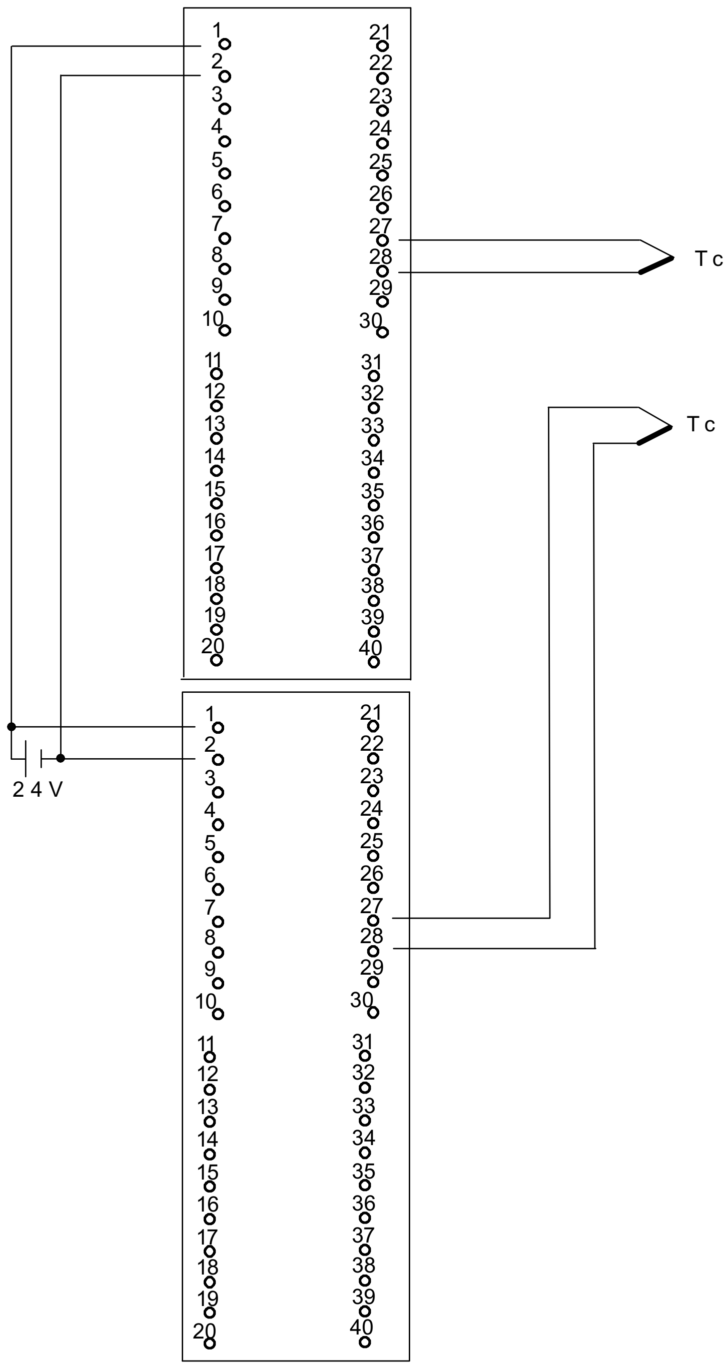


Figure C-31 Example of an interconnection AI 6xTC 16Bit iso

C.34 SM331; AI 8 x 0/4...20mA HART, 6ES7 331-7TF01-0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of a 4-wire transmitter to two redundant SM 331; AI 8 x 0/4...20mA HART.

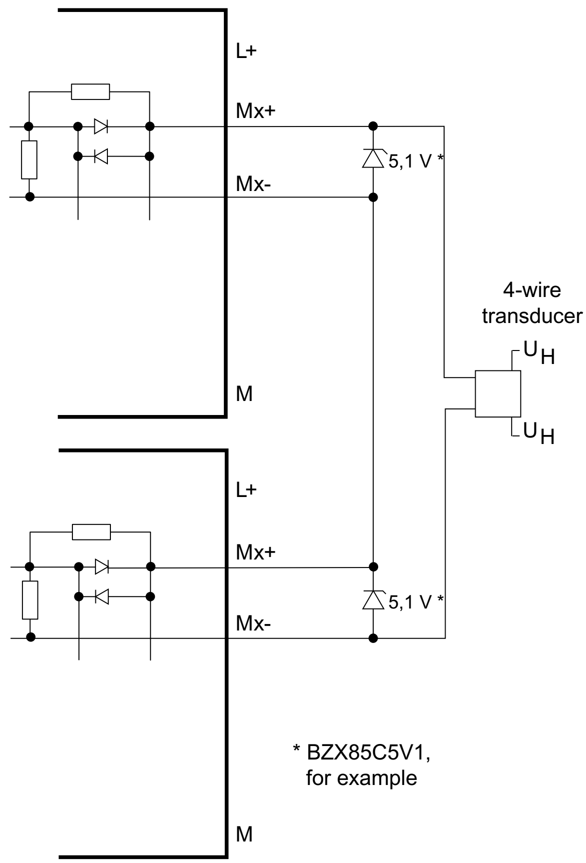


Figure C-32 Interconnection example 1 SM 331; AI 8 x 0/4...20mA HART

The diagram below shows the connection of a 2-wire transmitter to two redundant SM 331; AI 8 x 0/4...20mA HART.

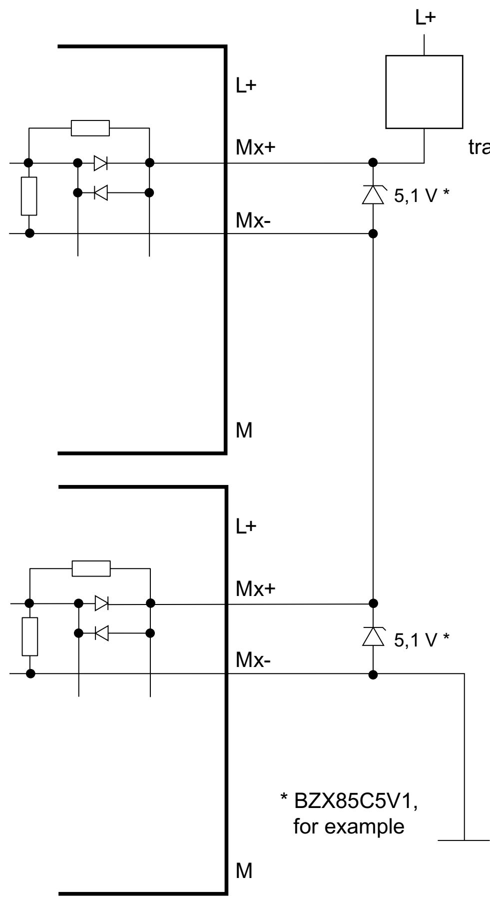


Figure C-33 Interconnection example 2 SM 331; AI 8 x 0/4...20mA HART

C.35 SM 332; AO 4 x 12 Bit; 6ES7 332–5HD01–0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two SM 332; AO 4 x 12 Bit. The actuator is connected to channel 0. Suitable diodes are, for example, those of the series 1N4003 ... 1N4007, or any other diode with U_r >=200 V and I_F >= 1 A

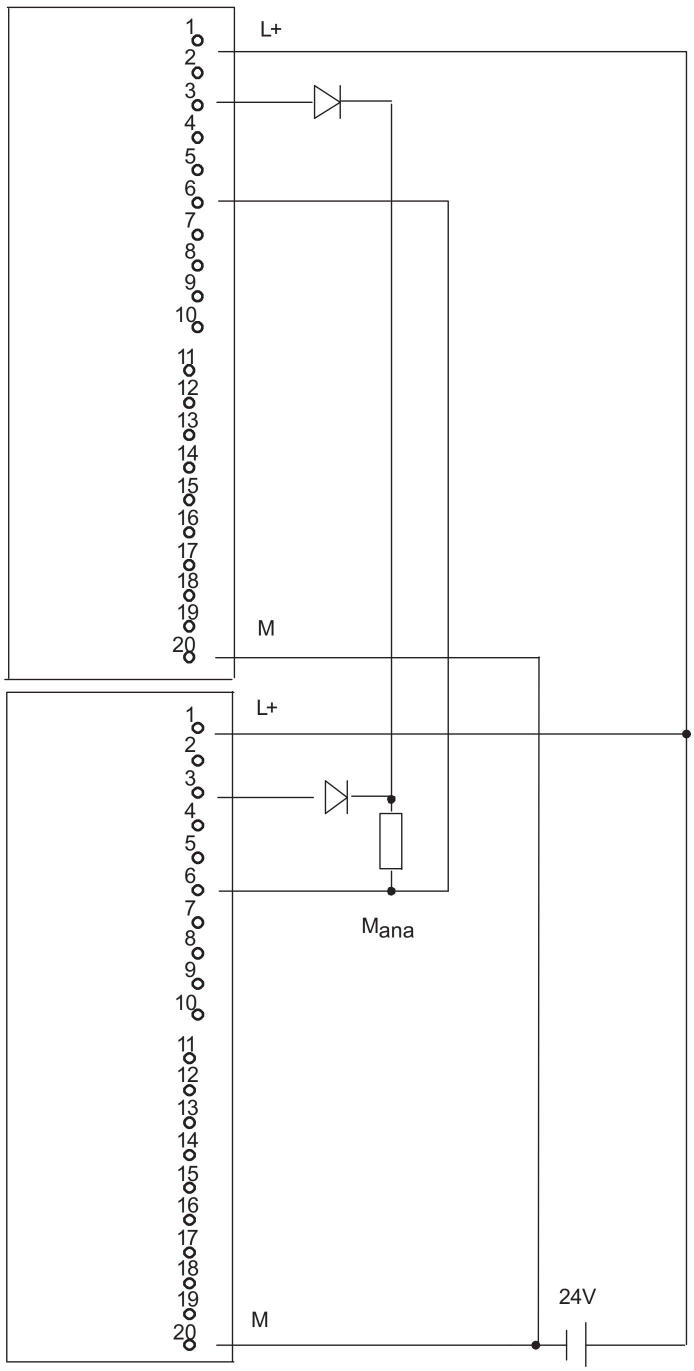


Figure C-34 Example of an interconnection with SM 332, AO 4 x 12 Bit

C.36 SM332; AO 8 x 0/4...20mA HART, 6ES7 332-8TF01-0AB0

The diagram below shows the connection of an actuator to two SM 332; AO 8 x 0/4...20 mA HART.

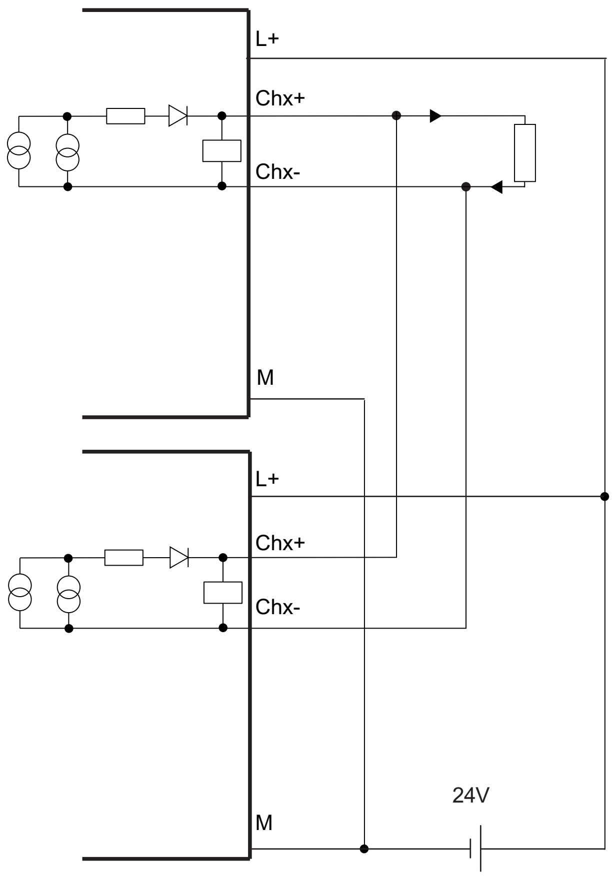


Figure C-35 Interconnection example 3 SM 332; AO 8 x 0/4...20mA HART

Index

D

E

F

G

H

I

R

S

T

U

W